

# COMPILATION OF DAILY CLASS NOTES



**Batch : Sankalp - 2024**

<b>Topic</b>	
<b>Lecture - 1</b>	<b>Medieval Strategy &amp; Post Gupta: North India</b>
<b>Lecture - 2</b>	<b>Post Gupta - Harsha, Chalukyas and Pallavas</b>
<b>Lecture - 3</b>	<b>Pallavas and Tripartite Struggle</b>
<b>Lecture - 4</b>	<b>Tripartite Struggle</b>
<b>Lecture - 5</b>	<b>Cholas and the Southern Dynasties</b>
<b>Lecture - 6</b>	<b>Age of Conflicts</b>
<b>Lecture - 7</b>	<b>Age of Conflicts - II (1000-1200 CE)</b>
<b>Lecture - 8</b>	<b>Arab Invasion and Delhi Sultanate</b>
<b>Lecture - 9</b>	<b>Delhi Sultanate I</b>
<b>Lecture - 10</b>	<b>Delhi Sultanate II</b>
<b>Lecture - 11</b>	<b>Delhi Sultanate III</b>
<b>Lecture - 12</b>	<b>Regional Kingdoms</b>
<b>Lecture - 13</b>	<b>Regional Kingdom II</b>
<b>Lecture - 14</b>	<b>Regional Kingdom III</b>
<b>Lecture - 15</b>	<b>Regional Kingdom IV and Mughal Empire</b>
<b>Lecture - 16</b>	<b>Mughal Empire II</b>
<b>Lecture - 17</b>	<b>Mughal Empire III</b>



# DAILY CLASS NOTES

## Medieval History

Lecture - 1  
**Medieval Strategy & Post  
Gupta: North India**





# Medieval Strategy & Post Gupta: North India

## Indian History after Guptas (Early Medieval 600 - 1200 CE):

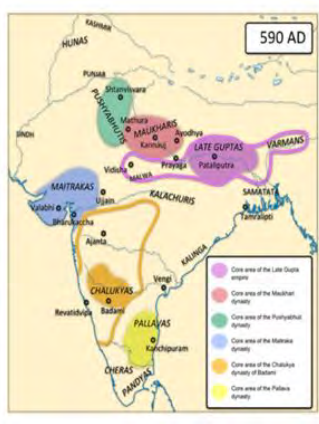
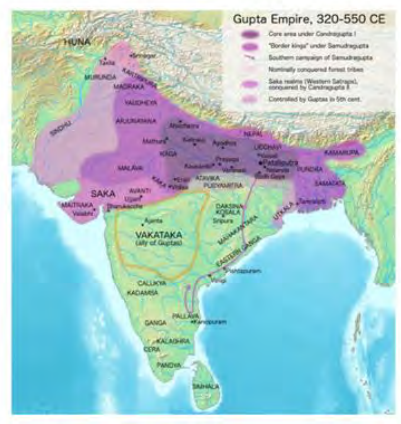
- ❖ The term 'early medieval' denotes the intermediate **transition period** between the 'ancient' and the 'medieval'.
- ❖ The Early Medieval Period in India is **marked by**:
  - Feudalism
  - Political Fragmentation
  - Formation and Proliferation of various states at the regional level

❖ This period in south India especially, is viewed more as a period of segmentary statehood, wherein the role of the king was diminished and he acted more as a ritual head, neither having any firm revenue infrastructure nor a standing army.

❖ For simpler understanding, the period from c. 600-1200 CE can be roughly classified into primarily two phases, different for north and south India, respectively:

❖ **The period from c. 600-750 CE:**

- **North India** was dominated by the Pushyabhutis of Thaneswar and the Maukharis of Kannauj,
- **South India** was dominated by the Pallavas of Kanchi, the Chalukyas of Badami and the Pandyas of Madurai.
- The period from c. **750-1200 CE in north India** can be further divided into two phases:

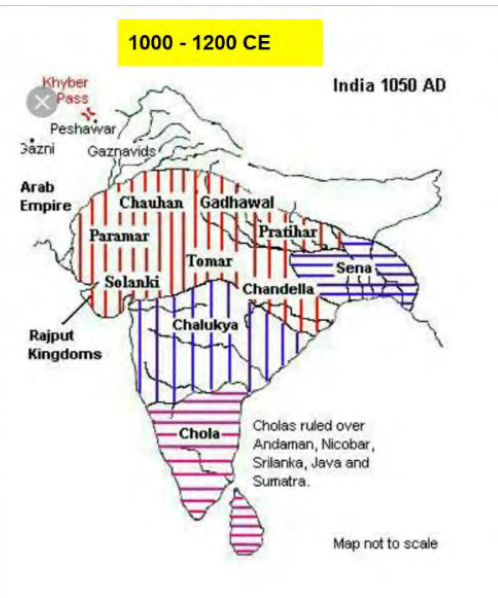


1. **Phase I (c. 750-1000 CE):** In north India, this phase was marked by the age of three important empires:

- **Gurjara Pratiharas** in northern India
- **Palas** in eastern India
- **Rashtrakutas** in Deccan

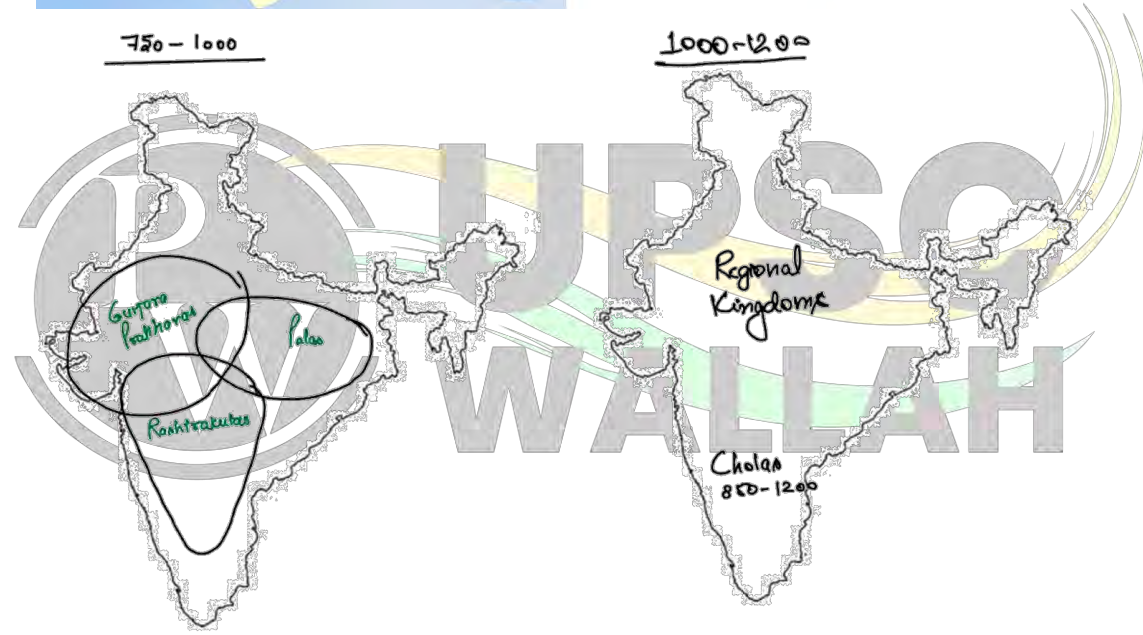
2. **Phase II (c. 1000-1200 CE):** This phase is primarily known as the **age of conflict**.

- All over the country, there was the breakdown of the tripartite powers into many smaller kingdoms.
- In northern India, the Pratihara empire's disintegration brought to the forefront various **Rajput states** under the control of different Rajput dynasties such as the **Chahamanas (Chauhans), Chandellas, Paramaras of Malwa**, and so on.
- These states eventually fought and resisted the Turkish attacks from northwest India led by Mahmud Ghazni and Mohammad Ghori in the 11 and 12<sup>th</sup> centuries, but had to yield ultimately as they failed to stand united against the invaders.
- The period from c. **850-1200 CE in south India** saw the supremacy of the Cholas.



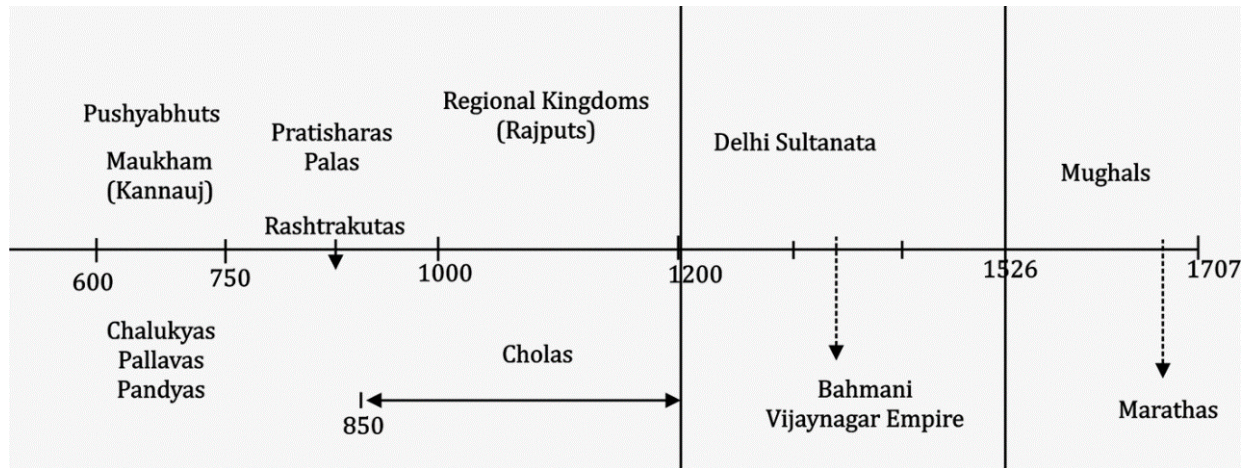
750 - 1000

1000 - 1200



**Indian History after Guptas (600-1200):**

- ❖ Though India was politically divided during these years, this era added new and rich cultural elements in the fields of art, literature and language.
- ❖ In fact, some of the best specimens of temple architecture and Indian literature belong to this period.



### A brief outline of Early Medieval India 600-1200 CE:

- ❖ This period is marked by:
  - Political Fragmentation
  - “Indian Feudalism”: (Samantas, runak, rauta → mahasamanta, mandaleshvara)
  - Revenue (which may have been hereditary)
- ❖ May assume other minor administrative functions:
  - **Political:**
    - ✓ Decentralized power system
    - ✓ Standing army
    - ✓ Bureaucracy
    - ✓ Rise of regional kingdoms
  - **Economy:**
    - ✓ Agriculture based economy
    - ✓ **Trade:** Both long distance and local
    - ✓ Self-sufficient economy
    - ✓ Jajmani system
    - ✓ **Coins:** Gold
  - **Culture:** Emergence of local language and Bhakti movement left an indelible mark in Indian cultural history.

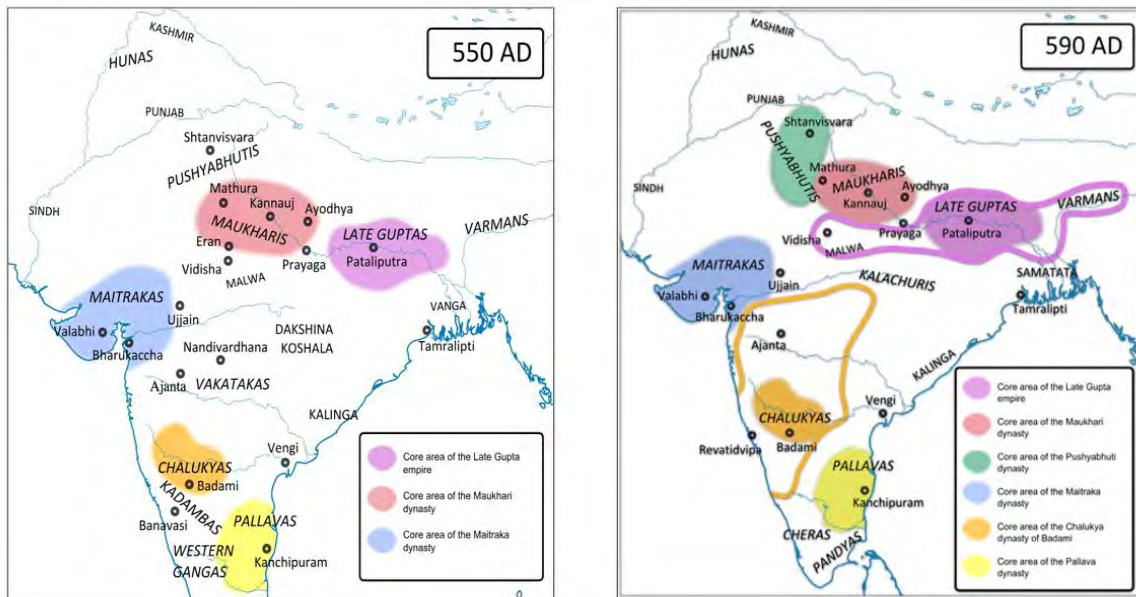


## Rise of Rajputs

- ❖ Various dynasties between Harsha Vardhana and the 12th Century.
- ❖ As per tradition there were **36 Rajput clans**:
  - Gurjara Pratiharas
  - Tomars
  - Chalukyas
  - Paramaras
  - Gahadavalas
  - Kachapaglsatas
  - Solanki
  - Chauhan
  - Rathors of Kanauj
  - Chandellas of Bundelkhand
  - Sisodias of Mewar
- ❖ As per tradition there were 36 Rajput Clans.

## What happened after the disintegration of the Gupta Empire?

- ❖ The fall of the Gupta Empire by 550 CE resulted in the rise and growth of numerous regional dynasties in the whole sub-continent.
- ❖ With the coming of **Kumaragupta III (530-540)** on the throne of Magadha, the weakness of the imperial Gupta had become a known fact to all.
- ❖ Taking advantage of the situation some feudatories of the Guptas raised their heads to grab the political power in north India to establish their own independent kingdoms.
- ❖ The given map of India in the 6th century AD depicts the political dispensations in the post-Gupta period:



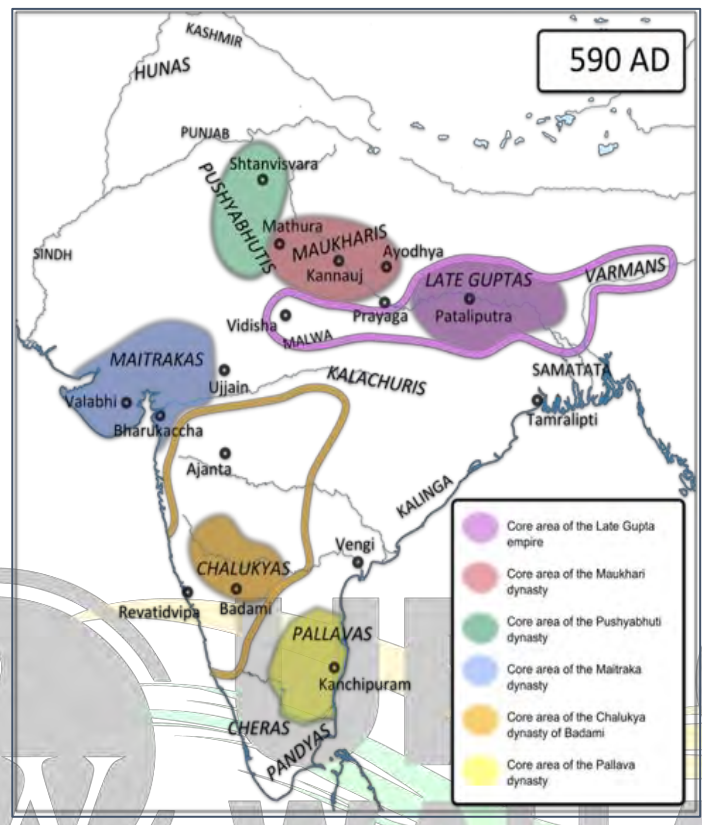
### Gupta's successors states in Northern India:

- ❖ There were four major kingdoms in north India between the period in which the Guptas declined and the rise of Harsha (i.e., in the beginning of 7th century), namely –
  - Guptas of Magadha;
  - Maukharis of Kannauj;
  - Maitrakas of Valabhi (Saurashtra); and
  - Pushyabhutis of Thaneswar.
- ❖ These four kingdoms competed with each other to succeed to the past glory of the Guptas. Other powers were:
  - Malwa under Yashodharman
  - Gaudas of Bengal
  - Kamarupa Kingdom of Assam

### Later Guptas of Magadha:

- ❖ After the decline of the Gupta Empire, the Later Guptas succeeded them as the rulers of Magadha. **Krishnagupta** was the founder of the Later Gupta dynasty.
- ❖ The **Later Gupta Dynasty** ruled the Magadha region in eastern India between the 6th and 7th centuries.
- ❖ The Later Guptas succeeded the imperial Guptas as the rulers of Magadha, but there is no evidence connecting the two dynasties; these appear to be two distinct families.
- ❖ They were probably feudatory to imperial Guptas and asserted their independence after their fall.
- ❖ Most of the information of the Later Guptas is derived from the:
  - **Aphsad Inscription of Adityasena** located in Gaya.
  - **Deo-Barnark inscription of Jivitagupta II**, located in the Bhojpur district of Bihar.

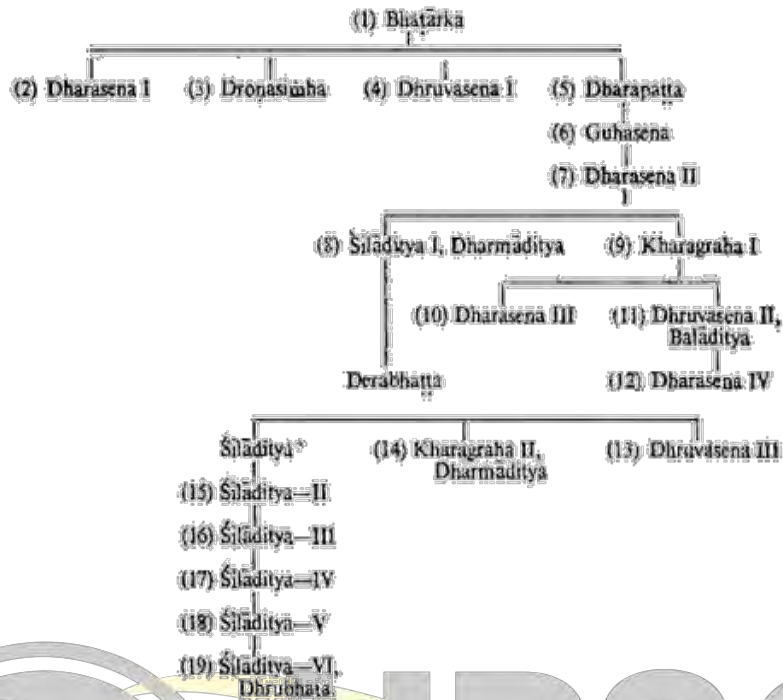
- ❖ The Later Guptas are so-called because the names of their rulers ended with the suffix "Gupta", which they might have adopted to portray themselves as the legitimate successors of the imperial Guptas.
- ❖ But some of the kings of this Gupta family were very powerful and ruled up to as far as the Brahmaputra River.



### Maitrakas of Vallabhi:

- ❖ Towards the middle of the 5th century A.D., the Gupta empire started to decline.
- ❖ Senapati Bhatarka, the Maitrak general of the Guptas, took advantage of the situation in 470 AD and **laid the foundation of his kingdom of Vallabhi**, which came to be known as the Maitrak kingdom.
- ❖ He shifted his capital from Girinagar to Vallabhipur, near Bhavnagar, on Saurashtra's east coast.
- ❖ Maitrak of Vallabhi became very powerful and their writ prevailed over large parts of Gujarat and even over adjoining Malwa.
- ❖ The **Eran Stone Pillar Inscription of Bhanugupta** mentions a "very big and famous battle" between the Guptas and the Maitrakas.
- ❖ The Maitrakas were tributary chiefs of the Guptas, who established an independent kingdom in western India.
  - They developed Vallabhi as their capital and it became an important center of learning.
- ❖ Being on the Arabian Sea, it was also a **port town** having flourishing trade and commerce.

## GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE MAITRAKAS OF VALABHĪ



\*The numbering of Śilāditya differs when Śilāditya, the elder son of Derabhāta, is mentioned as Śilāditya II. Subsequent rulers follows like Śilāditya II becomes III.

### Dhruvasena I:

- ❖ He was the third son of Bhattarka.
- ❖ He reigned during c. 519 - c. 549 CE.
- ❖ He formed a **matrimonial alliance** with **Harisena**, the Vakataka king of Avanti. He married Queen **Chandralekha**.
- ❖ During his reign Yashodharman of Malwa defeated Harisena of the Vakataka dynasty, as well as the Huna king Mihirakula (in 528 CE).
- ❖ Dhruvasena I probably had to acknowledge the overlord-ship of Yashodharman.
- ❖ Dhruvasena I called himself '**Paramabhāgavata**', the great Vaishnava.
- ❖ He was liberal in religious beliefs. This is evident as in the 535 CE, he had made a grant for the arrangement for a **Buddhist monastery** at Valabhi built by his Buddhist niece Duḍḍā.
- ❖ He also made several grants to Brahmanas of Vadnagar.
- ❖ The Jain council at Vallabhi was probably held during his rule which was arranged by his wife Chandralekha.

### Vallabhi University - The government has decided to revive this ancient center of Great Learning:

- ❖ Vallabhi University was established in the **6th century** and flourished for 600 years till the 12th century.
- ❖ It was built in **Saurashtra** region of modern-day Gujarat. It was an important center of Buddhist learning and championed the cause of **Hinayana Buddhism** between 600 CE and 1200 CE.
- ❖ This University was very famous for the quality education it gave to its students. And all the graduates from this esteemed university were holding higher executive posts.
- ❖ Chinese travelers named **Itsing and Hiuen Tsang** who visited Valabhi University during the 7th century describe this university as a **great center for learning**.
- ❖ **Cause of Destruction:** In a war, the king of Vallabhi was defeated due to all ill politics and in that war, all the buildings, monuments, towns etc. were destroyed.

In News: Times of India (24<sup>th</sup> September 2017)

### Ancient Vallabhi University to be revived

PRASHANT RUPERA / TNN / Sep 24, 2017, 04:00 IST

559 PTS

SHARE

Print

AA

- In 2017 the Government of India proposed to revive the ancient seat of learning Vallabhi University which had flourished as a world-renowned Buddhist learning center during the Maitraka Empire.

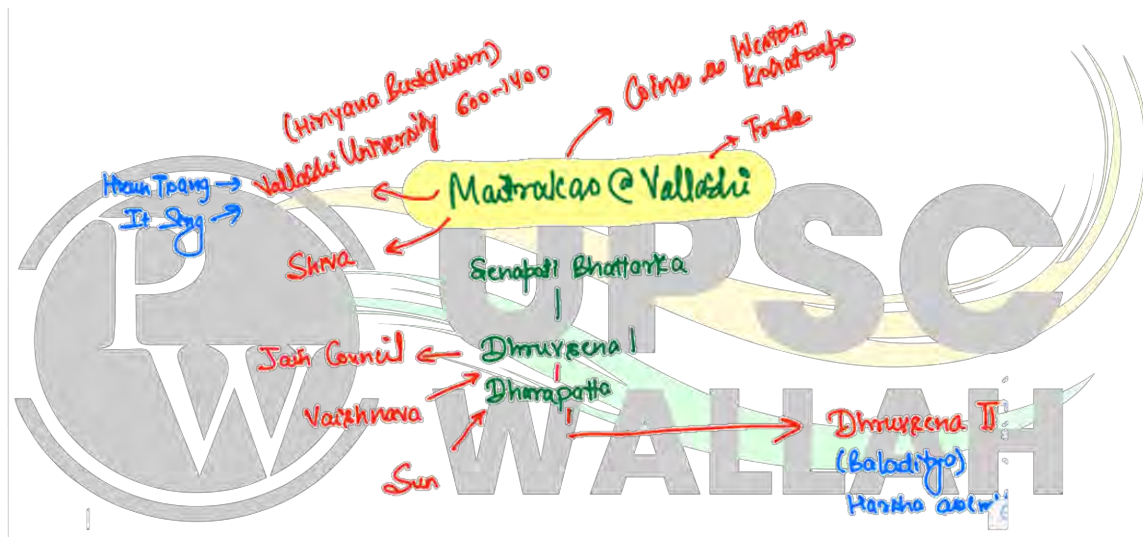
### Dhruvasena II:

- ❖ He was the most important ruler of the **Maitrakas**.
- ❖ He was also known as **Baladitya, the "rising son"**.
- ❖ He reigned from c. 627-641 CE. He was well-versed in grammar and the science of polity.
- ❖ He was a **contemporary of Harshavardhana** and was married to his daughter.
- ❖ Hsuan Tsang tells us that Dhruvasena II attended Harsha's assembly at Prayaga (Allahabad).
- ❖ The Maitrakas continued to rule until the middle of the 8th century when Arab attacks weakened their power.
- ❖ **Coinage:**
  - They issued **coins (drachms)** in the style of Western Kshatrapas.
  - Though one can't see any artistic talents of their own, the **excellent minting techniques** could be observed in the Maitraka kingdom.
  - The obverse of their coinage carried a stylised bust presenting military characteristics on the face of the ruler, and the reverse carried their name and the title in Brahmi legend.



## Religion under Maitrakas of Vallabhi:

- ❖ The Maitrakas were followers of Shiva except for Dhruvasena I who was Vaishnava and Dharapatta who was a sun-worshiper.
- ❖ They all used the title of **'parama-maheshwara'** before the names of the king except those two. It is evident from the use of symbols like **Nandi, the Bull and Trishula, the trident in their coins and inscriptions.**
- ❖ Maitraka is derived from Mithra, the Sun or solar deity. There was the presence of Vaishnavism and Goddess worship under their rule.
- ❖ Maitrakas continued to rule until the middle of the eighth century when **Arab attacks** weakened their power.
- ❖ There were a large number of **Buddhist Viharas** in the Maitraka kingdom.
- ❖ Jains held their important Vallabhi council here. The **third Jain council** was held at Vallabhi during the reign of Dhruvasena I (519-549 CE).
- ❖ The Maitrakas were tolerant to all religions and made donations and grants to all of them without partiality.



## Maukharis:

- ❖ They were one of the feudatories that became independent in the post-Gupta period. They assumed the title of **Samanta.**
- ❖ This knowledge about the Maukharis comes from the seals and inscriptions discovered in the modern districts of Farrukhabad, Gorakhpur, Jaunpur and Barabanki of Uttar Pradesh, Patna district of Bihar, Nimar district of Madhya Pradesh and from the literary work like **Banabhatta's Harshacharita.**
- ❖ Maukharis made Kannauj a center of political and administrative activities.
- ❖ They gradually replaced Pataliputra as a political center of north India.



### ❖ Relationship between Pushyabhutis and Maukharis:

- Harshavardhana's sister **Rajyashri** was married to Grihavarman.
- Shashanka, the ruler of Bengal (Gaud), and Dev Gupta (Malwa ruler), the Later Gupta ruler jointly attacked Grihavarman and killed him.
- After the successful expedition of **Harsha Vardhana**, the kingdom of Kanauj was then merged with that of the Pushyabhutis and Harsha shifted his capital from Thanesar (Kurukshetra) to Kannauj.

### Important Maukhari Rulers:

#### Hari Varhmana Maukhari (mid-6<sup>th</sup> century CE):

- ❖ He was the progenitor of the Kanauj Maukharis.
- ❖ He adopted a simple **title - Maharaja**, indicative of his feudatory position.
- ❖ He was a **contemporary of Krishnagupta**, the founder of the Later Gupta dynasty.

#### Advaita Varmana:

- ❖ He succeeded his father and assumed the title of Maharaja.

#### Ishanavarmana (c. 554 CE):

- ❖ He was considered the **real founder of the Maukhari Dynasty**.
- ❖ He adopted the title '**Maharajadhiraja**' (mentioned in **Asirgarh Copper Plate Inscription** of Madhya Pradesh).
- ❖ His kingdom had stretched to Andhra Pradesh (Probably Visnukundin family), Orissa and Gauda.
- ❖ He **fought against the Hunas**, resulting in the defeat of the Hunas possibly fought as **feudatories of Baladitya** of the Imperial Gupta family.
- ❖ Harsha's inscription claims that Ishanavarmana had also defeated the **Sulikas (probably Chalukyas)**.
- ❖ He faced opposition from the later Guptas and prolonged struggle with the later Guptas and had to suffer crushing defeat at the hands of **Kumaragupta**.
- ❖ His **seals and coins** indicate that he was a learned person, a just ruler, a brave warrior and a patron of education.

#### Sarvavarmana (c. 560-585 CE):

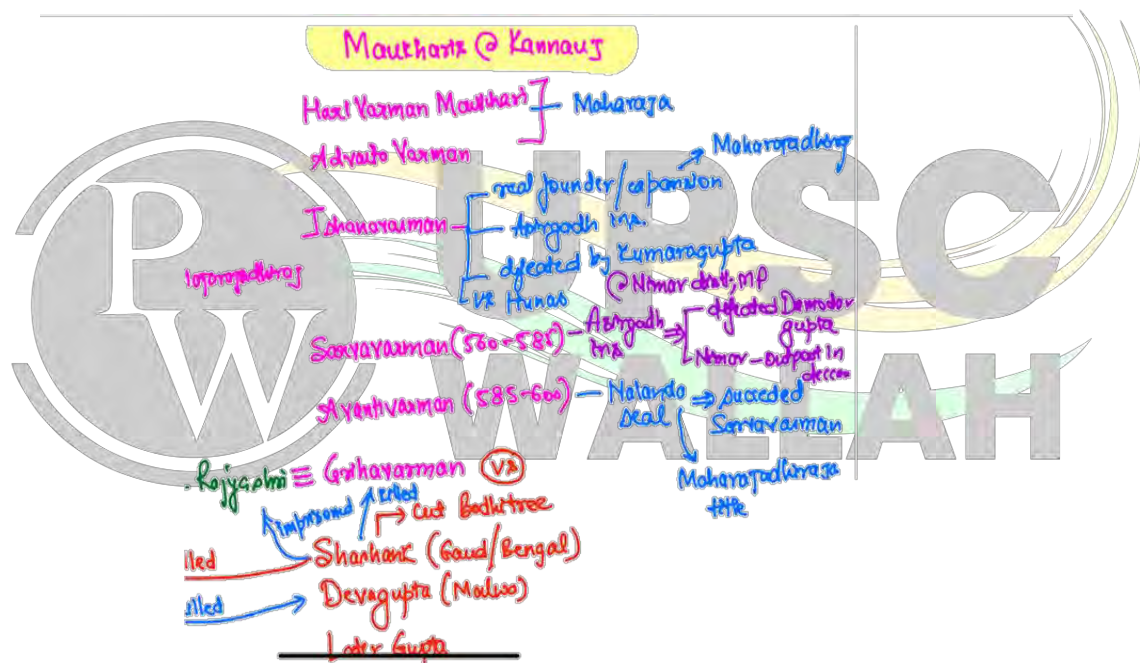
- ❖ He was probably the **son of Ishanavarmana**.
- ❖ He succeeded after his father's death.
- ❖ He maintained his hold on Magadha and kept the later Guptas under subordination.
- ❖ **Asirgadhi Inscription** in Nimar district of Madhya Pradesh narrates his victory over Damodargupta, and describes Nimar as a '**Maukhari outpost in the Deccan**.'

### Avanti Varmana (c. 585-600 CE):

- ❖ **Nalanda Seal** mentions that Sarvavarmana was succeeded by his son Avantivarmana
- ❖ He assumed the title **Maharajadhiraja**.
- ❖ He extended the boundary of the kingdom by transferring the capital to Kannauj.
- ❖ It was under him that the **Maukhari empire reached its peak**.

### Grahavarmana (around c. 600 CE):

- ❖ He succeeded Avantivarmana and was **married to Rajyashri**, the daughter of **Prabhakar Vardhana** of the Pushyabhuti family of Thaneswar.
- ❖ Grahavarmana was killed by Deva Gupta of Malwa of the later Gupta lineage.
- ❖ Later Harsha Vardhana merged the Maukhari kingdom with the Pushyabhuti kingdom.
- ❖ Gradually the Maukhari family disappeared into obscurity.



### The rise of Pushyabhutis of Thanesar:

#### Conditions after Guptas:

- ❖ Until the middle of the 6th century CE, the Gupta Empire had **provided stability** to northern India. The decline of the Gupta Empire had, however, resulted in the splitting of northern India into several kingdoms.
- ❖ From the 5th century CE onwards Kashmir, Punjab and north-west India had come under the sovereignty of the **white Hunas**, whereas from the middle of the 6th century CE, north and western India was ruled by different feudatories of the Guptas.
- ❖ An important ruling family to gain prominence after the fall of the Gupta was that of the **Pushyabhutis**, who had their capital at Thanesar which is near Kurukshetra, Haryana.
- ❖ Pushyabhutis were originally feudatories of the Guptas.



### Sources of Information of Pushyabhutis:

- ❖ **Harshacharita**, a biography of Harsha written by Harsha's court poet Banabhatta,
- ❖ The travelogs of the Chinese pilgrim **Hsuan Tsang** and **Si-Yu-Ki**.
- ❖ Not much is known about the first three kings of the dynasty.
- ❖ The dynasty came into prominence with the accession of **Prabhakar Vardhana**, who was able to defeat the Hunas and strengthen his position in the regions of Punjab and Haryana.

#### ❖ **Pushyabhuti Rulers (possibly mythical):**

- Naravardhana: 500-525 CE
- Rajyavardana I: 525-555 CE
- Adityavardhana: 555-580 CE
- **Prabhakara-varadhana: 580-605 CE**
- Rajya-varadhana: 605-606 CE
- **Harsha-varadhana: 606-647 CE**

### Pushyabhutis of Thanesar:

- ❖ An important ruling family to gain prominence after the fall of the Gupta was that of the Pushyabhutis who had their capital at **Thanesar** (Thanesvara in Kurukshetra).
- ❖ The dynasty became influential with the accession of **Prabhakarvardhana (580-605 CE)**:
  - He was able to **defeat the Hunas**, and he was a great general with many military victories.
  - He was the fourth king and is **considered as the real founder of the Pushyabhuti dynasty**.
  - He strengthens his position in the regions of Punjab and Haryana.
  - He advanced his rule as far as Malwa and Gujarat.
  - He formed an important matrimonial alliance with his neighbors to the east, the Maukharis of Kanyakubja or Kannauj by marrying his daughter Rajyashri to the Maukhari ruler Grahavarman.
  - He was the first ruler of the dynasty, who assumed the title of Parama-bhattaraka Maharajadhiraja.
  - After his death, his elder son **Rajyavardhana** came to the throne but he was treacherously killed by Shashanka, the king of Bengal and Bihar.



PW Mobile APP: <https://physicswala.page.link/?type=contact-us&data=open>

For PW Website: <https://www.physicswallah.live/contact-us>

# **DAILY CLASS NOTES**

---

## **MEDIEVAL HISTORY**

**Lecture - 02**

**Post Gupta - Harsha,  
Chalukyas and Pallavas**



## Post Gupta - Harsha, Chalukyas and Pallavas

### Harsha's Era (c. 606-647 CE):

- ❖ Harshavardhana ascended the throne in AD 606. He was only sixteen years of age at that time. Still, he proved himself to be a **great warrior and an able administrator**.
- ❖ Harsha made **Kannauj** his seat of power, and from there he extended his authority in all directions.
- ❖ By the seventh century Pataliputra lost its importance and Kannauj came to the fore.
- ❖ Some historians consider him as the **last great Hindu king** of India on account of his allegiance to Shaivism before he adopted Buddhism.
- ❖ He supported Buddhism to a great extent and made liberal donations to Buddhists.
- ❖ He is popularly known as **Harsha** and was also described as the **Lord of the North - Sakalauttarapathanatha**.



### Circumstances at the time of Harsha's Accession to the Throne:

- ❖ **Rajya Vardhana**, elder brother of Harsha, had succeeded Prabhakar Vardhana.
- ❖ When **his sister Rajyashri** was imprisoned after killing her husband Grahavarman, ruler of Kannauj, by the ruler of Malwa, Devagupta and Shashanka, the ruler of Gauda, Rajya Vardhana undertook a campaign to release her sister.
- ❖ Rajya Vardhana defeated the Malwa army and killed Devagupta, but was unfortunately killed by Shashanka. It is important to note that **Shashanka also cut the Bodhi tree in Bodh Gaya** and occupied Kannauj.
- ❖ It was under these circumstances that Harsha then ascended the throne. He was only 16 years of age at that time, but he still proved himself to be a great warrior and an able administrator.
- ❖ Harsha immediately marched towards Kannauj and rescued his sister Rajyashri, who was believed to be on the verge of committing Sati.
- ❖ Kannauj subsequently came under the sovereignty of Pushyabhutis.

### Harsha's Military Conquests:

- ❖ Harsha gained many military victories. He brought most of north India under his control.
- ❖ He brought the **five 'Indies (regions)'** - Punjab, Kannauj, Bengal, Orissa, Mithila and assumed the title of 'Siladitya' as per Si-Yu-KI of Hsuan Tsang.
- ❖ He was victorious against the ruler of Sindh in the north west and also **defeated the Vallabhi king, Dhruvasena II**, as mentioned in the **Nausasi Copper Plate Inscription**.
- ❖ However, he was defeated by king Pulkesin II of Badami Chalukyan Dynasty on the banks of the river Narmada.

### The Boundaries of Harsha's Empire:

- ❖ Harsha's empire probably included - Thaneswar, Kannauj, Ahichchhatra, Shravasti and Prayag, and he extended his empire into Magadha and Orissa.
- ❖ The capital of Harsha was **originally Thaneswar, but he shifted it to Kannauj.**
- ❖ **Pulakesin II bestowed the title** of 'Sakalauttarapathanatha', meaning 'Lord of the entire North', upon him.
- ❖ The Narmada formed the southern boundary of his empire.
- ❖ In the east, the king of Kamrupa, Bhaskaravarman and Dhruvabhata accepted his overlordship, while in the west, the king of Vallabhi also did the same.
- ❖ The forest tribes of the Vindhyas too regularly paid tribute to Harsha and also helped him with military support.
- ❖ Some samantas and rajas used the Harsha era of 606 CE, which was the year of accession of Harsha Vardhana.

### The Religious Patronage of Harsha through the Eyes of Hsuan Tsang:

- ❖ Hsuan Tsang (also known as Hiuen Tsang) was a Chinese pilgrim who visited India during 629-644 CE. He visited India during the reign of Harsha **to study in the Buddhist University of Nalanda**, Bihar and to collect Buddhist text from India
- ❖ He was known as the **“Prince of Travellers”**.
- ❖ He authored **‘Si-Yu-Ki’** which means ‘My Experiences’. It is also called Records of the Western World.
- ❖ He spent many years in Harsha's court and traveled widely in India.
- ❖ Under his influence Harsha became **a great supporter of Buddhism** and made generous endowments.
- ❖ He earned Harsha's friendship and left a vivid account of the beauty, grandeur and prosperity of Kannauj.
- ❖ Hsuan Tsang gives a detailed account of a **grand assembly held at Kannauj** in 643 CE.
- ❖ It was attended by the representatives of Hinduism, Jainism and Buddhism, in which Hsuan Tsang along with others **gave discourses on Mahayana doctrines.**
- ❖ It was also attended by various subordinate kings including those of Vallabhi and Assam.
- ❖ A huge tower with a **golden statue of the Buddha** was constructed for the occasion, which was later worshiped by Harsha himself.
- ❖ He also used to celebrate a festival at Prayag at the end of every five years.
- ❖ He held the **Maha Moksha Parishad at Prayag** to uplift the spiritual life of people.
- ❖ The images of the Buddha, the Sun and Shiva were worshiped and gifts of valuable articles and clothing were distributed in charity.



- ❖ Hsuan Tsang visit is important as he shed light upon the socio-economic condition prevalent during Harsha's era.
- ❖ His account shows that Pataliputra was in the state of decline and so was Vaishali.
- ❖ Prayag and Kannauj had become important.

### Why did Pataliputra lost its relevance?

- ❖ Pataliputra owed its power and importance to **trade and commerce**, and the widespread use of money.
- ❖ **Tolls** could be collected from the traders who came to the city from the east, west, north, and south across four rivers.
- ❖ However, once **trade declined**, money became scarce, and officers and soldiers were paid through land grants, the city lost its importance.
- ❖ Power shifted to military camps (skandhavaras), and places of strategic importance which dominated long stretches of land.
- ❖ **Fortification of places** in the plains was far more difficult, but Kannauj was situated on an elevated area which was easily fortifiable.
- ❖ Therefore, to exercise control over the eastern and western wings of the doab, soldiers could be moved by both land and water routes.

### Hsuan Tsang Reports:

- ❖ Brahmins and Kshatriya to lead a simple life,
- ❖ But the nobles and priests led a luxurious life.
- ❖ The majority of people who were Brahmins and kshatriya had taken up agriculture.
- ❖ Hsuan Tsang called **Shudras as agriculturists** which is significant. Earlier texts represented them as serving the three varnas.
- ❖ He also mentions untouchables such as scavengers, executioners, etc. They lived outside the village. They used to announce their entry into the town by shouting loudly so that the people might keep away from them.

### His other Observations:

- ❖ He was amazed at **Prosperity of India**, people had a high standard of living, and Pataliputra was replaced by Kannauj as the major city.
- ❖ Caste system prevailed in the Hindu society.
- ❖ In food, onion & garlic were rarely used.
- ❖ **Sati** was prevalent during this time.
- ❖ He left a detailed account of **Nalanda University**.
- ❖ Also wrote about various kinds of cloth manufactured in India at that time.
- ❖ The **criminal law was stricter** than it was during the Gupta era.
- ❖ The most **common punishments** were exile and body part amputations. Life in prison was the penalty for breaking the law and for conspiring against the king, and trial by ordeal was frequently used.
- ❖ Harsha built **charitable institutions** for the stay of the travelers, and to care for the sick and the poor.
- ❖ According to Hsuan Tsang, the **occupations of the four divisions of society** continued to be in practice as in the previous times, however, there was no social conflict among the various sections of the society.



- ❖ **Women wore purdah.** However, the purdah system was not followed among the higher class.
- ❖ **Duties were to be paid at trade barriers** without fail. It was a source of income for the kingdom.

### **Buddhism in Harsha Era:**

- ❖ The Buddhists were divided into 18 sects during Harsha's period.
- ❖ The most famous Buddhist center at that time was **Nalanda** which hosted a great Buddhist university meant for buddhist monks. It had as many as 10,000 students.
- ❖ They were taught **Buddhist philosophy** relating to the Mahayana school.
- ❖ According to Hsuan Tsang, the monastery at Nalanda was supported by the revenue of 100 villages.
- ❖ Harsha was himself a Shaiva in early years. Gradually he became a patron of Buddhism.
- ❖ As a devout Buddhist, Harsha convened a grand assembly at Kannauj to widely publicize the doctrine of Mahayana.
- ❖ Apart from Hsuan Tsang and the Kamarupa ruler, the assembly was attended by the Kings of 20 countries and several thousand priests belonging to different sects.

### **A famous historical incident took place at this assembly:**

- ❖ Here Hsuan Tsang dictated the virtues of Mahayana Buddhism and challenged the audience to refute his argument.
- ❖ No one came forward for 5 days and then his rivals conspired to take his life.
- ❖ Harsha threatened to assassinate anybody causing the least hurt to Hsuan Tsang.
- ❖ Suddenly the great tower established in the middle of the assembly caught fire and an attempt to assassinate Harsha was made.
- ❖ Harsha then arrested 500 brahmins and executed some of them.
- ❖ Kannauj assembly was held in the **Honour of Hiuen-Tsang** and to popularize Mahayana sect of buddhism.
- ❖ The Prayaga assembly was held at the beginning of the **Kumbh fair**.

### **I-Tsing observations of Nalanda Monastery**

- ❖ A Chinese traveler I-Tsing visited India in **670 CE** and lived for ten years at the **Nalanda monastery**.
- ❖ He describes that Nalanda was supported by the revenues of 200 villages.
- ❖ There were around 3000 students on its rolls in Nalanda University.
- ❖ Nalanda University had an **observatory and a great library**.
- ❖ Nalanda University attracted scholars from various parts of the world.

### **Harsha as a patron of Arts:**

- ❖ Harsha was very talented himself and he wrote three dramas:
  - **Priyadarshika** (Romantic comedy)
  - **Ratnavali** (Romantic comedy)
  - **Nagananda** (based on Bodhisattva Jimutavahana).
- ❖ He also has to his credit a work on **grammar** and **two Sutra** works.
- ❖ He himself composed the text of the two inscriptions **Madhuban and Banskhera** (both in UP)\*. These two inscriptions contain his **signature and exhibit his calligraphic skills**.



- ❖ According to Banabhatta, he was also an accomplished flute player.
- ❖ He established a large monastery at Nalanda.

### Harsha's court Poets:

- ❖ **Banabhatta:** He was the author of **Harshacharita, Kadambari and Parvathi Parinayam,**
- ❖ Mayura: He was the author of Mayura Satakam
- ❖ Grammarian Bhartrihari: He was the author of Vakyapadiya.
- ❖ Matanga Divakara

### Harsha's Daily Routine:

- ❖ Harsha personally supervised the administration.
- ❖ According to the records of Hsuan Tsang, he divided his day into three parts:
  - Attending to **administrative duties** during the first and
  - Devoting himself to **religious work** during the other two.
  - Work relating to **Law and order:**
    - He used to have frequent tours of inspection around his kingdom.
    - However, law and order conditions were not good.
    - Hsuan Tsang testifies this by stating that he was robbed in his reign.

### The Laws of the Land:

- ❖ The laws of the land were severe.
- ❖ Generally, robbery was considered as second only to treason, for which the right hand of robber was amputated.
- ❖ But later it appears under the influence of Buddhism, the severity of punishment was mitigated and criminals were punished for life.

### Harsha's Administration:

- ❖ Harsha administered his empire on the same line as Gupta did except that administration under Harsha had become more feudal and decentralized.
- ❖ The leading feudatories of Harsha were:
  - Bhaskaravarmana of Kamarupa
  - Dhruvabhatta of Vallabhi
  - Purnavarman of Magadha and
  - Udit of Jalandhara.
- ❖ Harsha personally supervised the administration.
- ❖ **Army:** It is said that Harsha had 1,00,000 horses and 60,000 elephants. However, Mauryas who ruled over practically the whole country had only 30,000 horses and 9000 elephants.
- ❖ Such a large strength of Harsha's army is possible only when every feudatory contributed his quota of foot soldiers and horses to the imperial army.
- ❖ His imperial army was supplemented by contributory forces from feudatories in the times of need.
- ❖ The army consisted of infantry, cavalry, chariots and elephants. The power shifted to **military camps** known as **skandhavaras**.

### Land Grants:

- ❖ Land grants to priests in lieu of their special services continued in his administration.
- ❖ It is generally presumed that land grants to officers by charters in lieu of their salary probably began with Harsha. The evidence for this is that Harsha issued a lesser number of coins in his time.
- ❖ These grants contained the same privileges as enjoyed by Brahmadeya lands.
- ❖ There were three types of land grants: Brahmadeya - Devadana - Agrahara.
  1. **Brahmadeya:** Land grants to religious institutions (i.e., donated to Brahmins)
  2. **Devadana:** Land donated to Gods
  3. **Agrahara:** Settlement of priests.
- ❖ These lands donated to the temples and monasteries apart from being used as normal tenancy also carried a right vested with the temple authorities to call for **unpaid labor (called Vishti)** as a religious service to the temple from the tillers on the donated lands.

### Taxation/Revenue:

- ❖ Hsuan Tsang states that people were **taxed lightly**.
- ❖ The revenues were divided into four parts:
  1. One part for the **king**
  2. Second part reserved for **scholars**
  3. Third part for the endowments of **officials and public servants**
  4. Fourth part for **religious purposes**.

### Harshavardhana's Diplomacy:

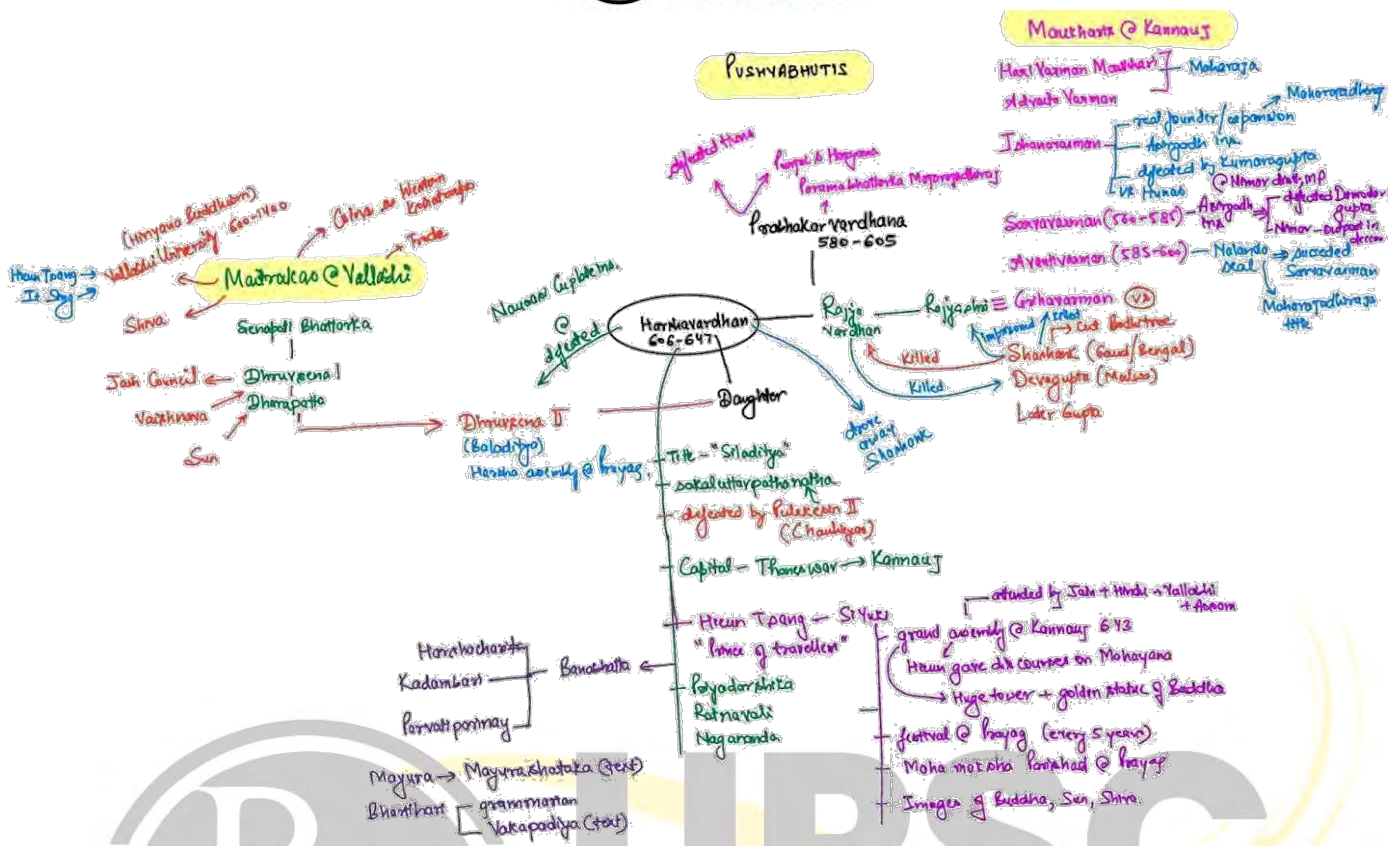
- ❖ He had diplomatic relations with the Chinese as his contemporary T'ang Emperor sent three embassies to his court.
- ❖ The last of these, under Wang-Hiuen-Tse, came to India in 647 CE when Harsha was no longer alive.

### After Harsha's Accession:

- ❖ Harshavardhana united his kingdom with that of his widowed sister Rajayashri and shifted his capital to Kannauj and is described as the Lord of the North (Sakalauttarapathanatha). He brought Punjab, Uttar Pradesh, Bengal, Bihar and Orissa under his control.
- ❖ Harsha wanted to extend his power in the Deccan. But he was **defeated by Pulakesin II**, the Chalukya ruler, on the banks of river Narmada. The river thus became the southern boundary of his kingdom.

### After Harsha:

- ❖ The death of Harsha was followed by a **period of political confusion** that continued up to the 8th century, when the Gurjara-Pratiharas and the Rajput rulers emerged as a big force in northern India.



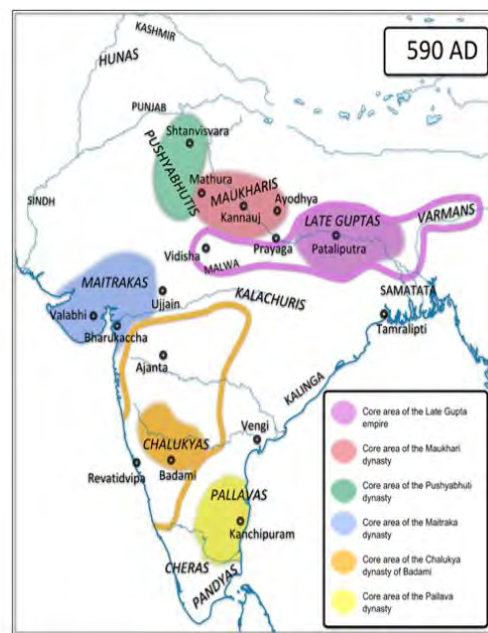
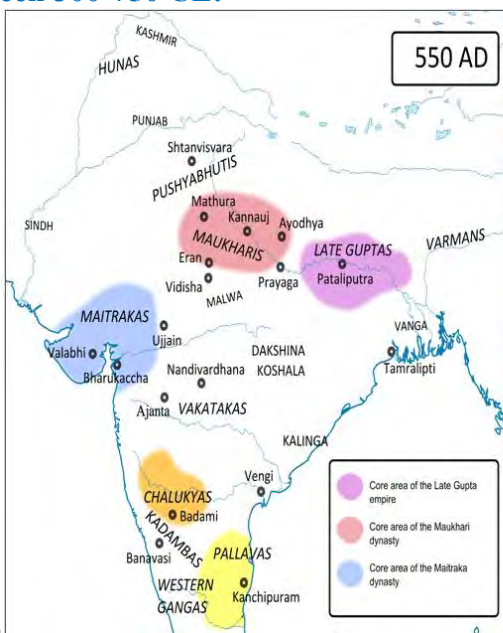
**Important Officials during the Medieval period:**

Officials:	Description:
Maha Sandhi Vighraha	Officer to decide about war and peace
Mahabaladhikrit	Highest official of the Army
Baladhikrit	The commander
Vrihadeshwawar	Head of Cavalry
Ayuktak	Ordinary officer
Katuk	Head of elephant brigade
Doot Rajastharuya	Foreign Minister
Uparik Maharaj	Provincial head
Vanapalas	The forest guards
Sarva-palli-patti	The chief of all villages

### Gupta's Successors States:

#### Southern India Between 300-750 CE:

- ❖ The period from c. 300-750 CE marks the second historical phase in the region south of the Vindhyas.
- ❖ It continued some processes from the first historical phase (c. 200 BCE-300 CE) but it also differed in many respects.



200 BCE-300 CE:	300-750 CE:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ <b>The Satavahanas, the Cholas, the Cheras and the Pandyas.</b></li> <li>❖ Numerous <b>crafts, internal and external trade, widespread use of coins</b> and a good number of <b>towns.</b></li> <li>❖ Patronage to Buddhism - <b>Buddhist monuments</b> in both <b>Andhra</b> and <b>Maharashtra</b>; Cave inscriptions exist of <b>Jainism and Buddhism</b> in southern districts of <b>Tamil Nadu.</b></li> <li>❖ The epigraphs were mostly <b>written in Prakrit.</b></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ <b>Vakatakas, Pallavas of Kanchi, the Chalukyas of Badami, the Pandyas of Madurai.</b></li> <li>❖ <b>Trade, towns and coinage declined.</b> Expansion of <b>agrarian economy.</b></li> <li>❖ More emphasis on <b>Brahmanism</b>; <b>Vedic sacrifices</b> by kings.</li> <li>❖ Jainism was restricted to Karnataka.</li> <li>❖ The culture of <b>Megaliths</b> paved the way for <b>temple construction.</b></li> <li>❖ <b>Sanskrit</b> became the official language.</li> </ul>

### The Gangas:

- ❖ The Gangas were another **contemporary of the Pallavas.** They set up their rule in **Southern Karnataka** around the 4th Century.
- ❖ Their Kingdom lay between that of the **Pallavas in the east** and of the **Kadambas in the west.**
- ❖ They are called **Western Gangas or Gangas of Mysore** in order to demarcate them from **Eastern Gangas** who ruled over **Kalinga** from the 5th century onwards.
- ❖ For most of the time the western Gangas were the **feudatories of the Pallavas.** Their earliest capital was located at **Kolar**, which may have helped the rise of this dynasty because of its **gold mines.**
- ❖ The western Gangas made land grants mostly to the **Jainas.**

### Kadambas:

- ❖ The Kadambas founded their rule in **Northern Karnataka and Konkan** in the 4th century A.D.
- ❖ They claimed to be Brahmans and gave generous support to the Brahmans.
- ❖ The founder of the Kadambas dynasty was **Mayurasharman**.
- ❖ The Kadambas established their **capital at Vijayanti or Banavasi** in North Kanara district in Karnataka.
- ❖ Kadambas were the earliest native kingdom to rule over the modern state of Karnataka.
- ❖ Kadambas were **contemporaries of the Pallavas** and claimed to be **Brahmanas**. They also generously gifted a lot to the **Brahmanas**.
- ❖ **Mayurasharman** defeated the Pallavas with the help of forest tribes and established this dynasty in 345 AD.
- ❖ Recognising his authority, the Pallavas formally presented Mayurasharman with **royal insignia**.
- ❖ The **earliest Kannada language inscriptions** are attributed to the Kadambas.
- ❖ Mayurasharman's son **Kangavarman** assumed the title **Dharmamaharajadhiraja** ("Lawful King of Kings").
- ❖ **Kakusthavarman (r. 425–450)** was a powerful ruler involved in many marriage alliances with the Guptas and other kingly families. He was considered a formidable Kadamba warrior.
- ❖ Ravivarman (485–519) was the last important king of the Kadamba dynasty.
- ❖ The Kadamba kingdom came to an end with Badami Chalukya ruler Pulakeshin II capture of Banavasi.



### Badami Chalukyas (6th-8th Century A.D.):

- ❖ Vakatakas in northern Maharashtra and Vidarbha (Berar) were the Chalukyas of Badami. They were strong in Deccan and South India.
- ❖ They had a strong maritime power and they set up their kingdom in western Deccan with the **capital at Vatapi (modern Badami in Karnataka)**.

### Branches of Chalukyas:

- ❖ Along with the Chalukyas of Badami there were two other branches of the lineage who ruled independently:
  - Eastern Chalukyas of Vengi (Andhra Pradesh)
  - Western Chalukyas
- ❖ The Badami Chalukyas, in order to acquire legitimacy and respectability, claimed Brahmanical origin as Haritiputras of the Manavya gotra.
- ❖ The earliest dynasty, known as the Badami Chalukyas, ruled from their capital Badami from the middle of the sixth century.



- ❖ The **Badami Chalukyas** began to assert their independence at the decline of the Kadamba kingdom of Banavasi and rapidly rose to prominence during the reign of Pulakesi II.
- ❖ After the death of Pulakesi II, the Eastern Chalukyas became an independent kingdom in the eastern Deccan. They ruled from the capital Vengi until about the eleventh century.
- ❖ In the western Deccan, the rise of the Rashtrakutas in the middle of the eighth century eclipsed the Chalukyas of Badami before being revived by their descendants, the Western Chalukyas in the late tenth century. Those Western Chalukyas ruled from Basavakalyan till the end of the twelfth century.

### Important rulers of Badami Chalukyas (6th-8th Century A.D.):

#### Pulakeshin I (c. 535-566 CE):

- ❖ He is regarded as the founder of Badami Chalukyas and their capital was at Vatapi (Badami).
- ❖ He assumed the **titles**: Satyashraya and Ranavikrama
- ❖ He performed Ashvamedha sacrifice.

#### Kirtivarman I (c. 566-598 CE):

- ❖ He was the son of Pulakeshin I.
- ❖ **Expansion during his reign:**
  - He **defeated the Kadambas of Banavasi** (near Mysore), the Mauryas of the Konkan and the Nalas of the Bastar area.

#### Mangalesha (c. 598-609 CE):

- ❖ After Kirtivarman I's death, there was a war of succession between his brother Mangalesha and nephew Pulakeshin II, in which Pulakeshin II emerged triumphant.

#### Pulakeshin II (c. 610-642 CE) :

- ❖ He was the most powerful king of this dynasty.
- ❖ His eulogy was written by his **court poet Ravikirti in the Aihole inscription.**
- ❖ **Military Expeditions:**
  - The Aihole inscription described his victories against the Kadambas of Banavasi, Alupas and Gangas of Mysore.
  - He conquered Elephanta Island from the Mauryas, the rulers of Konkan.
  - He also led expeditions against eastern Deccan kingdoms, south Kosala and Kalinga.
  - He also defeated the 'Lord of the North (Sakalauttarapathanatha) Harsha Vardhana on the banks of river Narmada. He thus acquired the title of "**Dakshinapatheshvara**" (**The Lord of the South**).
- ❖ **Diplomacy:**
  - Sent an embassy to Persian king Khusro II mentioned in the Ajanta Caves.
  - Later, Persian emperor Khusrao II exchanged ambassadors with Pulakesi II is depicted in the Ajanta Caves)





### ❖ **Religious Policy:**

- Hsuan Tsang visited his kingdom and he described that even though Pulakeshin II was Hindu, he was **tolerant towards Buddhism and Jainism.**
- At the time of that visit, he mentions, Pulakesi II had divided his empire into three **Maharashtrakas** or great provinces comprising 99,000 villages each. That empire possibly covered present day Karnataka, Maharashtra and coastal Konkan.
- Hiuen-Tsang, impressed with the governance of the empire, observed that the benefits of the king's efficient administration extended far and wide.

### ❖ **Conflict with Pallavas:**

- He had conflicts with the Pallavas of Kanchi.
- **Expedition I:** He annexed the region between Krishna and Godavari popularly known as **Vengi** from the Pallavas and placed it under his brother Vishnuvardhana.
- Vishnuvardhana later established the Eastern Chalukyas branch or Chalukyas of Vengi.
- Thus, the first expedition against the Pallavas was a complete success. Mahendravarman I was the Pallava ruler.
- **Expedition II:** He proved to be a complete failure as King Narsimhavarman I of the Pallava dynasty killed Pulkeshin II and adopted the **epithet of Vatapikonda.**
- Badami was occupied by the Pallavas for a period of 13 years.
- It marked the beginning of a long-drawn political struggle between the Pallavas and Chalukyas that continued with ups and downs for more than a hundred years.

### **Vikramaditya I (c. 655-680 CE):**

- ❖ He succeeded in pushing the Pallavas out of Badami and **re-established authority.**
- ❖ He not only defeated successive Pallava rulers but also **captured their capital Kanchi.**
- ❖ Vikramaditya I took the title '**Rajamalla**' (meaning 'the Sovereign of the Mallas' or Pallavas).
- ❖ He also defeated the Cheras, Cholas and Pandyas.

### **Vijayaditya (c. 696-733 CE):**

- ❖ He was a prosperous king at the age of 37 years.
- ❖ He was widely known for his prolific **temple building activity.**

### **Vikramaditya II (c. 733-746 CE):**

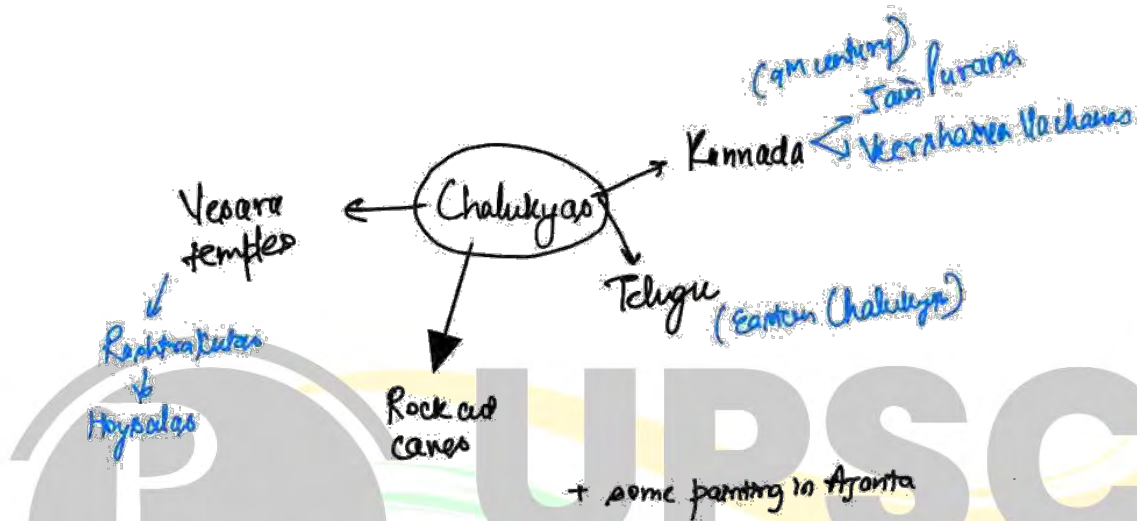
- ❖ The **Vatapi Dynasty** was **at its peak** again during his rule.
- ❖ He was best known for his repeated invasions of the territory of **Tondaimandalam** and his subsequent victories over **Pallava King Nandivarman II.**
- ❖ He thus avenged the earlier humiliation of the Chalukyas by the Pallavas and in order to commemorate his victory got engraved a Kannada inscription on the victory pillar of the **Kailasanath Temple.**
- ❖ He is also known for benevolence towards the people and the monuments of **Kanchipuram, the Pallava capital.**
- ❖ During his reign, Arab intruders of the **Umayyad Caliphate invaded southern Gujarat**, which was under Chalukya rule, but the Arabs were defeated and driven out by Pulakesi, a Chalukya governor of Navsari.

- ❖ He later also overran the other traditional kingdoms of Tamil country, the **Pandys, the Cholas and the Cheras**, in addition to subduing a **Kalabhra ruler**.

### Kirtivarman II (c. 746-753 CE):

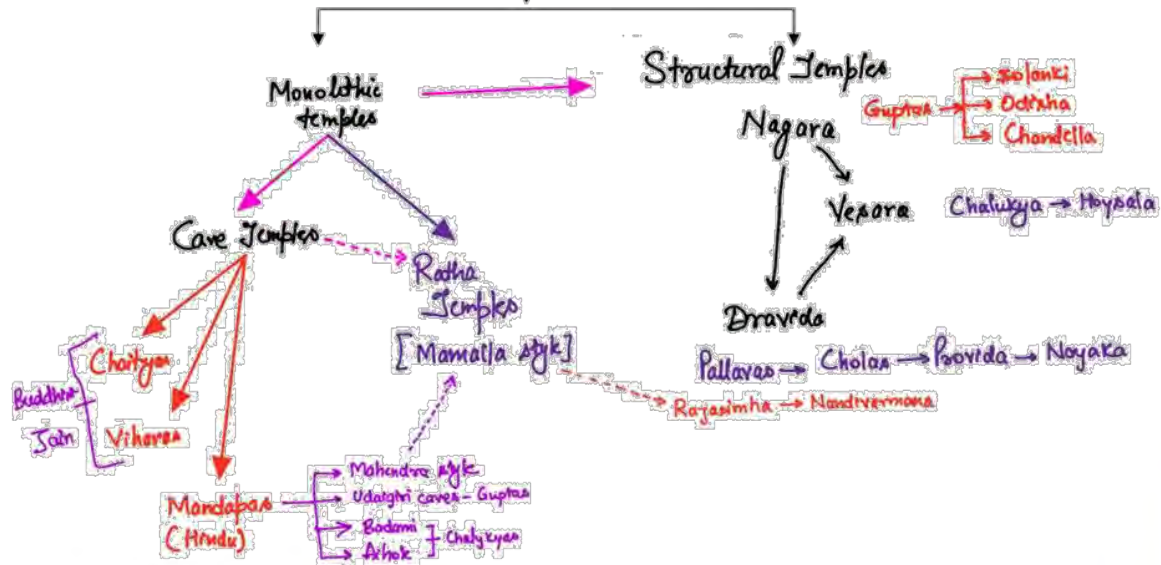
- ❖ He was the last ruler.
- ❖ He was **replaced by Dantidurga** and established the **Rashtrakuta Dynasty**.
- ❖ Thus, Badami Chalukyas rule came to an end in 753 CE by one of their feudatories Rashtrakutas.

### The Historical Significance of Chalukya Dynasty:



- ❖ The rise of the Chalukyas marks an important milestone in the history of South India and a **golden age in the history of Karnataka**.
- ❖ The political atmosphere in South India shifted from smaller kingdoms to large empires with the rise of Badami Chalukyas.
- ❖ For the first time in history, a South Indian kingdom took **control and consolidated the entire region between the Kaveri and the Narmada rivers**.
- ❖ The rise of that empire also saw the:
  - The birth of efficient administration,
  - The rise in overseas trade and commerce
  - The development of a new style of architecture called Vesara.
  - Their style of architecture is called '**Chalukyan architecture**'. They developed **Deccan or Vesara style of temple-building**, which reached its culmination under the Rashtrakutas and the Hoyasalas (13<sup>th</sup> century).
  - They built monuments like **rock-cut caves and structural temples** in the Malaprabha river basin.
  - Around the ninth century, it also saw the **growth of Kannada as a language of literature** in the Jaina Puranas, Veerashaiva Vachanas and Brahmanical traditions.
  - The eleventh century saw the birth of Telugu literature under the patronage of the Eastern Chalukyas.
- ❖ Many **paintings and sculptures of the Ajanta and Ellora caves** were completed during the Chalukyan reign.

## Temple architecture in India (Vertical classification)



### Architecture during Chalukya Period:

- ❖ The period of Badami Chalukya Dynasty saw art flourish in South India.
- ❖ The glory of the art and architecture in Deccan reached its pinnacle under the patronage of Badami Chalukyas. The **temple architecture, both cave and structural, was perfected** in this period.
- ❖ It brought about some important developments in the realm of culture, particularly in the evolution and proliferation of a new style of architecture known as **Vesara, a combination of the South Indian and the North Indian building styles.**
- ❖ The building material they used was a **reddish-golden Sandstone** found locally.
- ❖ Though they ruled a vast empire, the Chalukyan workshops concentrated most of their temple building activity in a relatively small area within the Chalukyan heartland – Aihole, Badami, Pattadakal and Mahakuta in modern Karnataka state.
- ❖ Their temple building activity can be categorized into three phases. The **early phase** began in the **last quarter of the 6th century** and resulted in many cave temples, prominent among which are three elementary.
- ❖ **Cave temples at Aihole** (one Vedic, one Jain and one Buddhist which is incomplete), followed by four developed cave temples at Badami (of which cave 3, a Vaishnava temple, is dated accurately to 578 CE).
- ❖ More than 150 monuments attributed to the Badami Chalukya, and built between 450 and 700, remain in the Malaprabha basin in Karnataka. The **rock-cut temples of Pattadakal, a UNESCO World Heritage Site**, Badami and Aihole constitute their most celebrated monuments. That marks the beginning of Chalukya style of architecture and a consolidation of South Indian style.
- ❖ Their temple building activity can be categorized primarily into three phases:
- ❖ Early Phase in the last quarter of the 6th century.
- ❖ The second Phase
- ❖ Mature Phase

### Early phase of Temple Building:

- ❖ In this phase, prominently **cave temples** were built, such as the three elementary cave temples at Aihole:
  - one Vedic
  - one Jaina and
  - one Buddhist which is incomplete

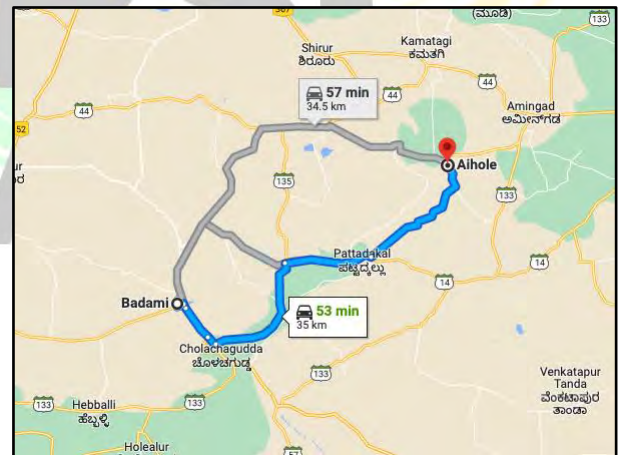


**Ravana phadi cave at Aihole**



### Aihole Cave Temples:

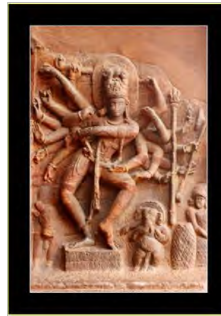
- ❖ There are two notable cave shrines at Aihole, **one Shaiva and the other Jaina**, both with heavily ornamented interiors.
- ❖ The Shaiva cave, known as the **Ravanaphadi cave**, consists of a central hall, two side shrine sections, and a garbhagriha with a linga at the back.
- ❖ There are sculptures on the walls and on part of the ceiling as well. These include representations of **Shiva as Nataraja** and of the **Sapta-Matrikas**.
- ❖ Compared to the figures at Badami, the figures are slenderer and have tall crowns.
- ❖ Outside the entrance of the cave, there are carvings of dwarfs and doorkeepers wearing Scythian-type attire.



### Badami Cave Temples:

- ❖ Followed by four cave temples with marvelous sculptures were built at Badami.
  - Cave-I belongs to **Shaivism**
  - Cave II & III belong to **Vaishnavism**
  - Cave IV belongs to **Jainism**.

- ❖ It means, the three caves' temples are Vedic and one in Jain.
- ❖ These cave temples consist of the most beautiful sculptures depicted on the walls.
- ❖ Lord Vishnu in his various incarnations and Lord Shiva in different forms have been beautifully sculpted. The Jain cave temple has the statues of Tirthankaras and naked Gomateswara.
- ❖ These cave temples at Badami each have a **plain exterior** but an exceptionally **well finished interior** consisting of a pillared verandah, a columned hall (mantapa) and a cell (shrine, cut deep into rock) which contains the deity of worship.
- ❖ The Vedic temples contain large well sculpted images of Harihara, Mahishasuramardhini, Varaha, Narasimha, Trivikrama, Vishnu seated on Anantha (the snake) and Nataraja (dancing Shiva)



Cave 1, Badami,  
Nataraja Sculpture



Cave 3, Badami,  
Trivikrama, Vamana  
Avatar of Vishnu



Cave 4, Badami,  
Jaina Sculpture

### The Second Phase of Temple Building:

- ❖ This phase of temple building was at Aihole and Badami.
- ❖ Aihole has been called '**one of the cradles of Indian temple architecture**', where some 70 structures exist.

#### Aihole:

- ❖ Some important temples are:
  - **Lad Khan Temple:** There are interesting perforated stone windows and sculptures of river goddesses.
  - **Meguti Jain Temple:** It shows progress in structural design,
  - **Durga Temple:** With its northern Indian style tower.



Ladh Khan Temple, Aihole

- ❖ Other Dravida style temples from this period are the Naganatha Temple at Nagaral, the **Banantigudi Temple and the Mahakutesvara Temple.**

- ❖ Though the exact dating of these temples has been debated, there is consensus that the beginnings of these constructions are from c. 600.

- ❖ The **Vesara style** influenced the Eastern Chalukyas (Vengi) but Kalyani (W) Chalukyas further refined the Vesara style with an inclination towards Dravidian concepts, especially in the sculptures. They built fine monuments in the Tungabhadra-Krishna River doab in present day Karnataka.



Durga Temple, Aihole



Meguti hill enclosing  
the Jain temple,



- ❖ The Veerashaiva religion, as professed and practiced in Karnataka during the past several centuries forms a significant chapter in the history of Indian culture and finds its sublime significance and importance in the Vachanashastra.
- ❖ No doubt it has absorbed several elements from the Trika, the Shaiva Siddhanta and other Indian schools of thought, but the assimilation of all these elements into an entity that is Veerashaivism is in itself an original achievement.
- ❖ The Astavaranas, the Satsthala, the wearing and worshiping of Linga, the various Veerashaiva rites – all those mark Veerashaivism as an independent religion.

### The Mature Phase of Temple Building:

#### Pattadakal:

- ❖ The mature phase includes the **structural temples at Pattadakal**.
- ❖ They were built in the 8<sup>th</sup> century and are now a **UNESCO World Heritage Site**. There are ten temples at Pattadakal:
- ❖ Six in southern Dravida style and
- ❖ Four in the northern Nagara style.

#### Important temples:

- ❖ Sangamesvara Temple,
- ❖ Virupaksha Temple
- ❖ Mallikarjuna Temple

#### Badami:

- ❖ The **Bhutanatha group of temples** at Badami are also from this period.
- ❖ Vikramaditya II commissioned the majestic temples at Pattadakal.
  - **Dravidian style:** Virupaksha and Mallikarjuna, Sangameswara and a Jain temple
  - **Nagara style:** Jambulinga, Kasi Visweswara, and Galaganatha
    - The Papanatha temple shows an attempt to combine the Northern and Southern styles.
- ❖ According to some art critics, the Badami Chalukya style constitutes a "**prayaga**" or **confluence of formal trends of architecture**, the Dravida and the Nagara style.
- ❖ Sage Bharata's dance Natyasastra entered an advanced stage of development.
- ❖ The **Virupaksha temple** is the largest and most sophisticated of the monuments at Pattadakal.
  - The walls and pillars of the entire Virupaksha temple are adorned with intricate carvings and sculptures depicting the various episodes of Ramayan, Mahabharat and other legends.

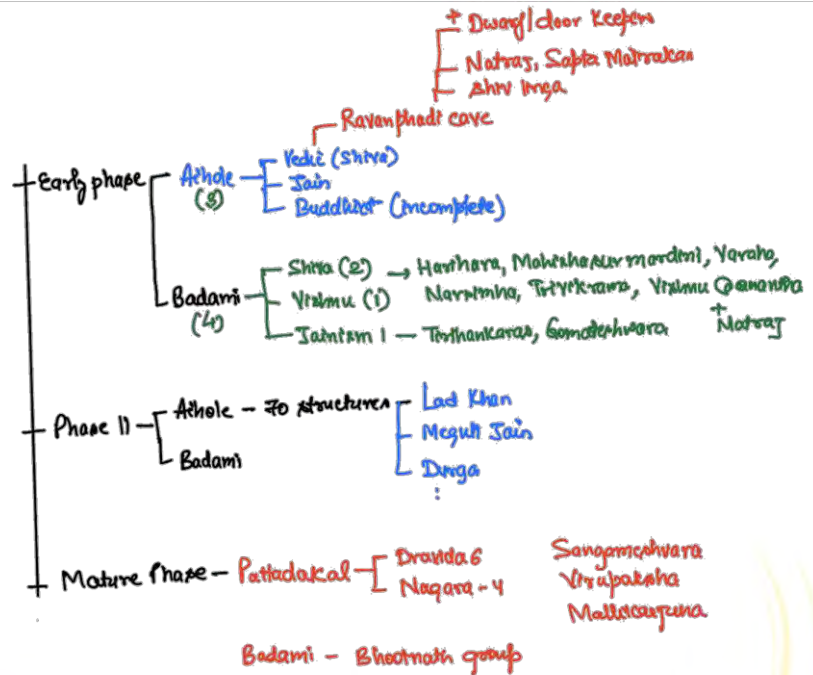


**Rock-cut temples of  
Pattadakal**



**Sangameswara temple, Pattadakal**

- This was built at the instance of **lokamahadevi**, chief queen of the Chalukya king **Vikramaditya II (733-746 CE)**.
- Inscriptional evidence suggests that the Virupaksha and the Mallakarjuna Temples were commissioned by the two queens of King Vikramaditya II (733-746 CE) after his military success over the **Pallavas of Kanchipuram**.
- Virupaksha resembles the Kailasanatha Temple at Kanchi.



### Geographical location of Nagara, Dravida and Vesara styles of Temples:

- ❖ The Nagara temple style is associated with the land between the Himalayas and Vindhyas.
- ❖ The Vesara temple style is sometimes associated with the area between the Vindhyas and the Krishna River.
- ❖ The term '**Karnata-Dravida**' is a better term than 'Vesara' for the Chalukya temples of the Deccan.
- ❖ The Dravida temple style with the land between the Krishna and Kaveri rivers.

### The Emergence of Nagara Style:

- ❖ The basic plan of the Nagara temple is square, with a number of projections in the middle of each side, giving it a cruciform shape.
- ❖ The temple's elevation is marked by a conical or convex **shikhara** of temple tower, consisting of several layers of carved courses, usually crowned by an **amalaka** (notched ring stone).
- ❖ These two features-the cruciform plan and Curvilinear shikhara-are visible in northern temples from the 6th century CE (the 'late Gupta' period), for example in the **Dashavatara temple at Deogarh** and the **brick temple at Bhitargaon** (both in UP).
- ❖ The earliest traces of such features go back to the Gupta period and are not restricted to the far south-e.g., they occur in northern and central India and the Deccan.
- ❖ The beginnings of the typical Nagara shikhara can be seen in the **Mahadeva temple at Nachna Kuthara** (7th century) (MP) and the brick Lakshmana temple at Sirpur (Chattisgarh).



Parvati temple at Nachna Kuthara  
(Nagara style)

- ❖ The fully developed Nagara style is evident by the 8th century.
- ❖ They can be seen in the Parvati temple at Nachna Kuthara and the Lad Khan, Kont Gudi, and Meguti temples at Aihole.



Dashavatara Temple, Deogarh



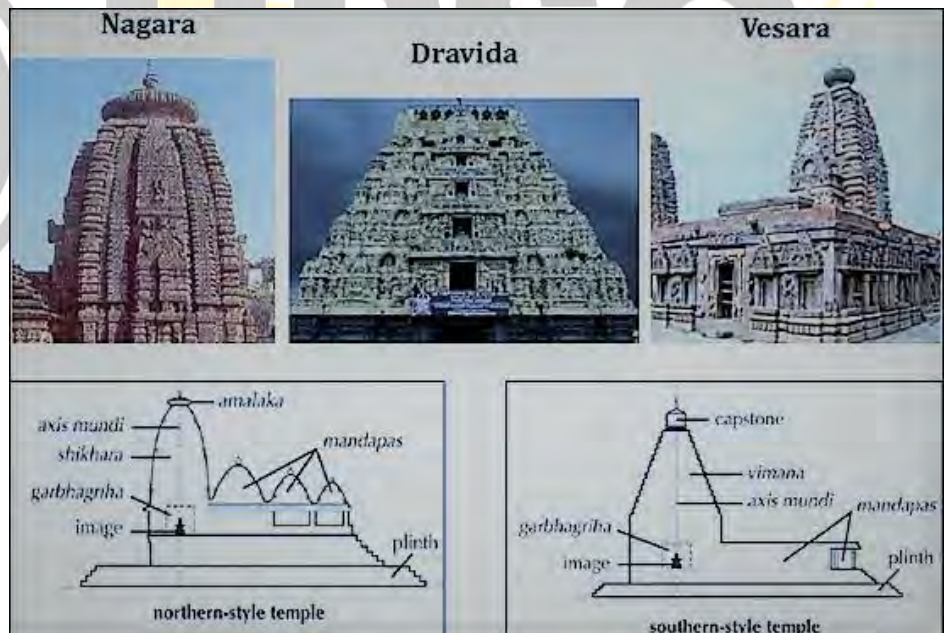
Dashavatara Temple, Deogarh

### The Emergence of Dravida Style:

- ❖ The most striking feature of the Dravida temple is its **pyramidal shikhara**, which consists of progressively smaller and smaller storeys, culminating in a slender pinnacle surmounted by a small dome (stupika).
- ❖ In a later stage, South Indian temples came to be marked by **huge gateways known as gopurams** and by pillared halls and corridors.
- ❖ In temples built in the Dravida style, the square inner sanctum is set within a large covered enclosure.
- ❖ The Vesara style is a hybrid style (vesara literally means 'mule' - a hybrid between a horse and a donkey) that borrowed from the northern and southern styles.
- ❖ It is difficult to define, as the mixture of northern and southern elements may vary.
- ❖ Temples built in the Deccan under the later Chalukyas of Kalyani and Hoysalas are considered best examples of this style.

### Coinage during the Chalukya Period:

- ❖ The Badami Chalukyas minted coins of a different standard compared to the northern kingdoms.
- ❖ The coins had **Nagari and Kannada legends**.
- ❖ They minted coins with **symbols of temples, lion or boar facing right, and the lotus**.
- ❖ The coins weighed **four grams, called honnu** in old Kannada and had fractions such as fana and the quarter fana, whose modern-day equivalent being hana (literally means, money).
- ❖ Some records in Pattadakal mention a **gold coin called Gadyana**, later called a 'Varaha', also published on their emblem.



Coins issued by Badami Chalukya

### Literature during the Chalukya Period:

- ❖ The rule of the Chalukyas embodies a major event in the history of **Kannada and Telugu languages**.
- ❖ During that time, writing epic narratives and poetry in Sanskrit proved exceptionally popular.
  - In the eleventh century, the patronage of the Eastern Chalukyas, with Nannaya Bhatta as its first writer, gave birth to **Telugu literature**.
  - Famous writers in Sanskrit from that period include **Vijnaneshwara** who achieved fame by writing **Mitakshara** a book on Hindu law/commentary over Yagnvalakya Smriti
  - **Somesvara III** became a great scholar and king, compiling an encyclopedia of all arts and sciences called **Manasollasa**.
  - In Sanskrit, a few verses of a poetess called **Vijayanaka** have been preserved.
  - From the period of the Badami Chalukya no major Kannada literary work has been recovered, though many works have been referenced in later centuries.
  - The extant **Kappe Arabhatta** record of 700 AD in tripadi (three line) meter represents the earliest work in Kannada poetics.
  - The literary work **Karnateshwara Katha**, quoted later by Jayakirti, belonged to the period of Pulakesi II with the great king himself as the hero.
  - Other Kannada writers:
    - **Syamakundacharya** of 650 AD who wrote Prabhrta,
    - The celebrated **Srivaradhadeva** also called Tumubuluracharya of 650 (who wrote Chudamani, a commentary on Tattvartha-mahashastra in 96,000 verses)
    - King **Durvinita**, and others.
- ❖ Scholars consider the Aihole inscription of Pulakesi II, written by court poet Ravi Kirti in old Kannada script and Sanskrit language, an excellent piece of poetry.
- ❖ During the 9th-10th century, Kannada language had already seen some of its greatest writers. The three gems of Kannada literature, **Adikavi Pampa, Sri Ponna and Ranna** belonged to that period.



PW Mobile APP: <https://physicswala.page.link/?type=contact-us&data=open>

For PW Website: <https://www.physicswallah.live/contact-us>

# DAILY CLASS NOTES

## Medieval History

Lecture - 03

**Pallavas and  
Tripartite Struggle**



## Pallavas and Tripartite Struggle

### The Eastern Chalukyas of Vengi:

- ❖ In 624 CE **Pulakesin II** (c. 610-642 CE) appointed his brother Vishnuvardhana as the governor of the conquered **Vengi region**.
- ❖ Probably after the death of Pulkeshin II, Vishnuvardhana declared independence and established the Eastern Chalukyas kingdom.
- ❖ Initially, the capital of the Eastern Chalukyas was Vengi (near modern Eluru) but later it was moved to Rajamahendravaram (modern Rajamundry).
- ❖ **Strategic Location - Vengi:**
  - Throughout their history, the Eastern Chalukyas were the cause of many wars between the more powerful Cholas and Western Chalukyas since they controlled the strategic Vengi country.
- ❖ **Region of Arts:**
  - The Eastern Chalukyas nearly ruled the kingdom for five centuries.
  - They saw the efflorescence of Telugu culture, literature, poetry and art during the later half of their rule.
- ❖ **Decline:**
  - They continued ruling the region as feudatories of the Cholas until the end of 12th century; later their kingdom ultimately succumbed to the Hoysalas and the Yadavas.

### The Eastern Chalukyas - Important Rulers:

#### Vishnuvardhana (around c. 624 CE):

- ❖ He was the brother of Badami Chalukyan ruler Pulakeshin II.
- ❖ He established an independent kingdom.

#### Vijayaditya II (c. 808-847 CE):

- ❖ He was one of the most **important rulers** of this dynasty,
- ❖ He led successful military **expeditions against the Rashtrakutas and the Gangas**.
- ❖ He also led campaigns into Gujarat.
- ❖ Even the Rashtrakuta inscriptions acknowledge their **defeat at the hands of Vijayaditya** and they admit that the glory of their kingdom was 'drowned in the ocean of the Chalukyas'.

#### Vijayaditya III (c. 848-892 CE):

- ❖ He claimed to have won over not only the Pallavas, the Pandyas, the Gangas, the Rashtrakutas, the Kalachuris and South Kosala, but also gave shelter to a Chola king.



### Bhima I (c. 892-922 CE):

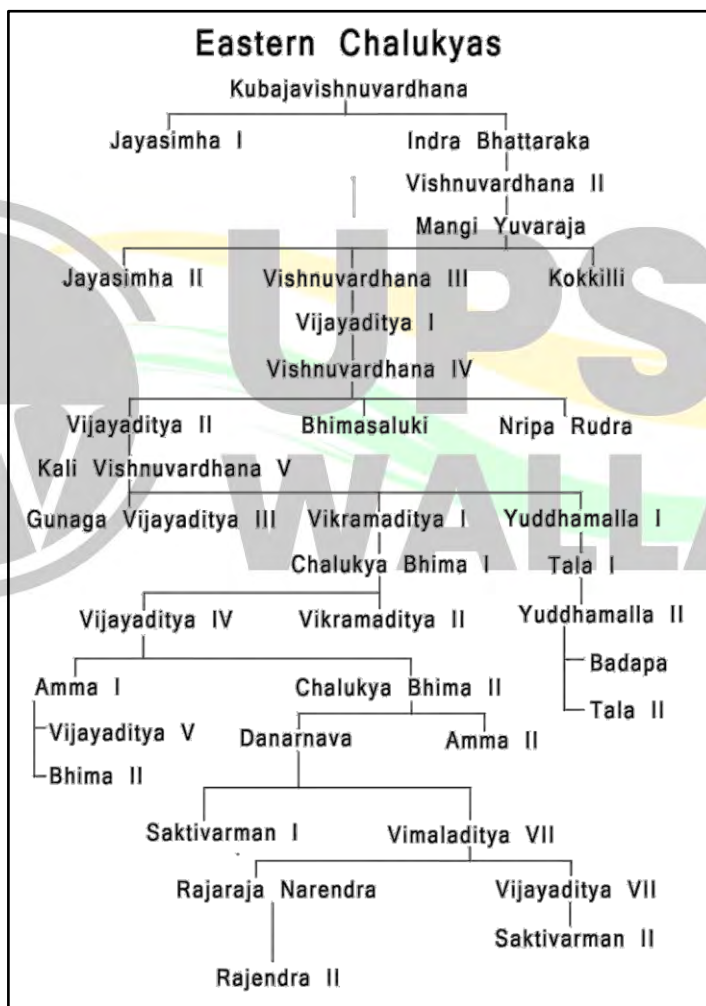
- ❖ He was captured by the Rashtrakuta king but was later released.

### Vijayaditya IV (around c.922 CE, for a period of six months):

- ❖ From his reign, many succession disputes erupted. The Rashtrakutas openly interfered and backed one or the other contenders.
- ❖ The later rulers thus had very short reigns, from six months to a mere fortnight too.

### Amma II (947 – 970 AD):

- ❖ Some political stability was restored during the reign of Amma II. But it did not last for a long time.



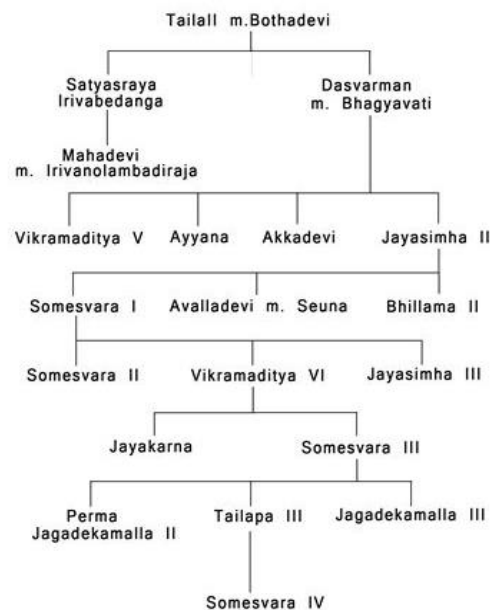
### Vengi/Eastern Chalukya:

- ❖ **Kubja Vishnuvardhana: 624–641**
- ❖ Jayasimha I: 641–673
- ❖ Indra Bhattaraka: 673
- ❖ Vishnu Vardhana II: 673–682
- ❖ Mangi Yuvaraja: 682–706
- ❖ Jayasimha II: 706–718
- ❖ Kokkili: 719
- ❖ Vishnuvardhana III: 719–755
- ❖ Vijayaditya I: 755–772
- ❖ Vishnuvardhana IV: 772–808
- ❖ **Vijayaditya II: 808–847**
- ❖ Kali Vishnuvardhana V: 847–849
- ❖ **Vijayaditya III: 849–892**
- ❖ Chalukya Bhima I: 892–921
- ❖ Vijayaditya IV: 921
- ❖ Amma I: 921–927
- ❖ Beta Vijayaditya V: 927
- ❖ Tala I: 927
- ❖ Vikramaditya II: 927–928
- ❖ Bhima II: 928
- ❖ Yuddhamalla II: 928–935
- ❖ Chalukya Bhima II: 935–947
- ❖ Amma II: 947–970
- ❖ Tala I: 970
- ❖ Danarnava: 970–973
- ❖ Jata Choda Bhima: 973–999
- ❖ Shaktivarman I: 1000–1011
- ❖ Vimaladitya: 1011–1018
- ❖ Rajaraja Narendra: 1019–1061
- ❖ Vijayaditya VII
- ❖ In 999 CE, the Eastern Chalukyas of Vengi were conquered by the **Chola king Rajaraja.**

## Western Chalukya or Chalukya of Kalyani:

- ❖ Tailapa II (957-997)
- ❖ Satyashraya (997-1008)
- ❖ Vikramaditya V (1008-1015)
- ❖ Jayasimha II (1015-1042)
- ❖ Someshvara I (1042-1068)
- ❖ Someshvara II (1068-1076)
- ❖ Vikramaditya VI (1076-1126)
- ❖ Someshvara III (1126-1138)
- ❖ Jagadhekamalla II (1138-1151)
- ❖ Tailapa III (1151-1164)
- ❖ Jagadhekamalla III (1163-1183)
- ❖ Someshvara IV (1184-1200)

## Western Chalukyas



### Assignment/Self Study:

#### The Chalukyas of Lata:

- ❖ They were different from Chalukyas and started as **feudatories of the Western Chalukyas**.
- ❖ Gradually during the 10th and 11th centuries, they declared themselves as independent rulers.
- ❖ Their area of administration is the **Lata region of present-day Gujarat**. Lata is identified as the area between Mahi River in the north and Narmada or Tapi River in south.
- ❖ Bharuch is a major city in the region.
- ❖ They were later **defeated by the Chalukyas of Gujarat (Solankis)**.
- ❖ **Important Rulers:**
  - **Nimbarka:** Not much known about his reign.
  - **Barappa (c. 970-990 CE):** He is regarded as the first prominent ruler of the Chalukyas of Lata.
    - ✓ Earlier he worked as a general of the Western Chalukya King Tailapa II and was made the governor of the Lata region by Tailapa.
    - ✓ It is believed that a joint army of Barappa and the Shakambhari king defeated the Solanki ruler Mularaja.
    - ✓ According to **Hemachandra's Dvyashraya Kavya**, Mularaja's son Chamunda-rajya invaded Lata and killed Barappa.





- **Gogi-rajā (c. 990-1010 CE):** He is Barappa's son and probably revived the kingdom.
- **Kirti-rajā (c. 1010-1030 CE):** The copper plate inscription of Kirti-rajā discovered in Surat and it lists the names of his ancestors as Gogi, Barappa and Nimbarka.
- **Vatsa-rajā (c. 1030-1050 CE):** He was believed to have built a golden umbrella for the god Somanatha. He also established a free food canteen (sattra).
- **Trilochana-pala (c.1050-1070 CE):**
  - ✓ Two copper plate inscriptions (1050 CE Ekallahara and 1051 CE Surat) related to Trilochana-pala have been discovered.
  - ✓ He is titled **Maha-Mandaleshvara** in these inscriptions.
  - ✓ These inscriptions give an account of the mythical origin of the **Chalukyas**.
  - ✓ According to these inscriptions, the family's progenitor originated from the chuluka (a vessel or a folded palm to hold water) of the creator deity Virinchi. On the deity's advice, he married the Rashtrakuta princess of Kanyakubja.
  - ✓ The 1050 CE inscription records his donation of the Ekallahara village to a Brahmin named Taraditya.
- ❖ By 1074 CE, the dynasty appears to have been **vanquished by the Solankis**.

### Kalabhra Revolt:

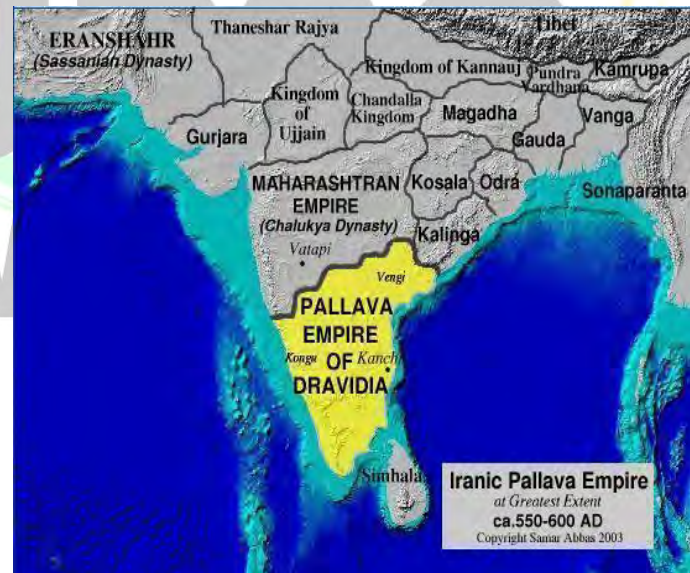
- ❖ During the 3rd - 6th century AD the Kalabhras came together in large numbers and revolted against the Chola, Pandya, Chera and Pallava kingdoms.
- ❖ This revolt was not seen in a positive light as they posed a serious challenge to Pandyas and Pallavas.
- ❖ Kalabhras put an **end to the 'Brahmadeya Rights'** (land grants to Brahmin) and mostly **patronized Buddhist monasteries**.
- ❖ Kalabhras' revolt was so widespread that it could be put down only through the joint efforts of the Pandyas, the Pallavas and the Chalukyas of Badami.
- ❖ King Simhavishnu of the Pallava dynasty defeated the Kalabhras.
- ❖ The Pandyan king Kadungon ended the Kalabhra rule in the southern Tamil region and he was credited for the triumph of Brahmanism over the evil Kalabhras.

## Pallavas:

- ❖ Pallavas On the ruins of the Satavahanas, in the eastern part of the peninsula arose the **Ikshvakus**. The Ikshvakus were supplanted by the Pallavas.
- ❖ They gained prominence after the eclipse of the Satavahana dynasty, whom the Pallavas served as feudatories.
- ❖ They had the authority over **south Andhra Pradesh** and **north Tamil Nadu** and their **capital was at Kanchi**.
- ❖ The term Pallava means '**creeper**', in Sanskrit it means tondi and in Tamil they are synonymous to robber.
- ❖ So, the Pallavas were probably a pastoral local tribe who established their authority in the land of creepers called Tondaimandalam (the land between the north Penner and north Vellar rivers.)
- ❖ The Pallava dynasty existed from 275 CE to 897 CE.
- ❖ There are several theories with regard to the origin of the Pallavas. Important among them are as follows:
  - There were the descendents of the Greek Parthians who came to India in the wake of Alexander's invasion.
  - They belong to a local clan.
  - They originated from Chola-Naga marriage.
  - They were Brahmins of the North.
  - They were originally robbers.

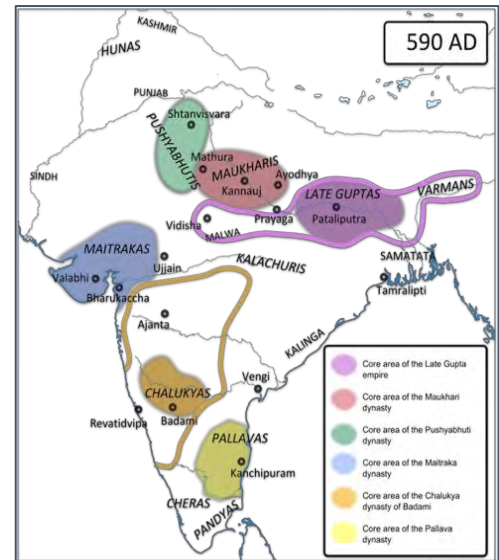
### Important Rulers of Pallava Dynasty:

- ❖ Vishnugopa II
- ❖ Simhavarman III
- ❖ Simhavishnu: (560-590)
- ❖ Mahendravarman I: (600-630)
- ❖ Narasimhavarman I: (630-668)
- ❖ Mahendravarman II: (668-670)
- ❖ Paramesvaravarman I: (670-695)
- ❖ Narasimhavarman II: (700-728)
- ❖ Paramesvaravarman II: (728-731)
- ❖ Nandivarman II: (731-795)
- ❖ Dantivarman: (795-846)
- ❖ Nandivarman III: (846-869)
- ❖ Aparajitavarman: (880-897)
- ❖ Aditya I: (870-907)



### During Samudragupta Period (335-380):

- ❖ A Pallava ruler **Vishnugopa** was mentioned in the **Allahabad Inscription of Samudragupta**.
- ❖ The Gupta ruler defeated Vishnugopa, however, restored him to the throne on payment of tribute.
- ❖ Pallavas became a major power during the reign of Mahendravarman I (590 – 630 CE) and Narasimhavarman I (630 – 668 CE) and dominated the Telugu and northern parts of the Tamil region for about 300 years until the end of the 9th century.
- ❖ Throughout their reign they were in constant conflict with **Chalukyas of Vatapi/Badami** in the north and the Tamil kingdoms of Cholas and Pandyas in the south and were **finally defeated by the Chola kings** in the 9th century CE.



### Simhavishnu (556-590 CE):

- ❖ Some inscriptions refer to early kings such as **Shivaskandavarman** (probably ruled in the early 4th century CE). But in the last quarter of the 6th century, the ruler who played a crucial role in the Pallavas' rise to power was **Simhavishnu**.
- ❖ He laid a firm foundation for the Pallava empire. He supposedly defeated the Ikshvakus.
- ❖ Putting an end to the political disturbances caused by the Kalabhras, he conquered the land up to the Kaveri and set up a capital at Kanchi.
- ❖ He bore the title of '**Avanisimha**' (Lion of the Earth).

### Mahendravarman I (c. 590-630 CE):

- ❖ During his reign, **conflict between the Chalukyas of Badami** and the **Pallavas** heightened.
- ❖ He was defeated by Pulakesin II near Kanchi and annexed the northern part of the Pallava kingdom.
- ❖ **As a patron of Arts:**
  - He was a great patron of the arts. He himself was a poet and musician.
  - He wrote the **Mattavilasa Prahasanna**.
  - He initiated the construction of the famous **cave temple at Mahabalipuram**.
  - He was earlier a **Jaina** but later took up **Shaivism** under the influence of **Appar** according to tradition.



### Narasimharman I or Mamalla (630–668):

- ❖ He was the **greatest ruler** of Pallava Dynasty.
- ❖ He avenged his father's defeat and defeated Pulakeshin II and **occupied Vatapi** with the help of the **Sri Lankan prince, Manavarma**.
- ❖ He assumed the title of **Vatapikonda**.
- ❖ He defeated **Cholas, Cheras and Pandyas**.
- ❖ He founded Mamallapuram and built **monolithic rock temples**.
- ❖ **Hieun Tsang** visited Kanchi during his reign.
- ❖ **Dispatched two naval expeditions** to help his friend Manavarma, the Sri Lankan prince. But Manavarma was defeated and he had to seek political refuge at his court.
- ❖ **As a builder:**
  - He constructed the **port of Mamallapuram**.
  - He ordered the construction of the 'rathas' at Mahabalipuram.
  - He was also known as **Mahamalla or Mamalla (great wrestler)**.
  - It is in honor of Narasimharman I that **Mahabalipuram is called Mamallapuram**.

### Mahendravarman II (c. 668-670 CE) I:

- ❖ The Pallava-Chalukya conflict continued for subsequent decades and Mahendravarman II died fighting the Chalukyas.

### Parameshvarman I (c. 670-695 CE) I:

- ❖ He defeated the Chalukya king **Vikramaditya** and also the Gangas.
- ❖ He built temples at Kanchi.

### Narsimharman II/ Rajasimha (c.700-728 CE):

- ❖ He Constructed **Kailashnatha Temple at Kanchi**. This temple is also known as Rajasimheshvara temple.
- ❖ He built **Shore temple at Mahabalipuram**.
- ❖ He also sent an **ambassador to China** to maintain good relations.

### Nandivarman II (731–795):

- ❖ During his time Kanchi was again invaded and captured by Vikramaditya II.
- ❖ The construction of Vaikunteperumal temple at Kanchi took place.

### Dantivarman (c.795-846 CE):

- ❖ During his reign, **Rashtrakuta king Govind III invaded Kanchi**.
- ❖ **Pandyans** also invaded the Pallava territory to areas in and around Kanchipuram.



### Aparajita (c.880-893 CE):

- ❖ He was the **last known Pallava king**.
- ❖ With the help of Western Gangas and Cholas, defeated the Pandya king Varagunavarman II in a **battle at Thirupurambiyam** (near Kumbakonam).

### Decline of Pallavas:

- ❖ In 893 CE, **Chola king Aditya I** completely liquidated the Pallavas.
- ❖ The area of Tondaimandalam passed under Cholas.

### Pallava Art and Architecture:

- ❖ Culturally their reign is important for the growth of:
  - Tamil bhakti literature
  - Dravidian style of art and architecture in south India.
- ❖ It was under them that Mahabalipuram, South of Chennai, emerged as an important center of temple architecture.
- ❖ Pallavas are most noted for their patronage of architecture, the finest example being the **Shore Temple, a UNESCO World Heritage Site** in Mahabalipuram. The Pallavas, who left behind magnificent sculptures and temples, established the foundations of medieval South Indian architecture.
  - They developed the Pallava script which **Grantha** ultimately descended.
  - The Pallava script gave rise to several other southeast Asian scripts.
  - Chinese traveler **Hiuen Tsang visited Kanchipuram** during Pallava rule.
  - Kanchi under them became an important temple town and a center of trade and commerce.
  - Pallavas were followers of Hinduism and made gifts of land to gods and Brahmins.
  - In line with the prevalent customs, some of the rulers performed the Aswamedha and other Vedic sacrifices.
  - They were, however, **tolerant of other faiths**.
  - Their rule in south India was replaced by the imperial Cholas.

### Language in Pallava Empire:

- ❖ All the early Pallava royal inscriptions are either in Sanskrit or in Prakrit language, considered the official languages of the dynasty.
- ❖ The phenomenon of using **Prakrit as official languages** in which rulers left their inscriptions and epigraphy continued till the 6th century.
- ❖ The Pallavas in their Tamil country used **Tamil and Sanskrit in their inscriptions**.
  - Tamil came to be the main language used by the Pallavas in their inscriptions, though a few records continued to be in Sanskrit.



- Almost all the copper plate records, viz., Kasakudi, Tandantottam, Pattattalmangalm, Udayendiram and Velurpalaiyam are composed both in Sanskrit and Tamil.

#### ❖ Patronage to Sanskrit Literature:

- Pallavas patronized Sanskrit literature.
- Two distinguished Sanskrit poets lived during their reign.
- **Dandi:** Historians opined that he lived in the court of Narasimhavarma-II. He wrote a kavya namely Dasakumara Charita.
- **Bharavi:** He adorned the court of Nandivarma-II and authored a legendary book named Kiratarjuniyam.

#### ❖ Patronage to Tamil Literature:

- The sacred Tamil literature also flourished during this period.
- **Perundevanar** wrote Mahabharata in Tamil.
- Nayanars, a group of 63 Tamil Shaiva poet-saints, composed **Tevaram or Tirumurai**. It is popularly known as the **Dravida Veda** and still being recited in the Shaiva temples of Tamil Nadu.
- Alwars, a group of 12 Tamil Vaishnava poet-saints, composed **Nalayira Divya Prabandham**. It is considered as a holy book for the Tamil Vaishnavites and is chanted in the Vaishnava temples of Tamil Nadu.

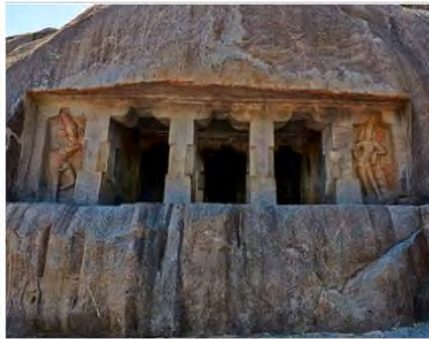
#### Architecture of Pallavas:

- ❖ They had introduced the stone architecture in the Tamil country. Their contributions are still extant because granite was used for building temples and carving sculptures. The Pallava architecture had evolved stage by stage from the period of Mahendravarman I.
- ❖ **Classification of the Pallava Architecture:**
  - Cave Temples and Rock-cut temples.
  - Monolithic Rathas and Sculptural Mandapas
  - Structural temples.
- ❖ Pallava sculpture has a distinctive style that is different from the Gupta period sculptures of north India. The faces of the human figures are oval with high cheekbones, and the bodies slender with tapering limbs.

#### Pallava Cave Shrines:

- ❖ They are smaller and less complex in plan than those at Ajanta and Ellora.
- ❖ Lakshitayatana temple at Mandgappattu, Lalitankuras cave at Tiruchirapalli, Varaha cave temple at Mamallapuram are some examples.
- ❖ The **massive pillars** in these caves are square at the bottom and top, and chamfered into an octagonal shape in between.
- ❖ The cave facade is generally plain, dvarapalas usually marking the two ends. The sanctum contains a **linga or images of Shiva, Vishnu, or Brahma**.

## Cave temples

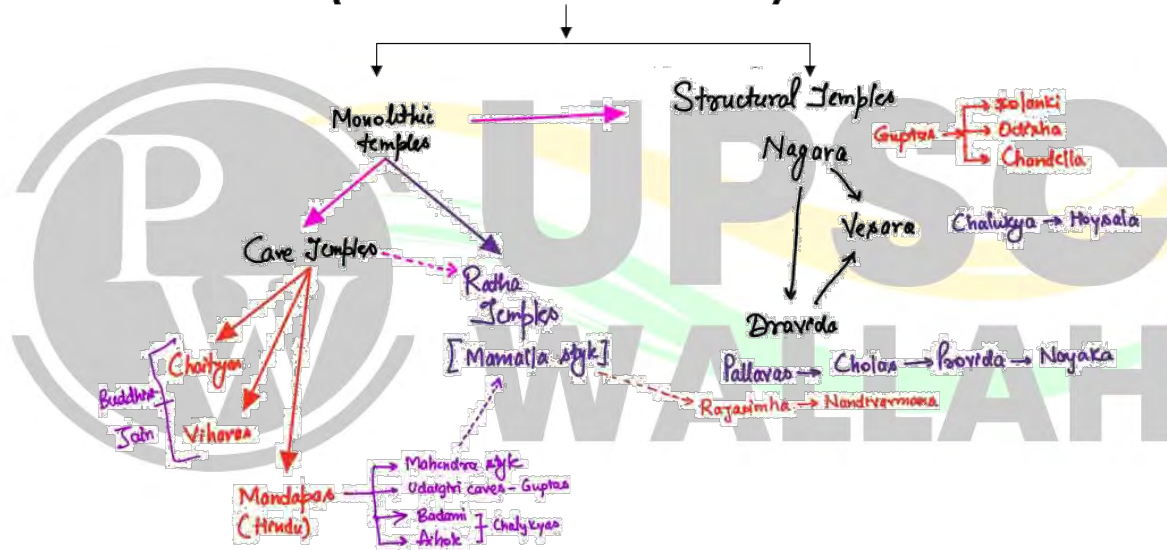


Mandagapattu temple dedicated to Brahma-Shiva-Vishnu.



Varaha Cave Temple at Mamallapuram.

## Temple architecture in India (Vertical classification)



### Rock-cut Temples:

- ❖ Pallava rock-cut temples also known as ‘Mahendravarman style’ as it had evolved during the period of Mahendravarman I.
- ❖ He carved temples out of the rocks and thus they were known as rock cut temples.
- ❖ It was really an innovation in the sphere of art because he did not use any other building materials.
- ❖ Therefore, he was hailed as ‘Vichitra Chitta’.
- ❖ In these rock cut temples, we find the sanctum sanctorum on the walls of its beautiful sculptures.
- ❖ The pillars are carved in such a way that they stand on the heads of lions. The rock cut temples of Mahendravarman I are found at various places of Tamil Nadu. The most important among them are Pallavaram, Mamandur, Mahendravadi, Vallam and Thalavanur.

## Rock-cut temples



Mahendravadi rock-cut temple



Mamandur rock cut temple

## Monolithic Rathas of Pallavas:

- ❖ The monolithic rathas and sculptural mandapas constitute the **Mamalla style of architecture**.
- ❖ The Pallava king, Narasimhavarman I was known as **Mamalla (630–668 CE)**.
- ❖ He had converted the port of Mamallapuram as a beautiful city of art and architecture.
- ❖ The Monolithic rathas at Mamallapuram are now called **Pancha Pandava Rathas**.
- ❖ Each ratha or chariot was carved out of single rock and hence the name monolithic.
- ❖ These rathas depict the five different forms of temple architecture.
- ❖ **Some Important Rathas are:**
  - **The Arjuna Ratha:** It contains artistically carved sculptures of Siva, Vishnu, mithuna and dwarapala.
  - **The Dharmaraja Ratha:** It is one of the most exquisite of the five rathas, has a three-storied vimana and a square base.
  - **The Bhima Ratha:** It is rectangular in plan and has beautiful sculptures of Harihara, Brahma, Vishnu, Skanda, Ardhanarisvara and Shiva as Gangadhara.



Pancha Rathas



Pallavas monolithic rathas and sculptural

## Structural Temples:

- ❖ From the reign of Rajasimha (700-728 CE) (Narsimhavarman II) the construction of structural temples had started.
- ❖ These temple structures were built with the use of granite slabs. Hence, they are known as structural temples.
- ❖ **We can broadly classify the Pallava structural temples into:**
  1. Rajasimha Style
  2. Nandivarman Style
  - The earliest among the Pallava structural temples were the **Kailasanatha Temple at Kanchipuram** and the **Shore Temple at Mamallapuram**.
  - These temples were built by using sandstones. The Vimana or tower of the Kailasanatha temple is shaped like a hilly comb.
  - This temple is considered as the **Crown of Pallava architecture**.
  - This temple is also called **Rajasimheswaram**. Beautiful sculptures are also found in this temple.
  - The sculptures depicting the scenes of the satirical drama Mattavilasa Prahasana have been engraved in this temple.
- ❖ The iconic Shore Temple was constructed during the **reign of Rajasimha (c.700-728 CE)** and comprises three shrines dedicated to **Shiva and Vishnu**.
- ❖ It is a five-storeyed rock-cut monolith.
- ❖ In fact, the monolithic vimanas are peculiar to Mamallapuram.
- ❖ Nandivarman II had built the **Vaikunda Perumal Temple** at Kanchipuram. The temples built by the later Pallava rulers are found at places like Kanchipuram, Panamalai, Kooram, Thiruthani and Gudimallam.



<b>Mahendravarmana Group</b>	Mahendravarmana I (600-630AD)	Temple at Bhairavkona (North Arcot Group (600-630 AD) Distt.), Ananteswar temple at Undavalli (Guntur Distt.)
<b>Mammala Group</b>	Narsimhavarmana I 'Mammala' (630-668 AD)	[Mammala Group] Mandapa temples and Ratha temples 'Mammala' (630-668 AD) (Sapt Pagodas) at Mammalapuram (Mahabalipuram)
<b>Rajasimha Group</b>	Narsimhavarmana II 'Rajasimha' (700-728 AD)	Kailashnatha Temple at Kanchi, Shore temple at Mammalapuram
<b>Aparajit Group</b>	Nandivarmana 'Aparajit' (880-897 AD)	Mukteswara, Matangeshwar temple and Vaikuntaperumal at Kanchi, Parshurameswar temple at Gudimallam. The most popular sculpture at Mahabalipuram, known as 'Arjuna's Penance' or 'Descent of Ganga', the marvelous piece of art belongs to this period.

### Fine Arts:

- ❖ The Pallava kings had also patronized fine arts.
- ❖ The **Kudumiyanmalai and Thirumayam music inscriptions** show their interest in music.
- ❖ Yaazhi, Mridhangam and Murasu were some of the **musical instruments** of the Pallava period.
- ❖ Both Mahendravarman I and Narasimhavarman I had remained experts in music.
- ❖ The temple sculptures of the Pallava period reveal that the art of dance was popular in those days.
- ❖ The paintings at Chithannavasal illustrate the nature of Pallava painting.
- ❖ Mahendravarman I was known as **Chittirakkarapuli**.
  - He had also composed the **book - Thatchina Chitram**.
  - Thus, music, dance, paintings and drama were popular during the Pallava rule.

### Assignment/Self Study:

#### Pandyas of Madurai:

##### ❖ Early History:

- The Pandyas were known to **Katyayana**, the Sanskrit grammarian, who flourished in the fourth century B.C.,
- **Megasthenes** also knew about the Pandyas
- **Ashoka** mentioned Pandyas in his **inscriptions**.
- In the time of **Pliny, Roman Writer**, (1st century AD) the capital of the country was at **Madurai**.
- The author of the **Periplus of the Erythraean Sea** and **Ptolemy** were well-informed about the Pandya country.

##### ❖ Early Medieval Times:

- The Pandyas were involved in **internecine wars** with the other contemporary powers such as the **Pallavas**.
- They were in control of **Madurai and Tirunelveli district** of Tamil Nadu.

#### Some Important Early Medieval Rulers:

##### Kadungon (560–590 CE):

- ❖ He was the contemporary of the **Pallava king Simhavishnu (556-590 CE)**.
- ❖ He fought with the **Kalabhra rule**.
- ❖ His capital was **Madurai**.

##### Maravarman Avani Chulamani (c. 590-620 CE):

- ❖ Kadungon was succeeded by his son Maravarman.
- ❖ He is credited with ending the Kalabhras' rule in the area and revived the Pandyas after Kalabhra interregnum.

##### Rajasimha (c. 735-765 CE):

- ❖ He defeated the Pallavas and had the epithet of **Pallava-bhanjana** (breaker of the Pallavas).
- ❖ He expanded the Pandya empire.

##### Jatila Parantaka Nedunjadaiyan (c.756-815 CE):

- ❖ He expanded the Pandyan empire further.

##### Shrimara Shrivallabha (c.815-862 CE):

- ❖ He continued the aggressive policy of his father.
- ❖ He invaded Ceylon.
- ❖ In order to check the Pandya power, a confederacy consisting of the Gangas, Cholas, Pallavas, Kalingas, Magadhas, etc., was formed under the leadership of the Pallava ruler. However, the Pandya ruler was able to defeat them all at Kumbhakonam.
- ❖ He constructed many tanks, canals and water reservoirs.

#### Decline and Rise:

- ❖ The Pandyas were completely overpowered by the Cholas in the 10th century. Later Pandyas overpowered Cholas and raised the prestige of the dynasty.
- ❖ Pandyas entered their "golden age" under Maravarman I and Jatavarman Sundara Pandya I in the 13th century.

Dynasty	Founder
The Chalukyas of Vatapi	Jayasimha
The Gang. of Talakad	Knnakanivarna
The Gupt. of Magadha	Shri Gupta
The kadambas of Vanavasi	Mayurasharman
The Kingdom of Gaud	Shashanka
The Kingdom of Thaneswar	Pushyabhuti
The Later-Gupt. of Magadha-Malwa	Krishnagupta
The maitrakas of Vallabhi	Bhattarka
The Maukharis of Kannauj	Yajnavarm
The Pallavas of Kanchi	Simhavarman
The Pandyas of Madurai	Kodungon
The Vakatakas	Vindhyashakti

### Society in this Period:

- ❖ In this period there existed three types of villages.
  1. Ur
  2. Sabha
  3. Nagaram
  - **Ur** was the type of village inhabited by the peasant castes who perhaps held their land in common. It was the responsibility of the village headman to collect and pay taxes on their behalf. These villages were located in Southern Tamil Nadu
  - **The Sabha** was the village granted to Brahmanas. They enjoyed individual rights in the land.
  - **The Nagaram** type of villages consisted of villages dominated by traders and merchants. This type of village was created because of the declining trade forcing the merchants to move to villages.
- ❖ **Note:** In the Chalukya areas, the village affairs were managed by elders called **Mahajana**.
- ❖ The society during this period was obviously dominated by princes and priests.
- ❖ The princes claimed the status of **Brahmins or Kshatriyas** though many of them were **local clan chiefs**.
- ❖ The priests reinvented local family trees for these chiefs and traced their descent from old age **solar and lunar dynasties**.
- ❖ In return the priests these rulers granted enormous lands to the priests which helped them to gain influence and authority.
- ❖ Most of the peasants were looked upon as **Shudras**.



- ❖ If the peasant and artisan failed to produce and render services, it was looked upon as a departure from **established Dharma or Norm**. Such a situation was described as **the age of Kali**. It was the duty of the King to put an end to such a state and **restore Dharma**.
- ❖ This is the reason Kings adopted the title of **Dharma-Maharaj**.

## South India:

### Change of Phase in South India:

The First Phase (200 BC - 300 AD)	The New Phase (300-750 AD)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ The appearance of numerous crafts became evident.</li> <li>❖ Internal and external trade was prevalent.</li> <li>❖ Wide spread use of coins and Number of towns.</li> <li>❖ Extensive Buddhist monuments</li> <li>❖ Existence of Jainism till the south of Tamil Nadu.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ Trade, towns and coinage seem to be in a state of decline.</li> <li>❖ Large number of land grants made to the brahmanas free of taxes.</li> <li>❖ Many new areas were brought under cultivation and settlement.</li> <li>❖ Performance of Vedic sacrifices by Kings was prevalent.</li> <li>❖ The construction of stone temples for shiva and Vishnu took place during this phase.</li> </ul>

### Assignment/Self Study:

#### Social Crisis and Agrarian Changes - A transition from ancient to Medieval:

- ❖ The central factor that eventually transformed ancient Indian society into a medieval society was the practice of land grants.
- ❖ The Kings were regarded as the **'giver'** and wanted to acquire religious merit. On the other hand, the receivers (mainly monks and priests) needed the means to perform religious rites.
- ❖ This was enabled by the system of tax collection which enabled the kings to make generous grants.

#### Why the Social Crisis?

- ❖ By the 3rd and 4th century A.D, a deep social crisis, described as **Kaliyuga in the Puranas** began to develop.
- ❖ It was a situation in which the Varnas started discarding the functions assigned to them.
- ❖ The lower orders attempted to arrogate to themselves the status and functions of the higher orders. They refused to pay taxes and provide free labor. This led to **varna-samkara or an intermixture of social classes**.
- ❖ This happened because the producing masses were oppressed with heavy taxes and were denied protection by the Kings.
- ❖ One of the most important steps taken to address the crisis was the practice of land grants to priests and officials.
- ❖ **Benefits:**
  - This allowed the kings to throw the burden of collecting taxes and maintaining law and order in the denoted areas on the beneficiaries. Thus, the reluctant peasants could be dealt much effectively and on the spot.



- This practice also allowed to bring more lands under cultivation.
- By implanting the Brahmans in the tribal areas, the tribals could be taught the **Brahmanical way of life**, the need to pay taxes and obey the king.

### The coming up of Landlords:

- ❖ After the 5th century A.D land grants became very frequent. Accordingly, the **Kings started granting tax-free villages to the Brahmanas.**
- ❖ Earlier, the beneficiaries were granted the right to govern people living in these areas.
- ❖ Government officials and royal retainers were not permitted to enter the gifted villages.
- ❖ In later times, the beneficiaries were authorized to punish all criminal offenders.
- ❖ Thus, the power of the king was heavily undermined from the end of the Gupta period onwards.
- ❖ Royal control was further eroded through the payment of government officials by land grants.
- ❖ The practice became so prevalent that even the law books of those centuries recommend that service should be rewarded in the land.
- ❖ Thus, by the seventh century, there was a distinct **evolution of landlordism** and a **devolution of the central state authority.**

### Development of new Agrarian Economy:

- ❖ The Landed beneficiaries could neither cultivate land nor collect revenues on their own.
- ❖ The actual cultivation was entrusted to peasants or sharecroppers who were attached to the land but did not legally own it.
- ❖ The **Chinese pilgrim I-tsing** states that most Indian monasteries got their lands cultivated by servants and others.
- ❖ **Hsuan Tsang** describes the Shudras as agriculturists, which suggests that they no longer cultivated land just as slaves and agricultural laborers, but possibly occupied it temporarily.
- ❖ In north India, artisans and peasants were asked not to leave the villages granted to the beneficiaries, thus preventing them from moving from one village to another, greatly undermining mass mobility

### Decline of Trade and Towns:

- ❖ From the sixth century onwards, a sharp decline of trade and towns began.
- ❖ Trade with the main part of the Roman empire ended in the 3rd century, and the silk trade with Iran and the Byzantium stopped in the mid-sixth century.
- ❖ India carried on some commerce with China and Southeast Asia, but its benefits were reaped by the Arabs who acted as middlemen.
- ❖ In the feudal set-up, **horse trade became more important** because of military needs
- ❖ The decline of trade led to the decay of towns.
- ❖ The decline of trade led to the decay of towns.



- ❖ On account of the decay of trade and towns, the villages had to meet their needs of oil, salt, spices, cloth, etc., on their own.
- ❖ This gave rise to smaller units of production, each unit meeting its own needs.

### Changes in the Varna System:

- ❖ In the Gangetic plains in north India, the vaishyas were regarded as free peasants. But land grants created landlords between the peasants, on the one hand, and the king, on the other, so the vaishyas were reduced to the level of the Shudras.
- ❖ Thus, in the outlying areas, we may find largely two orders, **Brahmanas and Shudras**.
- ❖ Frequent seizures of power and land grants gave rise to several categories of landed people.
- ❖ When a person acquired land and power, he naturally sought a high position in society. He might belong to a lower varna, but he was favored with generous land grants by his master.
- ❖ This created difficulties because, though economically well off, socially and ritually he was low.
- ❖ The economic rights of a person were also determined by the varna to which he belonged. So, some changes had to be made in the written texts to recognize the position of the new landed classes
- ❖ Thus, formerly all things in society were graded according to varnas, but now they came to be determined according to the landed positions of a person.
- ❖ From the 7th century onwards, numerous castes were created.
- ❖ A purana of the 8th century mentions that thousands of mixed castes were created by the connection of Vaishya women with the men of lower castes.
- ❖ The number of castes increased on account of the nature of the economy in which people cannot move from one place to another.
- ❖ In addition to this, many tribal people were admitted into **Brahminical society** because of land grants given to the brahmanas in the tribal areas.

Every tribe or clan was now given the status of a separate caste in Brahminical society.

### Tripartite Struggle: Pala, Rashtrakutas and Pratiharas (750 - 1000 CE):

- ❖ The **Tripartite Struggle** also known as ‘**The Kannauj Triangle Wars**’ for control of northern India took place in the ninth century, among the Pratihara Empire, the Pala Empire and the Rashtrakuta Empire.

### Harsha, Pallavas vs Chalukyas:

#### Elsewhere:

#### Prophet Muhammad:

- ❖ Introduced Islam in 600 A.D.
- ❖ Laid stress on equality and unity of all before Allah.
- ❖ Spread to north Africa, Spain, Iran India.



- ❖ A number of powerful empires arose in north India and deccan between north and south India (between 750 and 1000AD).
- ❖ **Pala empire** (dominated eastern India) till 850 AD.
- ❖ **Pratihara empire** (dominated western India and the upper Gangetic valley) till 950s AD.
- ❖ **Rashtrakuta empire** (dominated the Deccan).
- ❖ They fought among themselves to provide a stable condition of life over large areas.
- ❖ **Tripartite Struggle:** Kannauj was considered the symbol of the sovereignty of north India. Control of Kanauj implied control of the upper Gangetic valley.

### Brief understanding of the situation before the start of Pala Dynasty:

- ❖ Chaos after Shashank
- ❖ Various invasion:
  - Yashovarman of Kannauj
  - Lalitaditya of Kashmir
  - Bhaskarvarman (Assam ruler) conquered most of Bengal
  - West i.e., Bihar and Orissa went to Harsha
  - Also, a Chinese invasion took place.

Place	Bengal, East Indian Subcontinent
Period	750 - 1174 AD
Language	Pali, Sanskrit, Prakrit
Religion	Buddhism, Hinduism

### Pala Empire (8th to 12th century):

- ❖ The Pala Empire (8th to 12th century) was a dynasty which controlled **Bihar and Bengal regions of South Asia**.
- ❖ The name Pala is the synonym for "**protector**" and was used as an ending to the names of all Pala monarchs.
- ❖ The **founder** of the Pala Dynasty was **Gopala**. He came to power in 750 AD and was the **first independent Buddhist king of Bengal** elected by notable people. He ruled from 750-770, ended anarchy in the area, consolidated his position and extended his control over all of Bengal.
- ❖ Empire included - Pataliputra, Vikrampur, Ramvati (Varendra), Monghyr (Munger), Tamralipti and Jaggaddala.
  - **Khalimpur Copper Plate Inscription** - Gopala ended matsya-nyaya (anarchy) and he was elected as king by the notable men.
  - They removed the later Guptas and Khadga dynasty of eastern Bengal.
  - He was an ardent Buddhist.
  - As per Taranatha (Buddhist scholar)
  - Built the monastery at Odantapuri.

### Dharmapala (770 - 781 AD):

- ❖ He succeeded his father Gopala.
- ❖ He **revived the Nalanda** university (200 villages grant).
- ❖ He **founded Vikramashila University**, foreign students used to come here to study.
- ❖ Sanskrit text to Tibetan language
- ❖ Founded Somapura Monastery near Paharpur, Bihar)
- ❖ He made the Palas a dominant power of northern India. He defeated many kings to keep his supreme power. Dharmapala was an able administrator too. With his dominant power he extended his throne in the Kanauj.
- ❖ He was defeated by Rashtrakuta ruler Dhruva but Dhruva returned to Deccan without occupying the Kanauj. He occupied Kannauj and held a **Grand Darbar and installed a puppet ruler Chakrayudha**
- ❖ He was again defeated by Pratihara ruler Nagabhata II.

### Santaraksita:

- ❖ He was an 8th century Buddhist scholar was in his reign
- ❖ Considered as abbot of Nalanda.
- ❖ He defended a synthetic philosophy which combined Madhyamaka, Yogācāra and the logico-epistemology of Dharmakirti into a novel Madhyamaka philosophical system.
- ❖ This philosophical approach is known as **Yogācāra-Mādhyamika** or Yogācāra-Svatantrika-Mādhyamika in Tibetan Buddhism.

### Devapala (810 AD- 850 AD):

- ❖ He was the **son of Dharmapala**, who extended control over Assam (Pragjyotishpur) and some parts of Orissa and Nepal.
- ❖ Proclaims **victory over Huns, Gurjaras and Dravidas.**
- ❖ Preferred his capital at Monghyr to Pataliputra.
- ❖ During his reign Bengal rose to prominence in north Indian politics. His high diplomatic skills helped him to maintain his authority.
- ❖ He fought with Pratiharas and extended the Pala empire's frontier up to the Himalayan region in the north, and the Vindhyas in the south.
- ❖ He was a **great patron of Buddhism.**
- ❖ **Vajradatta**, was a court poet and a Buddhist scholar, he wrote **Lokesvarasataka.**
- ❖ Relation with South East Asia during his reign:
  - **Sailendra Dynasty (Balaputradeva)** ruler requested him to grant 5 villages for the upkeep of Nalanda.
- ❖ The immediate successors of Devapala were weak and because of which the dynasty disintegrated after him.



### Information about Palas:

- ❖ Arab merchant **Sulaiman**, wrote an account of Palas and called the **kingdom as Ruhmi or Ruhma Dharma** and talked about tripartite.
- ❖ **Tibetan chronicles** tell that Palas were great patrons of **buddhist learning and religion**. Shantarakshita and Dipankara (Atisa) invited.
- ❖ The Pala Dynasty very much patronized Buddhism (along with Hinduism) at a time when it was in decline in the rest of India.
- ❖ It was a widespread empire, organized administrative system, ruling policy focusing on public welfare, also excellence in the field of arts and cultivation of knowledge and literature - all these contributed to the glory of the Pala rule.

### Mahipala I (988 to 1033 AD):

- ❖ The later Mahipala I, who is known as the **founder of the second Pala kingdom** and ruled from 988 to 1033 AD, regained the lost glory to the kingdom.
- ❖ He succeeded in recapturing the lost territories in northern and western Bengal and brought Pala dynastic rule to a firmer footing.
- ❖ Mahipala I became a **highly popular king** by his public welfare activities. He was defeated by Rajendra Chola.

### Ramapala (1072 – 1126):

- ❖ He was the **last strong Pala ruler** and he gained control over Kamarupa and Kalinga. Mentioned in Sandhyakar Nandi's Ramcharita.



PW Mobile APP: <https://physicswala.page.link/?type=contact-us&data=open>

For PW Website: <https://www.physicswallah.live/contact-us>

# **DAILY CLASS NOTES**

---

## **MEDIEVAL HISTORY**

**Lecture - 04**  
**Tripartite Struggle**

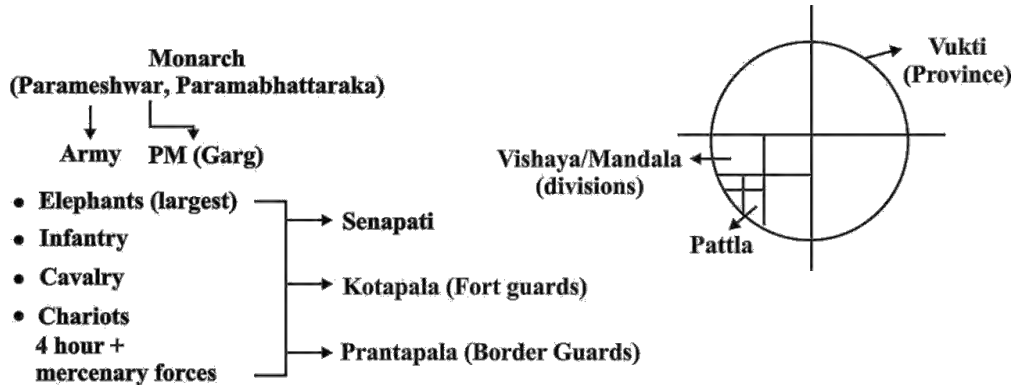


## Tripartite Struggle

### Pala Administration:

- ❖ The Pala Dynasty administration was **Monarchical** and the King or Monarch was the center of all power. The Pala rulers adopted Imperial titles like **Parameshwar, Paramvattaraka, and Maharajadhiraja**.
- ❖ They appointed Prime Ministers and the line of **Garga** served as the Prime Ministers of the Palas for 100 years.
- ❖ Pala Empire was divided into separate **Vuktis (Provinces), Vuktis into Vishaya (Divisions) and Mandalas (Districts)**.
- ❖ Their Administration covered a widespread area from the grass root level to the imperial court.
- ❖ Palas Army was fourfold and the army consisted of:
  1. Infantry
  2. Cavalry
  3. Elephants and
  4. Chariots.
- ❖ **Vatsaraja Dharmapala** had been mentioned as the owner of an unlimited number of horses, elephants and chariots in the copper-plates.
- ❖ It is amazing to know that Kings of Bengal still depended on four-horses Heavy Chariots as the use of chariots had been backdated in India and other parts of the world.
- ❖ Palas had to **depend upon their vassal kings for war horses**.
- ❖ As being a riverine land and swarthy climate Bengal region was not good enough for breeding quality war-horses.
- ❖ The inscriptions on Pala Copper plates reveal that mercenary forces were recruited from the Kamboja, Khasa, Huna, Malwa, Gujarat, and Karnataka.
- ❖ The Navy played Mercantilist and defensive role.
- ❖ The Kamboja cavalry was the cream of the Pala Empire's armed forces.
- ❖ The Kamboja forces of Pala Dynasty maintained smaller confederates (Sanghas) among themselves and obedient followers of their commander.
- ❖ Palas divided the army into following posts:
  - **Senapati or Mahasenapati** (General) controlling foot soldiers, cavalry, soldiers riding elephants and camels, navy,
  - Various army posts like:
    - **Kottapala** (Fort guards)
    - **Prantapala** (Border guards)
- ❖ Palas had a huge army and the legend of "**Nava Lakkha Shainya**" (Nine lakh soldiers!) were popular during the reigns of Dharmapala and Devapala.
- ❖ The Palas had the capacity and courage to protect North India from the attack of Pratiharas and Rashtrakutas.
- ❖ The Pala empire had relations with:
  - Srivijaya Empire
  - Tibetan empire

- Arab Abbassid Caliphate (coins found here = Arab historians)
- Islam first appeared in Bengal during the rule of Palas.



**Economy During the Pala Period:**

- ❖ They had close trading relations with the countries of **South-East Asia**.
- ❖ The administration during the Pala Period introduced a **feudal economy** where trade declined and agro economy flourished. Also, the minerals played a major role in uplifting the economy.
- ❖ The social condition during the reign of this dynasty was very much peaceful.
- ❖ Pala rulers followed **Buddhism as well as Hinduism**.

**Literature during the Pala Period:**

- ❖ The language used by Palas was **Proto-Bengal Language**.
- ❖ **Charyapada** was the first literary work in Bengali and it is a collection of mystic Buddhist poems from tantric traditions. Writers were called **Mahasiddhas** and were from Bengal, Bihar, Orissa and Assam
- ❖ The Pala dynasty rulers were very much interested in Buddhist art, literature and learning. Bengali art, literature and paintings flourished during the period of this dynasty.

**Pala Art and Architecture:**

- ❖ The Pala school of sculptural art is recognised as a distinct phase of Indian art, and is noted for the artistic genius of the Bengal sculptors. It is **influenced by the Gupta art**.
- ❖ Art and architecture were also encouraged during this period which was identified by "**Pala School of Sculptural Art**". The Pala Empire had great works like **Vikramshila Vihar, Odantapuri Vihar, Jagaddala Vihar**.
- ❖ The Palas built a number of monasteries and other sacred structures. The **Somapura Mahavihara** in present-day Bangladesh is a **UNESCO World Heritage Site**.
- ❖ These mammoth structures were mistaken by the forces of Bakhtiyar Khalji as fortified castles and were demolished.



**Somapura Mahavihara**

- ❖ The art of Bihar and Bengal during the Pala and Sena dynasties influenced the art of Nepal, Burma, Sri Lanka and Java.

### Pala School of Sculptural Art:

- ❖ Influenced by Gupta art, Pala school of sculptural art is recognised as a distinct phase of Indian art, and is noted for the artistic genius of the Bengal sculptors. Some of its features include:

- Deity figures became more rigid in posture.
- Standing with straight legs close together, and
- Figures were often heavily loaded with jewelry,
- They very often have multiple arms, a convention allowing them to hold many attributes and display mudras.



- ❖ Palas built a number of monasteries and other sacred structures. The **Somapura Mahavihara** in present-day Bangladesh is a World Heritage Site.

- ❖ The origin of Pala sculpture can be attributed to the late Gupta style. However, at a later stage the Pala style drifted away from its origin and developed its own style.

Sculpture of Pala dynasty

- ❖ The deviation was due to the fusion of classical mannerism with the indigenous style of Bengal.
  - The mixed style continued through the 8th century and culminated in a specialized idiom of art in the early 9th century.
  - The new style integrated a number of attributes that were common to the native Bengali sculpture and architecture.
  - The sculptural images combined spiritual and mundane suggestions and were marked by sensuousness.
  - Most of the sculptures that have been discovered have been carved out of **Rajmahal black basalt stone**.

- ❖ A few exceptionally well carved reliefs such as Krishna killing Kansa, Krishna uprooting the twin Arjuna trees are known for their expressiveness, lively action, and dynamic movement.

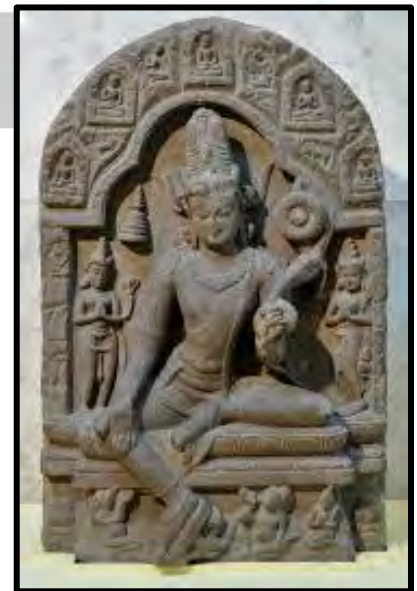
- ❖ Towards the end of the 10th century, the first **renaissance of the Bengal School of Art** took place when **Mahipala I** succeeded.

- ❖ The Bengal artists broke away from the shared traditions with Magadha. As there was a revival of political power it led to renewed artistic activities. Pala sculptures were created by the artists who belonged to north Bengal.

- ❖ **Siddheshwara Mahadev temple** at Barakar was built during this period.

- ❖ Bronze images were also built in this period.

- ❖ A miniature **terracotta image** of a fasting Buddha, a six-foot-tall votive stupa and a black stone statue of Buddha in 'abhay mudra' (fearless mode) from the Pala period reflect the ubiquity of Buddhism then.

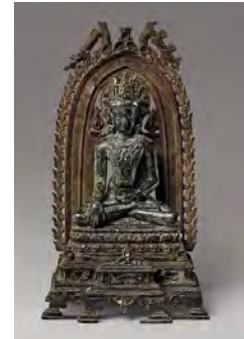




Lord Vishnu in Pala Sculpture



Pala Sculptures



### Decline of Pala Rulers:

- ❖ After Ramapala's death, a **rebellion broke out in Kamarupa** during his son Kumarapala's reign. The rebellion was crushed by Vaidyadeva, but after Kumarapala's death, Vaidyadeva practically created a separate kingdom.
- ❖ According to Ramacharitam, Kumarapala's son Gopala III was murdered by his uncle Mandapala.
- ❖ During Madanapala's rule, the Varmans in east Bengal declared independence, and the Eastern Gangas renewed the conflict in Orissa. Madanapala captured Munger from the Gahadavalas, but was **defeated by Vijayasena**, who gained control of southern and eastern Bengal.
- ❖ A ruler named Govindapala ruled over the Gaya district around 1162 CE, but there is no concrete evidence about his relationship to the imperial Palas. The Pala dynasty was **replaced by the Sena dynasty**.

### Sena Dynasty:

- ❖ Around the time of Mahipala's death in around 1043 AD, a vassal of the Palas named **Hemanta Sena** founded the Sena Dynasty.
- ❖ This Dynasty appeared in the 11th century and disappeared in the 12th century. However, independent rule of Senas in Bengal was established in his son Vijayasena's time.
  - **Vijayasena (1097-1160)** is called the **real founder** of the Sena Dynasty. He was able to snatch away parts of the Rarh region of Bengal from the Palas and some parts of Gauda Kingdom from the Assam regions.
  - His son **Ballala Sena (1160-1178)** introduced the social reforms in Bengal known as **Kulinism**.
  - Ballala Sena was succeeded by Lakshamana Sena.
- ❖ Most of the history of the Sena Kings has been corroborated from the Copper Plates. They struggled with Palas, Gauda and their struggles were confined in Bengal, Assam and parts of Orissa.
- ❖ In the 12th century, their territories were **won by a Deva dynasty**.
- ❖ The Deva dynasty was finally swept away by the **invasion of Bakhtiyar Khilji** and later we find the Mamluk Dynasty of the Slave Kingdoms as rulers of Bengal and Bihar.

### Gurjara-Pratihara Dynasty:

- ❖ Originated from Gurjaras who were mainly **Pastoralists and fighters**.

- ❖ They were known for sculptures, carved panels and open pavilions.
- ❖ The Pratihara Empire was an imperial power that ruled much of Northern India from the mid-7th to the 11th century.
- ❖ They ruled first at Ujjain and later at Kannauj.
- ❖ Gurjara Pratiharas came to India from the central Asian region and settled in Rajasthan. Gradually, they gained political importance. They were instrumental in containing Arab armies moving east of the Indus River.
- ❖ The literary meaning of Pratihara is 'door keeper.' It is believed that their ancestor Lakshmana

	PALAS	GURJARA- PRATIHARAS	RASHTRAKUTAS
750	Gopala		Dantidurga
760			Krishna I
770	Dhrupala		Dhruv
780	Nalanda University	Nagabhata II	
790	Vikramshila Uni		Govinda III
800	Suleman		
810	Devapala		Amogvarsha
820	Assam		
830	Orissa	Bhoja	
840			
850	Tibetan Chronicles		
860			
870			
880		Mahendrapala I	
890			
900			
910			
920		Mahipala	Indra III
930		Rajshekhara	
940			Krishna III
950			
960			
970			
980			Malkhed sacked and burned
990			
1000	Mahipala		

(Ramayana). The geographical name of Gujarat is supposed to be derived from Gurjara.

- ❖ The rulers of this dynasty used the **self-designation "Pratihara"** for their clan, and never referred to themselves as Gurjaras.
- ❖ The term "Gurjara-Pratihara" occurs only in the **Rajor inscription** of a feudatory ruler named Mathanadeva, who describes himself as a "Gurjara-Pratihara".
- ❖ Another Pratihara king named Hariraja is also mentioned as a **"ferocious Gurjara"** (garjjad gurjjara meg hacanda) in the **Kadwaha inscription**.

### Rulers of Gurjara Pratiharas:

- ❖ The **Gwalior inscription** mentioned the early history of the family. The inscription was founded by King Bhoja in the 7th century. He was the most famous king of the Gurjara Pratiharas dynasty.

### Nagabhata-I (730-760 AD):

- ❖ He was the founder of the Gurjara Pratiharas Dynasty.
- ❖ He defeated the Muslim forces from the Arabs under Junaid and Tamin during the Caliphate campaigns in India.
- ❖ He controlled Malwas Rajputana and Gujarat. He was defeated by Dhruv.

### Vatsaraja (775-800 AD):

- ❖ He followed an **aggressive imperial policy** and made Kannauj his Capital.
- ❖ He defeated Pala king Dharmapala of Bengal and Rashtrakuta king Druva that **led to the start of the Tripartite struggle.**
- ❖ The Rashtrakuta king Dhruva defeated Vatsaraja and took away the political benefit of the defeat of Pala king. Dharmapala took advantage of the defeat of Vatsaraja and installed his own nominee Chakrayudha on the throne of Kanauj.

### Nagabhata II (815 AD):

- ❖ Vatsaraja's son, Nagabhata II made an alliance with Andhra, Vidharbha, and Kalinga. He made extensive preparations to fight against his rivals.
- ❖ Nagabhata II first **defeated Chakrayudha** and captured Kanauj. Then he **defeated Dharmapala** but got defeated by Govinda-III, the Rashtrakuta.
- ❖ Nagabhata II also defeated Sultan Vega who was the son of the governor of Sindh under the Caliph-I Mamun.
- ❖ Nagabhata-II was succeeded by his son Ramabhadra.
- ❖ Ramabhadra was succeeded by his son Bhoja-I about A.D. 836.

### Mihir Bhoja (835-85):

- ❖ He was regarded as the **real founder** and most successful and popular ruler of the Gurjara Pratihara Dynasty. He restored the falling prosperities and reputation of his dynasty.
- ❖ Initially he was defeated by Palas, Pashtrakutas and the Kalchuris.
- ❖ But Mihir Bhoja and his **feudatories Chedi and Guhilas** jointly defeated Palas and Rashtrakutas.
- ❖ A golden opportunity to the king Bhoja-I was provided by the death of Devapala of Bengal and Rashtrakuta's invasion of Bengal thereafter.
- ❖ The Rashtrakuta king, Krishna II was involved in the struggle with the Eastern Chalukyas.
- ❖ Bhoja-I defeated Krishna-II and captured the region of Malwa and Gujarat.
- ❖ After victory over two great rivals, Bhoja-I founded his sovereignty over the Punjab, Avadh, and other territories of north India and consolidated his empire. He recovered Kannauj, but he was defeated by Devapala. After the death of devapala, he extended the empire into the east.
- ❖ His capital was Kannauj also called **Mahodaya.**
- ❖ **The Barah Copper Plate Inscription** mentions skandhavara (military camp) at Mahodaya.
- ❖ Kalchuris, Chandellas and Arabs of Sindh acknowledged his supremacy.
- ❖ Bhoja-I was a devotee of Vishnu, and adopted the title of '**Adivaraha.**' It has been inscribed in some of his coins. He is also known by other names as 'Mihir', 'Prabhasa,' etc.
- ❖ **Sulaiman an Arab Merchant** or traveler of 9th century:
  - Called him **King Juzr.**
  - Wrote about his military power and riches.
  - Empire was safe from robbers
- ❖ Al Masudi an Arab traveler:
  - Called him King Baura.
  - Arab travelers - Pratiharas had the best cavalry.



- ❖ Mihir Bhoja was later checked by:
  - Sankarverman of Kashmir
  - Krishna II (Rashtrakutas)
  - Devapala
- ❖ He was succeeded by his son Mahendrapala.

### **Mahendrapala-I (885 - 909 AD):**

- ❖ He also **extended the boundaries of his empire**. During his reign, the Pratihara Empire stretched almost from the Himalayas in the north to the Vindhyas in the south and from Bengal in the east to Gujarat in the west.
- ❖ He fought against the King of Kashmir but lost and had to give up some areas of Punjab.
- ❖ Mahendrapala-I was also known as '**Mahendrayudha**', and '**Nirbhayanarendra**'. And Maharajadhiraj of Aryavarta.
- ❖ He was a liberal patron of learned men.
- ❖ **Rajashekhara** was a learned man of his court - Sanskrit Poet - dramatist and critic.
- ❖ He has written Karpuramanjari, Bala-Ramayana, Bala Bharata, Kavyamimansa, Bhuvana Kosha, and Haravilasa.
  - **Karpuramanjari** - play written in Suraseni Prakrit to please his wife Avantisundari
  - **Kavya Mimansa** - practical guide for the poets that explains the elements and composition of a good poem.
  - Vidhasalabhanjika
  - Bhrinjika
  - Prapanch Pandav

### **Mahipala I:**

- ❖ He was defeated by Indra III - devastated Kannauj.
- ❖ Gujarat must have gone to Rashtrakutas because as per Al Masudi they did not have access to sea.

### **Rajyapala:**

- ❖ Krishna III invaded North India 963 and defeated him
- ❖ The raid of Mahmud Ghazni took place during his reign.
- ❖ He was killed by Vidyadhar Chandella.

### **Yashpala:**

- ❖ He was the last ruler of this dynasty.
- ❖ By 1090 CE, the Gadhavalas conquered Kannauj.
- ❖ The Pratihara dynasty dominated north India for over two hundred years from the 8th century to the 10th century A.D. Rashtrakuta King Indra III and Krishna III ended the dynasty.

### **Travelers during Gurjara Pratiharas:**

- ❖ Arab scholar, **Al-Masudi**, visited India in A.D. 915-916. Al-Masudi mentioned about the great powers and prestige of the Pratihara rulers and the vastness of their empire.

- ❖ Al-Masudi says that the empire of Al-Juzr (Gurjara) had 1,800,000 villages, the cities and rural areas were about 2,000 km in length and 2,000 km in breadth.

### Art and Architecture during Gurjara Pratihara:

- ❖ They started the Maru-Gurjara style of architecture.
- ❖ The Gurjara-Pratihara rulers were great patrons of art and commissioned thousands of Hindu temples over the vast realms that they ruled.
- ❖ They also rebuilt the temples that were destroyed in the attacks of the Islamic invaders in the early medieval era.
- ❖ The most important groups of architectural works are generally credited to the early Pratiharas. These works are at **Osian** in the heart of Gurjara, to the east in the great fort at Chittor and at **Roda** in the south by the border of modern Gujarat. Other important sites are **Abhaneri and Kotah**.
- ❖ The extraordinary **Teli-ka-Mandir** in Gwalior fort is the oldest surviving large-scale Pratihara work.
- ❖ Dedicated to a Shakti cult, the Teli-ka-Mandir at Gwalior consists of an elevated rectangular mulaprasada and a double oblong shikhara and a closed portico.
- ❖ The sides have three bays, though there are small intermediate recessions and the central zone steps out in diminishing planes below the bizarre superimposed horseshoe window motifs of the shikhara's two levels.
- ❖ There are two principal projections to the back with ghana-dwaras bearing tiered kapotas and miniature lunettes, like those of the sides, flanked by aedicule with various shikhara-like superstructures.



Teli-ka mandir



Chittor Fort



Shiva temples at Roda, Gujarat

### Decline of Gurjara Pratihara:

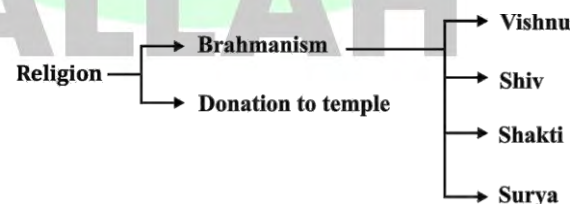
- ❖ Several **feudatories of the empire took advantage** of the temporary weakness of the Gurjara-Pratiharas to declare their independence, notably the Paramaras of Malwa, the Chandelas of Bundelkhand, the Kalachuris of Mahakoshal, the Tomaras of Haryana, and the Chauhans of Rajput.
- ❖ **Indra III (c. 914–928)** of the Rashtrakuta dynasty briefly captured Kannauj in 916 from Mahipala, and although the Pratiharas regained the city, their position continued to weaken in the 10th century, partly as a result of the drain of simultaneously fighting off Turkic attacks from the west, the attacks from the Rashtrakuta dynasty from the south and the Pala advances in the east.
- ❖ The Gurjara-Pratiharas lost control of Rajasthan to their feudatories, and the Chandelas captured the strategic fortress of Gwalior in central India around 950.
- ❖ By the end of the 10th century the Gurjara-Pratihara domains had dwindled to a small state centered on Kannauj.
- ❖ **Mahmud of Ghazni** captured Kannauj in 1018, and the Pratihara ruler Rajapala fled. He was subsequently captured and killed by the Chandela ruler Vidyadhara. The Chandela ruler then placed Rajapala's son Trilochanpala on the throne as a proxy.
- ❖ Jasapala, was the last Gurjara-Pratihara ruler of Kannauj, died in 1036.

### Social Condition:

- ❖ The caste system was prevalent in India during the Gurjara-Pratihara period, and references to all four Vedic castes can be found in the inscription.
- ❖ The **Brahmans are referred to as Vipra** in the inscription, and several Prakrit words are used for Kshatriyas.
- ❖ Each caste member was divided into different classes. Among the Brahmans, the Chaturveda and Bhatta groups were prominent.
- ❖ The Kanchuka and Vakata groups were prominent among the Vaishyas.
- ❖ In the time of the Pratiharas, **Arab writer Ibdā Khurdadab** mentioned seven castes.
  - There were classes such as Savakufria, Brahman, Kataria, Sudaria, Bandalia, and Labla, according to him.
  - The King was chosen from the Savakufria class, whereas the Brahman class did not drink wine and married their sons to Kataria class daughters.
    - **Katarias** were classified as Kshatriyas.
    - **Sudarians** were considered Sudras and typically engaged in farming or cattle rearing.
    - **Basuria** class was a Vaishya class whose job was to serve the other classes.
    - **Sandila** class members completed Chandals' work.
    - **Lahuda** class is made up of low and wandering tribes
- ❖ During the time of Muslim attacks, many Hindus became followers of Islam.
  - Hindu society had allowed the purification of such Hindus.
  - The writings of **Aluberni** and other Muslim writers also confirm these references of inter-caste marriage.
    - Rajasekhar had married a Kshatriya girl named Avanti Sundari.
    - Kings and the rich classes practiced polygamy.
    - Usually, men had only one wife.
    - The **sati pratha** was prevalent, though it was not very much prevalent.
    - There was no purdah system among the women of the royal families.

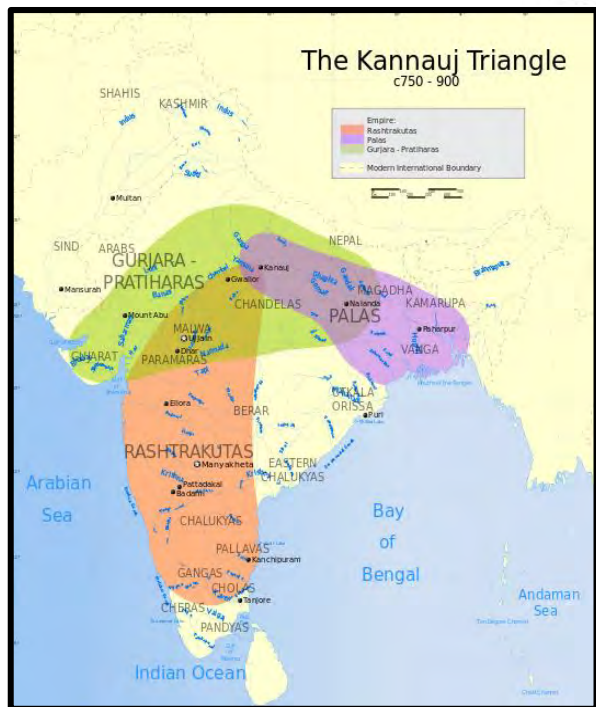
### According to Rajasekhar:

- ❖ Women learnt music, dancing and paintings.
- ❖ Women were very much fond of ornaments and also used oils and cosmetics.
- ❖ People of rich families wear very thin clothes.



### Rashtrakuta Empire:

- ❖ The Rashtrakuta Dynasty ruled south India i.e., Karnataka from 725 -985 A.D. The word 'Rastra' in Sanskrit means region and 'Kuta' indicates Chieftains. They were chieftains in central India before becoming a ruling dynasty.
- ❖ They had good command and contribution towards art and architecture which was unique during this period. They ruled between the 6th to 13th centuries. The dynasty ruled from Malwas region in Manpur today, Madhya Pradesh.
- ❖ And in Achalpur which is modern Elichpur in Maharashtra and also in Kannauj were all the Rashtrakuta Clans. The dynasty realm spread virtually over most of Maharashtra, Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh.
- ❖ Dantidurga was a feudatory of Chalukya Kirtivarman II.



	PALAS	GURJARA- PRATI HARAS	RASHTRAKUTAS
750	Gopala		Dantidurga
760			Krishna I
770	Dhrampala		Dhruv
780	Nalanda University		
790	Vikramshila Uni	Nagabhata II	Govinda III
800	Suleman		
810	Devapala		Amogvarsha
820	Assam		
830	Orissa	Bhoja	
840			
850	Tibetan Chronicles		
860			
870			
880		Mahendrapala I	
890			
900			
910			
920		Mahipala	Indra III
930		Rajshekhara	
940			Krishna III
950			
960			
970			
980			
990			
1000	Mahipala		Malkhed sacked andburned

Place	Modern Karnataka
Period	725-985 AD
Language	Kannada, Sanskrit
Religion	Hinduism, Jainism
Important rulers	Krishna - I, Govinda - II, Dhruva

**Dantidurga (752-756 C.E):**

- ❖ He was the **founder** and the first and the most important king, who defeated the Chalukyas of Badami. He laid the foundation of the Rashtrakuta Empire.
- ❖ He **ruled from Lattaluru (Latur)**, and later shifted the capital to Manyakheta (Malkhed). He founded the **Gulbarga Region of Karnataka**.
- ❖ Also, fought with Pallavas of Kanchi, and Pandyan of Madurai. He built Dasavathara at Ellora.
- ❖ Rashtrakutas were great patrons of art and architecture and were great builders.
- ❖ Pallava king Nandivarman was his father-in-Law and he helped him regain Kanchi from Chalukyas.
- ❖ During his reign he defeated:
  - Gurjaras of Malwa
  - Kalinga
  - Kosala and Srisailam

### Krishna I (756-773 AD):

- ❖ He was the uncle of Dantidurga was one who built the world famous **Kailasha Temple at Ellora** which is a massive structure is carved out of the **single rock (monolithic)** carven out of a mountain and is believed to be a truly a remarkable engineering feat of the 8th century.
- ❖ He took up the throne for budding the Rashtrakuta Empire by overpowering the last king of Chalukyas of Badami Kirtivarman-II.
- ❖ The evidence was the copper plate grant cited from the Gujarat Rashtrakuta king Karka from Baroda.
- ❖ He acquired the titles of Akalavarasha, Shirvallaba, Shubatunga and Prithivivallaba. Final blow to Pallavas.



**Kailashnath Temple, Ellora**

### Govinda - II (774-780):

- ❖ Govinda inherited the throne from his father Krishna -I and he was identified by his incursion of Vengi and the defeat of Eastern Chalukya king Vishnuvardhana IV.

### Dhruva (780-793):

- ❖ One of the most proficient kings of the Rashtrakuta Dynasty, he succeeded the throne from Govinda-II from his elder brother.
- ❖ He also attained the titles as Maharajadiraja, Dharavarsha, Parmeshavara and Kalivallaba.

### Govinda III (793-814 AD):

- ❖ He defeated the King of Lanka and carried two statues of the lord lanka. He terrified the South.

### Amoghavarsha (814-880 A.D):

- ❖ He is the most famous Rashtrakuta king.
- ❖ His reign was distinguished for its **royal patronage of Jainism** and the flourishing of regional literature.
- ❖ He preferred the pursuit of religion and literature to war.
- ❖ He is the author of Kavirajamarga, the first Kannada book on poetics.

### Indira III:

- ❖ Great-grandson of Amoghavarsha, Indira III defeated the Pratihara king Mahipala.

### Krishna III:

- ❖ Krishan III was the last great king of the Rashtrakuta dynasty.

### Rashtrakuta Administration:

- ❖ Under the king, the vital position was of the chief minister called as **Mahasandhivigrah** who had five motifs adequate to his position. These motifs were a conch, a flag, a large drum, a white umbrella and five musical instruments called **Panchamahashabdas**.
- ❖ The Commander was known as **Dandanayaka** and the foreign minister as **Mahashkapatadhikrita**, Prime minister as **Mahamatya or Purnamathya**.
- ❖ They all were linked with the king and with the government.

### Rashtrakuta Army:

- ❖ The Rashtrakuta Dynasty consisted of infantry, countless elephants and several horsemen.
- ❖ The inspiring and majestic capital of Manyakheta was the most evident footing military geared up for war in a cantonment.
- ❖ The kings participated in the wars with enormous defense forces. The chiefs and administrators served as leaders whose jobs were rotated according to the situation across the region.

### Economy in Rashtrakuta Empire:

- ❖ The economy during the era of Rashtrakuta was mainly due to the agricultural and natural produce.
- ❖ Cotton was called the principal crop in the southern region like Gujarat, Khandesh and Berar. Tagara, Ujjain, Paithan, Minnagar and Gujarat were also significant producers and centers of the textile industry.
- ❖ The Calicos were manufactured in Burhanpur and Berar and exported to Persia, Turkey, Poland, Arabia and Cairo.
- ❖ **Mysore** was a good producer of wood, sandal, timber and Ebony.
- ❖ Cuddapah, Bellary, Kurnool and Golconda were the centers for mining the diamonds.
- ❖ The capital Manyakheta and Devagiri were known for important diamond and jewelry trading centers.

### Rashtrakuta Architecture:

- ❖ Rashtrakuta Rulers adopted the Dravidian or Pallava style which can be seen in the famous **Kailash Temple at Ellora** near Aurangabad (Maharashtra).
- ❖ The three groups of rock cut temples in Ellora - **Buddhist, Jain and Brahmanical**. The most marvelous piece of rock architecture and sculpture is Kailash Temple.
- ❖ The temple was built by the Rashtrakuta King Krishna 1 in the 8th Century A.D.
- ❖ It is a complete hillside separated from a range of mountains and a huge temple excavated out of it and the main temple is supported on the backs of elephants.
- ❖ The Shikhara is carved elaborately. It has an entrance gateway, a Nandi shrine and five other shrines surrounding the courtyard.
- ❖ It has a large hall with beautifully carved pillars and a pyramidal Dravidian Shikhara. The temple is blessed with beautiful sculptures of Hindu Gods and Goddesses, episodes from the Epics and Puranas adorn the temple.
- ❖ The most striking feature is the Dasavatara gallery showing the **ten incarnations of Vishnu** which is a masterpiece of architecture of Rashtrakutas.
- ❖ It even includes a number of caves excavated from the hillsides around which contain large halls with images of Hindu Gods.
- ❖ Kailash temple is an illustration of one of those rare occasions when men's minds, hearts and hands work in unison towards the consummation of a supreme ideal.
- ❖ Island of Elephants near Bombay, the cave temples were also built by the Rashtrakuta Rulers.



**Trimurti, Elephanta Cave**

- ❖ The **cave temple** which belongs to the brahmanical group of cave temples is **dedicated to Shiva** and is noted for its fine sculpture.
- ❖ The temple has a huge mandapa supported on twenty pillars on the periphery. The flights of steps lead to it from the courtyards in front and at the back.
- ❖ The temple is famous and well known for the huge **Trimurti** depicting the three aspects of the Supreme - **Creator, Preserver and Destroyer.**

Author	Book	Remarks	Ruler if any
Trivikrama	Nalachampu		
Halayudha	Kavirahasya		Krishna III
Jinasena	Parsva Budaya	History of Jain in sections	Amoghvarsha
Sakatayana	Amogavritti	Punctuations work	
Viracharya	Ganitasaram	Mathematician	
Amoghvarsha	Kavirajmarga	Start of Kannada writing	
Pampa	Vikramsenavijaya	Best of Kannada writers Fathers of Kannada Literature	
Ponna	Santipurana		

### Political Ideas and Organisation prevalent in the three Empires:

- ❖ The system of administration in these empires was based on the ideas and practices of **Gupta empire, Harsha Kingdom and Chalukyas in the Deccan.**
- ❖ As it was the case earlier, the Monarch was the head of administration as well as commander in chief of the army.
- ❖ He used to sit in magnificent darbar and also dispense justice.
- ❖ He was attended by the royal chamberlains, who regulated the coming and going of Vassal chiefs, feudatories, ambassadors and other high officials.
- ❖ The court of the king was not only the center of political power but also cultural life. Dancing girls and musicians attended the court.
- ❖ The ladies of the King's house also attended the Darbar. According to Arab writers, the culture of covering faces with veil did not exist among them.
- ❖ The position of the King in these empires was hereditary. Wars were frequent between kings and between kings and their Vassals (holder of lands).
- ❖ **Political Ideas:** Contemporary writers such as Medhatithi, held that it was the right of every person to bear arms for self-defense. It was also right to oppose unjust kings. Thus, the extreme views of Royal rights and privileges put forward by Puranas was not acceptable by all thinkers of this age.



- ❖ **Succession:** Rules about succession were not rigidly fixed. The eldest son usually succeeded his father's throne but this wasn't the thumb rule. For Example: The Rashtrakuta rulers Dhruva and Govinda IV deposed their younger brothers.
  - Younger sons were sometimes appointed as provincial governors.
- ❖ **Princess:** They were rarely appointed to the government posts. However, we have instances where **Rashtrakuta princess Chandrobalabbe** (Daughter of Amoghvarsha I) administered the Raichur doab.
- ❖ **Ministers:** The Kings in these empires were advised by a number of Ministers and they were chosen by the kings from noble families. Their position of ministers was often hereditary.
- ❖ From literary records it appears that in almost every kingdom there was a foreign affairs minister, revenue minister, treasurer, chief of army, chief justice and Purohita. Among the ministers one was chosen by the king as his Prime Minister. All the ministers except Purohita were expected to lead the military campaigns.
- ❖ Elephants were the element of strength as far as the Army is considered. Largest number of elephants were maintained by the Pala Kings.
- ❖ Large number of horses were imported by the Rashtrakuta and Pratihara Kings. They imported horses from Arabia, West Asia and Central Asia. Pratihara kings were believed to have finest cavalry. However, there is no reference to chariots which seem to have fallen out of use.
- ❖ The Rashtrakutas also have a large number of forts. These were garrisoned by special troops and had their own independent commander. The regular troops were often hereditary and drawn from different regions in India.

### Administration:

- ❖ The empires consisted of Areas administered directly and areas ruled over by the Vassals.
- ❖ The areas ruled by Vassals were autonomous as far their internal affairs were concerned and had a general obligation of loyalty, paying a fixed tribute and a quota of troops to the king.
- ❖ The Vassal chief was required to attend the darbar on special occasions and sometimes they were required to marry one of their daughters to the King or one of his sons.
- ❖ However, the vassals always aspired to be Independent and thus the war b/w them and the overlord was frequent. For Ex- The Rashtrakutas and Pratiharas had to fight constantly with the Vassals.

### Directly Administered Territory:

- ❖ The directly administered territories in the Pala and Pratihara empires were divided into Bhukti and Mandala or Visaya.
  - **Governor:** Called Uparika. He was expected to collect land revenue and maintain law and order.
  - **Head of the District:** Called Visayapati. His function was the same as that of governor but under those areas which came under his jurisdiction.
  - There was an increase in the small chieftains called Samantas or Bhagapatis.
- ❖ In the Rashtrakuta Empire the directly administered areas were divided into Rashtra, Visaya and Bhukti.
  - Here the Head of Rashtra was the Rashtrapati who had the same functions as Uparika.
  - **Visaya:** It was like a district in modern times.
  - **Bhukti:** It was a smaller unit than the district.
- ❖ **Note:** In Pala and Pratihara the unit lower than Visaya was called Pattala.

- ❖ **Note:** It appears that all the officials were paid by giving them grants of rent-free land.
- ❖ Below the territorial divisions were the villages which were the basic unit of administration.

### Village Administration:

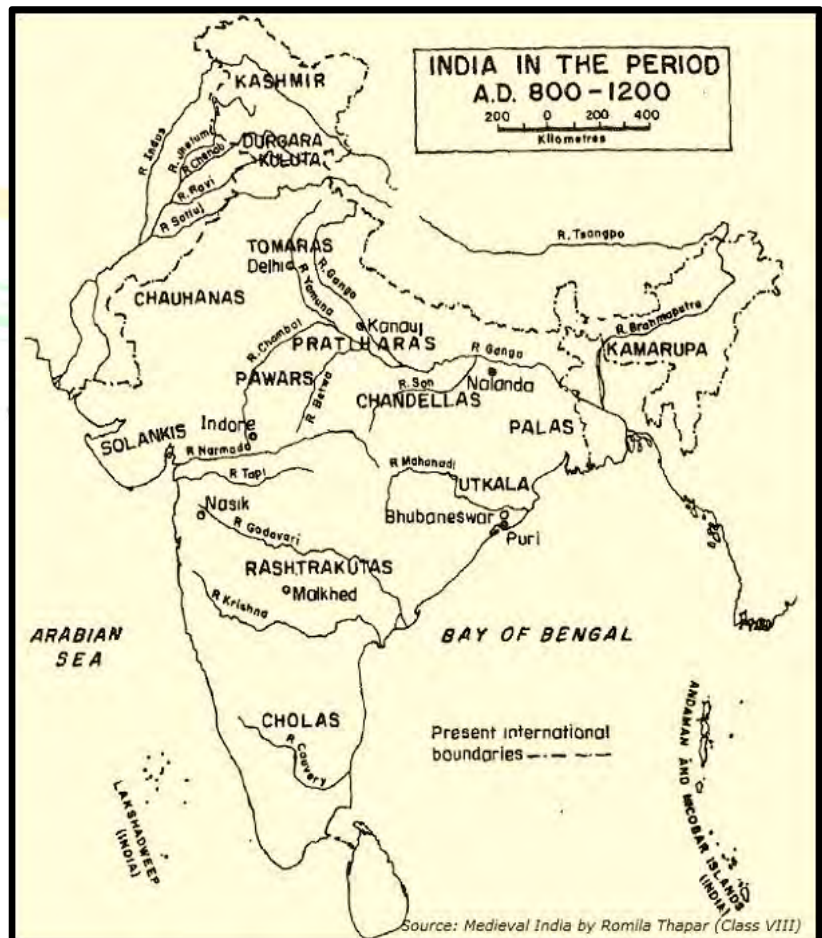
- ❖ Village administration was carried out by the village headman and accountant. The post of accountant was hereditary.
- ❖ Village headman was often helped by the village elder called Grams Mahajana or Grams Mahattara in Rashtrakuta Kingdom.
- ❖ There were local committees to manage the schools, tanks, temples and roads. They also helped in deciding simple disputes.

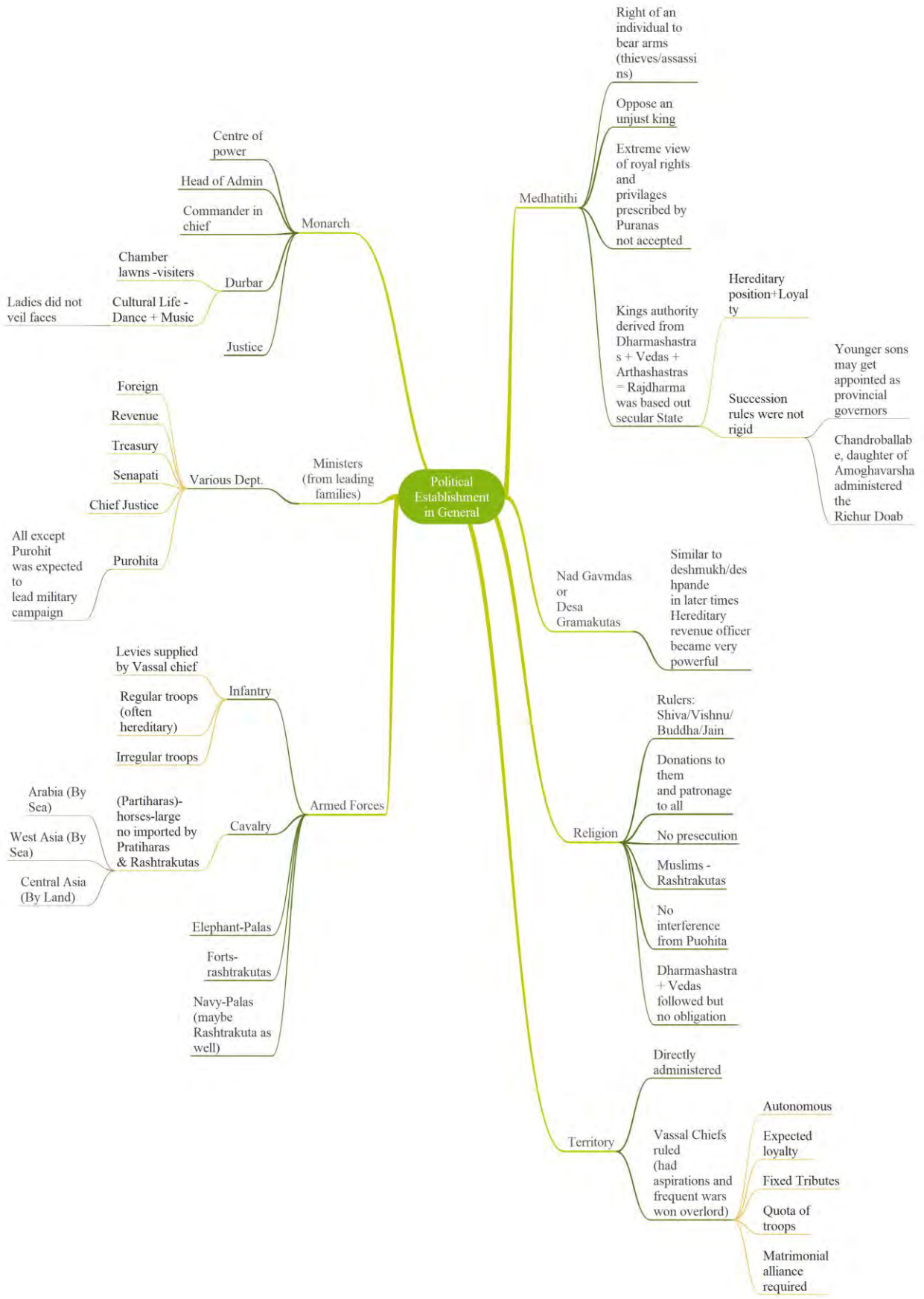
### Towns:

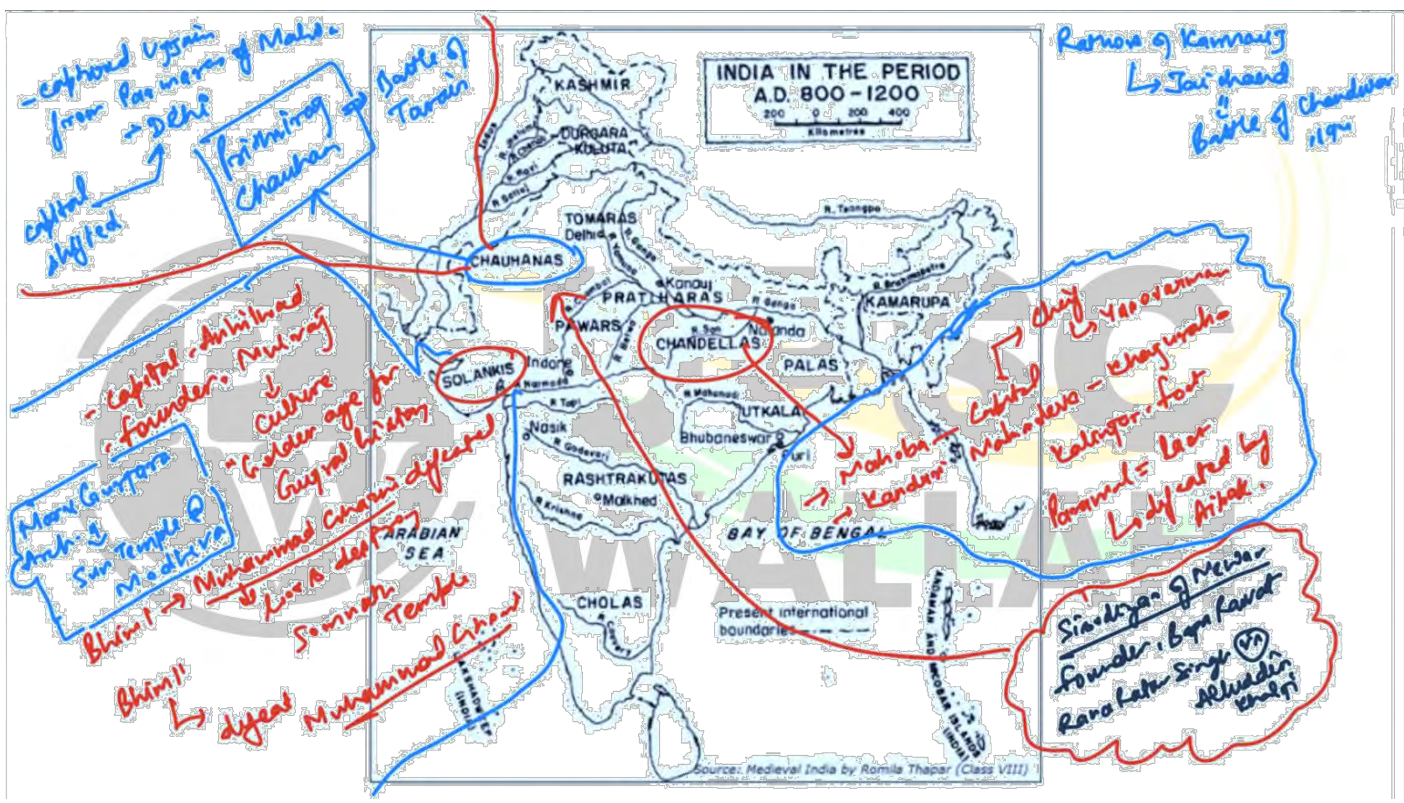
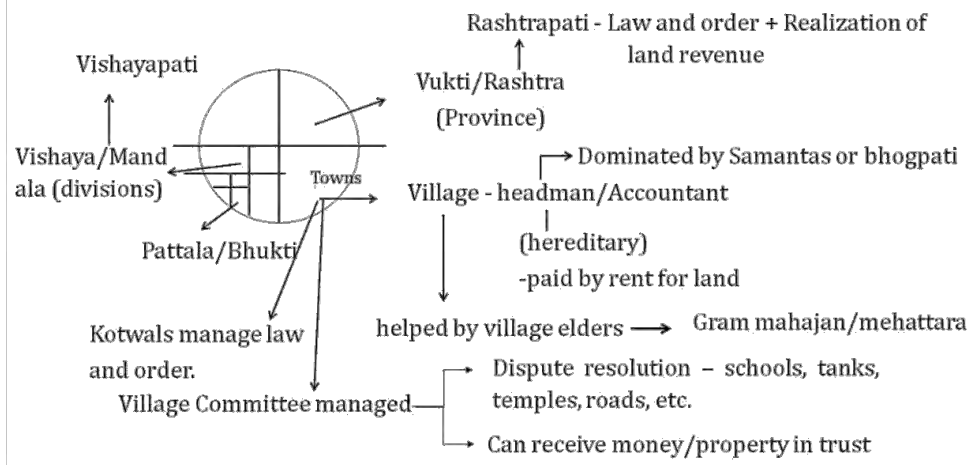
- ❖ The towns also had similar committees. The maintenance of law and order in the town was the responsibility of Koshta Pala or Kotwal.
- ❖ An important feature of the period was the rise in the Deccan of hereditary Revenue officers called the Nod Gavundas or Desa Gramakutasi.
- ❖ They appear to have discharged the same function as deshmuks or deshpande of later times in Maharashtra.
- ❖ As the power of these elements grew the village committees became weaker and the government was becoming feudal.

### Religion:

- ❖ Many of the rulers of this time were the devout followers of Shiva or Vishnu or they followed the teachings of Buddhism and Jainism.
- ❖ They generally gave patronage to all faiths and did not persecute anyone for his religious beliefs. Rashtrakuta Kings even allowed Muslims to come and preach their faith.
- ❖ Normally they did not interfere with customs or with the code of conduct prescribed by the law books called Dharmashastras. The Purohit was expected to guide the King in these matters.







PW Mobile APP: <https://physicswala.page.link/?type=contact-us&data=open>  
 For PW Website: <https://www.physicswallah.live/contact-us>

# DAILY CLASS NOTES

---

## MEDIEVAL HISTORY

Lecture - 05

Cholas and the Southern Dynasties



## Cholas and Southern Dynasties

### Difference between Northern Medieval Dynasties and Southern Dynasties:

- ❖ After the disintegration of Harshvardhan empire, the Indian subcontinent underwent many dynasties. These dynasties are mainly divided on a regional basis.
- ❖ While after the disintegration of Harsha empire **Northern India** went into what we call **“Dark age”** (7th century- 10th century). But for **Southern India**, it was a **“golden age”** under the rise of the Chola empire.
- ❖ During this medieval period different dynasties rose in power and took a commanding role in the Indian medieval period.
- ❖ The land of India was separated as various small kingdoms emerged from north to south and east to west and those kingdoms were ruled by different independent kings.

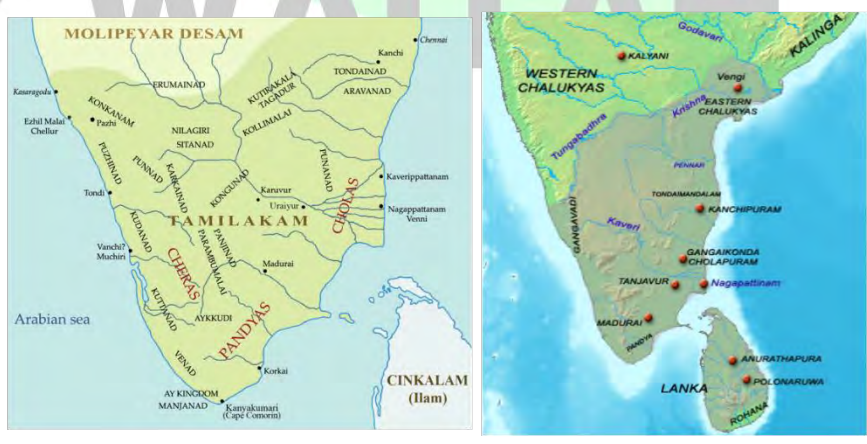
### Southern Dynasties during Medieval Period:

- ❖ Rashtrakutas
- ❖ Imperial Cholas (3rd - 13th century)
- ❖ Chera and Pandya
- ❖ Hoysala Empire
- ❖ Vijayanagar Empire

### The Chola Dynasty:

- ❖ The **Chola Dynasty** was a Tamil dynasty that ruled in southern India **until the 13th century**.
- ❖ The dynasty originated in the **fertile valley of the Kaveri River**.
- ❖ **Karikala Chola** was the most famous among the early Chola kings, while **Rajaraja Chola, Rajendra Chola and Kulothunga Chola I** were famous emperors of the medieval Cholas.
- ❖ The Cholas were at the height of their power **during the tenth, eleventh and twelfth centuries**.
- ❖ Under **Rajaraja Chola I** and his son **Rajendra Chola**, the dynasty became a military, economic and cultural power in Asia.
- ❖ The Chola territories stretched from the islands of the **Maldives** in the South to as far as North to the banks of the **Godavari River** in Andhra Pradesh.

### THE CHOLA EMPIRE- THE RISE





830	Orissa	Bhoja				830
840						840
850	Tibetan Chronicles			Vijayalaya		850
860			Amogvarsha		captured TANJORE	860
870				Aditya		870
880		Mahendrapala I				880
890						890
900				Parantaka I		900
910						910
920		Mahipala	Indra III			920
930			Rajshekhara			930
940		destroyed	Krishna III			940
950						950
960						960
970						970
980			Malkhed sacked andburned			980
990				Rajaraja I		990
1000				destroyed Chera Navy ,attacked guilon, Madurai, Sri lanka, Maldiv Islands		1000
1010	Mahipala			captured Pandyan king,defeated Ganga and Vengii		1010
1020				Ganga and Vengii		1020
1030				Rajendra I		1030
1040				Conquered Orissa, Andaman, Burma, Bengal		1040
1050				Gngaikondacholapuram		1050
1060				Rajadhiraja		1060
1070						1070
1080				Kullotungal		1080
1090						1090
1100						1100
1110						1110
1120						1120
1130						1130
1140						1140
1150				Rajaraja II		1150
1160						1160
1170						1170

- ❖ Rajaraja Chola conquered peninsular South India, **annexed parts of Sri Lanka** and also occupied the islands of the **Maldives**.
- ❖ The **power of the Cholas declined around the 12th century** with the rise of the Pandyas and the Hoysala, eventually coming to an end towards the end of the 13th century.
- ❖ Cholas patronaged Tamil Literature and **their zeal in building temples** have resulted in some great works of Tamil literature, sculpture and architecture.
- ❖ The Chola kings were avid builders and envisioned the temples in their kingdoms **not only as places of worship but also as centers of economic activity**.
- ❖ The kingdoms along the east coast of India up to the river Ganges acknowledged Chola suzerainty.
- ❖ Chola navies invaded and conquered **Srivijaya** in the Malayan archipelago. This period saw constant warfare between the Cholas and its antagonists such as Sinhalas, Pandyas, Chalukya, etc.

**Ponniyin Selvan:**  
 It is a **historical fiction novel** by Indian author **Kalki Krishnamurthy**, written in Tamil. It was first serialized in the weekly editions of Kalki, a Tamil magazine, from 29 October 1950 to 16 May 1954 and later integrated into five volumes in 1955. In about 2,210 pages, it tells the story of the early days of **Chola Prince Arulmozhiarman**.

**Medieval Cholas Rulers:**

- ❖ **Vijayalaya: 848–891**
- ❖ **Aditya I: 891–907**

- ❖ **Parantaka I: 907–950**
- ❖ Gandaraditya: 950–957
- ❖ Arinjaya: 956–957
- ❖ Sundara (Parantaka II): 957–970
- ❖ Aditya II: (co-regent)
- ❖ Uttama: 970–985
- ❖ **Rajaraja I: 985–1014**
- ❖ **Rajendra I: 1012–1044**
- ❖ Rajadhiraja: 1044–1054
- ❖ Rajendra II: 1054–1063
- ❖ Virarajendra: 1063–1070
- ❖ Athirajendra: 1070–1070

### Later Chola Rulers:

- ❖ Kulothunga I: 1070–1120
- ❖ Vikrama: 1118–1135
- ❖ Kulothunga II: 1133–1150
- ❖ Rajaraja II: 1146–1173
- ❖ Rajadhiraja II: 1166–1178
- ❖ Kulothunga III: 1178–1218
- ❖ Rajaraja III: 1216–1256
- ❖ Rajendra III: 1246–1279

### Vijayalaya:

- ❖ Vijayalaya was the **founder** of the Imperial Chola dynasty.
- ❖ He was possibly a **feudatory of the Pallava Dynasty**.
- ❖ He took an opportunity arising out of a conflict between the Pandya dynasty and Pallava dynasty in c. 850, **captured Thanjavur from Muttarayar**, and established the imperial line of the medieval Chola Dynasty.
- ❖ Thanjavur became the capital of the Imperial Chola Dynasty.

### Aditya (871-907 AD):

- ❖ The second Chola King, Aditya I, caused the demise of the Pallava dynasty and defeated the Pandyan dynasty of Madurai in 885 AD.
- ❖ He occupied large parts of the Kannada country, and had marital ties with the Western Ganga Dynasty (ruling dynasty of ancient Karnataka in India which lasted from about 350 to 1000 CE).

### Parantaka I (907-950 AD):

- ❖ In 925, his son **Parantaka I** conquered Sri Lanka (known as Ilangai).
- ❖ Parantaka I also defeated the Rashtrakuta dynasty under Krishna II in the battle of Vallala.
- ❖ But the Chola king got defeated by Rashtrakutas king Krishna III. It was a serious setback to the Cholas, but they recovered under the Rajaraja chola.

830	Orissa	Bhoja				830
840						840
850	Tibetan Chronicles			Vijayalaya		850
860			Amogvarsha		captured TANJORE	860
870				Aditya		870
880		Mahendrapala I				880
890						890
900				Parantaka I		900
910						910
920		Mahipala	Indra III			920
930			Rajshekhar			930
940		destroyed	Krishna III			940
950						950
960						960
970						970
980			Malkhed sacked andburned			980
990				Rajaraja I		990
1000				destroyed Chera Navy ,attacked quilon, Madurai, Sri Lanka, Maldive Islands		1000
1010	Mahipala			captured Pandyan king,defeated Ganga and Vengii		1010
1020				Ganga and Vengii		1020
1030				Rajendra I		1030
1040				Conquered Orissa, Andaman, Burma, Bengal		1040
1050				Gngaikondacholapuram		1050
1060				Rajadhiraja		1060
1070						1070
1080				Kullotungal		1080
1090						1090
1100						1100
1110						1110
1120						1120
1130						1130
1140						1140
1150				Rajaraja II		1150
1160						1160
1170						1170

**Rajaraja I (984 - 1014):**

- ❖ Karuvurar was the Guru for the King Rajaraja I.
- ❖ He **destroyed the Chera navy** at Thiruvananthapuram and also conquered Pandyan king and Maldive Islands. He also **invaded Sri Lanka** and annexed its northern part.
- ❖ He built the Brihadishwara temple/Rajarajeshwara temple in Thanjavur, one of the largest Hindu temples.
- ❖ The texts of the **Tamil poets - Appar, Sambandar and Sundarar** were collected and edited into one compilation called **Thirumurai**.
- ❖ He ruled over the Chola kingdom of Ancient Tamil Nadu, parts of northern India, two thirds of Sri Lankan territory (Eezham), Maldives and parts of East Asia.
- ❖ During his reign, the Cholas expanded beyond South India with their domains stretching from Sri Lanka in the south to Kalinga in the north.
- ❖ Rajaraja I also launched several naval campaigns that resulted in the capture of the **Malabar Coast** as well as the **Maldives and Sri Lanka**.
- ❖ Initiated a massive project of land survey and assessment in 1000 AD which led to the reorganization of the country into individual units known as valanadus.



Rajarajeshwara/ Brihadeshwara temple



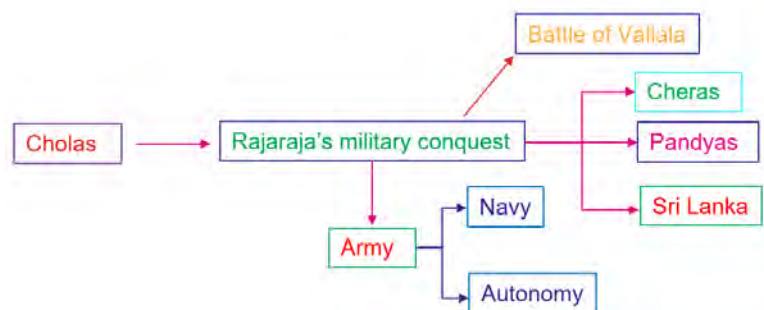
**Military Conquests:**

- ❖ Rajaraja I created a powerful standing army and a considerable navy.

- ❖ A number of regiments are mentioned in the Thanjavur inscriptions. These regiments were divided into elephant troops, cavalry and infantry and each of these regiments had its own autonomy and was free to endow benefactions or build temples.
- ❖ Rajaraja began his first campaign in the eighth year of his reign.
- ❖ During this time the Pandyas, Cheras and the Sinhals allied against the Cholas.
- ❖ In 994 A.D. Rajaraja I destroyed the fleet of the Chera king Bhaskara Ravi Varman Thiruvadi (c. 978–1036 AD) in the **Kandalur Salai War**.
- ❖ Rajaraja I defeated the Pandya king **Amarabhujanga** and captured the **port of Virinam**.
- ❖ To commemorate these conquests, Rajaraja I assumed the title Mummudi Chola, a title used by Tamil kings who ruled the three kingdoms of Cholas, Pandyas and Cheras.
- ❖ In 1008 AD, Rajaraja I captured Udagai from Cheras.

### Conquest of Sri Lanka:

- ❖ **Mahinda V** was the king of Sinhalese. In 991 AD, Mahinda's army mutinied with help from mercenaries from Kerala with Mahinda seeking refuge in the southern region of Ruhuna.
- ❖ Rajaraja I invaded Sri Lanka in 993 AD. The **Thiruvallangadu Copper-Plate Inscriptions** mention that Rajaraja's army crossed the ocean by ships and destroyed Anuradhapura, the 1400-year-old capital of Sinhals.
- ❖ Cholas made the city of Polonnaruwa as the capital and renamed it Jananath Mangalam.
- ❖ Rajaraja **built a Shiva temple in Polonnaruwa** to commemorate the victory. He captured only the northern part of Sri Lanka while the southern part remained independent.
- ❖ His son Rajendra Chola captured the island in 1017 A.D. and the Chola reign in Sri Lanka was ended by Vijayabahu I in 1070 A.D.
- ❖ He also defeated - Western Chalukyas, Rashtrakutas, and Later Chalukyas.
- ❖ He annexed the North Western part of Ganga region in North West Karnataka. He even defeated Vengi, but restored after marrying the princess (matrimonial alliance).
  - The Cholas and the later Chalukyas clashed over Vengi, Tungbhadra Doab and North Western Karnataka.



### Chalukyan Conflict:

- ❖ In 998 A.D. Rajaraja captured the regions of Gangapadi, Nolambapadi and Tadigaipadi (present day Karnataka).

- ❖ Rajaraja Chola extinguished the Nolambas, who were the feudatories of Ganga while conquering and annexing Nolambapadi.
- ❖ The conquered provinces were originally feudatories of the Rashtrakutas.
- ❖ In 973 AD the Rashtrakutas were defeated by the Western Chalukyas leading to direct conflict with Cholas.
- ❖ An inscription of Irvabedanga Satyashraya from Dharwar describes him as a vassal of the Western Chalukyas and acknowledges the Chola onslaught.
- ❖ In the same inscription, he accuses Rajendra of having arrived with a force of 955,000 and of having gone on rampage in Donuvara thereby blurring the moralities of war as laid out in the Dharmasastras.

### **Kalinga Conquest:**

- ❖ The invasion of the kingdom of Kalinga occurred after the conquest of Vengi.

### **Naval Expedition:**

- ❖ One of the last conquests of Rajaraja I was the **naval conquest of the islands of Maldives**.
- ❖ The realization of the importance of a good navy and the desire to neutralize the **emerging Chera Naval power** were probably the reasons for the Kandalur campaign in the early days of Rajaraja reign.
- ❖ The Cholas controlled the area around the Bay of Bengal with **Nagapattinam** as the main port. The Chola Navy also had played a major role in the invasion of Sri Lanka.
- ❖ The success of Raja Raja allowed his **son Rajendra Chola to lead the Chola invasion of Srivijaya**, carrying out naval raids in South-East Asia and briefly occupying Kadaram.
- ❖ He initiated a massive project of land survey and assessment in 1000 AD which led to the reorganization of the country into individual units known as '**Valanadus**'. It was an excellent revenue system.
- ❖ He is called as '**Ulkalanada Peruma**', meaning great one who measured the earth.

### **Rajendra Chola I (1014 - 44):**

- ❖ Rajendra Chola - I succeeded his father Rajaraja Chola I to the throne in 1014 CE. He is considered as one of the greatest emperors of India. He wiped out the Chera and Pandya dynasty.
- ❖ During his reign, he extended the influence of the Chola empire to the banks of the river Ganga in North India and across the Indian ocean to the West, making the Chola Empire one of the most powerful empires of India.
- ❖ Rajendra's conquests included:
  - **Sri Lanka,**
  - **Maldives, and**
  - **Territories of Srivijaya in Malaysia, Southern Thailand and Indonesia in South East Asia.**
  - The Cholas exacted tribute from **Thailand and the Khmer kingdom of Cambodia.**

### **Expedition to the Ganges:**

- ❖ In 1019 CE, Rajendra's forces marched through Kalinga towards the river Ganga.
- ❖ In Kalinga the Chola forces defeated Indraratha the ruler of the Somavamsi Dynasty.
- ❖ The Chola Army eventually reached the **Pala kingdom of Bengal where they defeated Mahipala** and to commemorate his victory, he assumed the title of **Gangaikonda Chola** literally the Chola who conquered the (kingdoms near) Ganga and built a new capital city called **Gangaikonda Cholapuram**.



- ❖ Similar to the Brihadeshwara Temple, he built the **Shiva temple and Chodagarg tank** (for tank irrigation).
- ❖ The Chola army also **defeated** the last ruler of the **Kamboja Pala dynasty Dharmapala** of Dandabhukti.
- ❖ The Chola army went on to **raid East Bengal** and defeated Govindachandra of the **Chandra dynasty** and invaded Bastar region.
- ❖ The territories held the status of **tribute paying subordinates** and trade partners with the Chola Kingdom, an arrangement that lasted till the times of Kulothunga III.

### Rashtrakutas and Western Chalukyas:

- ❖ He conquered the Chalukyan territories of Yedatore (a large part of the Raichur district between Krishna and the Tungabhadra), Banavasi in the north-west of Mysore and capital Manyakheta.
- ❖ Rajendra erected a Shiva temple at Bhatkal.
- ❖ In 1004 CE, he captured Talakad and overthrew the **Western Ganga Dynasty** which had ruled over Mysore for almost 1000 years.
- ❖ He also **conquered Kollipakkai**, located to the north of Hyderabad in present-day Telangana.

### Conquest of Sri Lanka:

- ❖ Raja Raja Chola I conquered the northern half of Sri Lanka during his reign. Rajendra invaded Ceylon in 1017 CE and annexed the entire island.
- ❖ As a result of the campaign, Rajendra captured the regal jewels of the Pandyas, which Parantaka I tried to capture and the crown of the Sinhala king.
- ❖ The Sinhala king **Mahinda V** was taken prisoner and transported to the Chola country.

### Pandyas and Cheras:

- ❖ In 1018 CE, Rajendra marched across the Pandya and Chera kingdoms referred to in the **Tamil Copper-Plate Inscriptions**.
- ❖ The territories were already conquered during the reign of Raja Raja I. Rajendra appointed one of his sons as viceroy with the title **Jatavarman Sundara Chola-Pandya with Madurai as the headquarters**.

### Chalukyan Conflict:

- ❖ In 1015 CE, **Jayasimha II became the king of Western Chalukyas**.
- ❖ He tried to recover the losses suffered by his predecessor Satyashraya, who fled his capital and was later restored to the throne by Raja Raja I as a tribute paying subordinate.
- ❖ Initially, Jayasimha II was successful as Rajendra was busy with his campaigns in Sri Lanka.
- ❖ In 1021 CE, after the demise of the Eastern Chalukyan king Vimaladitya of Vengi, Jayasimha supported the claim of Vijayaditya VII to the throne against the claims of Rajaraja Narendra.
- ❖ Rajaraja Narendra was the son of Vimaladitya and Chola princess Kundavai. Rajendra helped his nephew Rajaraja defeat Vijayaditya.
- ❖ His armies defeated **Vijayadiya in Vengi and Jayasimha in the battle of Maski**.

### Southeast Asian Expedition:

- ❖ Srivijaya was a kingdom centered on Palembang in Sumatra, ruled by the **Sailendra Dynasty**.

- ❖ During the reign of **Mara Vijayatungavarman**, Srivijaya had cordial relations with the Chola Empire during the reign of Rajaraja Chola I.
- ❖ Mara Vijayunga Varman built a **Chudamani Vihara at Nagapattinam**. He was succeeded by **Sangrama Vijayatunggavarman**.
- ❖ **Khmer Emperor Suryavarman I** made war on the kingdom of Tambralinga (in the Malay Peninsula).
- ❖ Suryavarman I requested aid from Rajendra. After learning of Suryavarman's alliance with Rajendra Chola, Tambralinga requested aid from Srivijaya, which was granted by Sangrama.
- ❖ This eventually led to the Chola expedition against the **Srivijaya Empire**. This alliance somewhat also had a religious nuance, since both the **Chola Empire and the Khmer Empire** were Hindu Shaivites, while **Tambralinga and Srivijaya** were Mahayana Buddhist.
- ❖ In 1025 CE, Rajendra led Chola forces across the Indian Ocean and invaded Srivijaya, attacking several places in Malaysia and Indonesia.
- ❖ The Chola sacked **Kadaram (the capital)** and Pannai in Sumatra and Malaiyur in the Malay Peninsula. Rajendra also invaded Tambralinga and the Langkasuka Kingdom in modern Malaysia and south Thailand.
- ❖ The Chola forces **captured the last ruler of the Sailendra Dynasty Sangrama Vijayatunggavarman**. The Chola invasion was the end of Srivijaya.
- ❖ Srivijaya's maritime power declined under Chola attack.

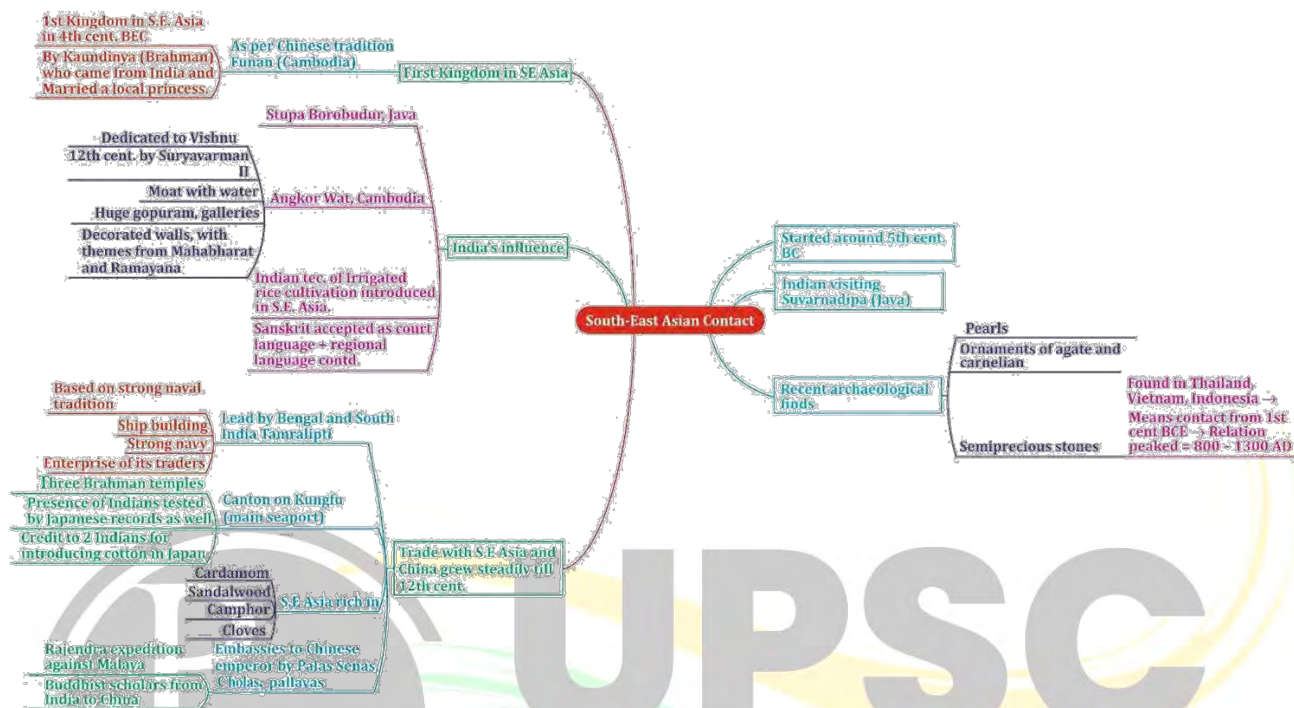


- ❖ After this the Chola Empire conquered large portions of Srivijaya, including its ports of Ligor, Kedah, and Tumasik (now Singapore).
- ❖ The Chola invasion furthered the expansion of Tamil merchant associations such as the **Manigramam, Ayyavole, and Ainnurruvar** into Southeast Asia.
- ❖ For the next century, Tamil trading companies from southern India dominated Southeast Asia.
- ❖ The Chola invasion also coincided with the return voyage of the **great Buddhist scholar Atisa** from Sumatra to India in 1025.

### **South-East Asian Contact:**

- ❖ Started around the 5th century BC and Indians started visiting **Suvarnadipa (Java)**.
- ❖ Recent archaeological findings:
  - Pearls
  - Ornaments of agate and carnelian
  - Semi Precious stones:
    - Found in Thailand, Vietnam, Indonesia, this means the contact started from 1st century BCE, however the relation peaked at 800 – 1300 AD.
- ❖ South East Asia was rich in:
  - Cardamom
  - Sandalwood
  - Camphor
  - Cloves
- ❖ Indian technology of Irrigated rice cultivation was introduced in South East Asia.
- ❖ **Sanskrit** was accepted as a **court language** besides the continuation of regional languages.
- ❖ As per Chinese tradition Funan (Cambodia) → 1st Kingdom in S.E. Asia in 4<sup>th</sup> century BCE by Kaundinya (Brahman) who came from India and Married a local princess.
- ❖ **Trade with South East Asia and China** grew steadily till the 12th century and it was led by Bengal (Tamralipti) and South India based on **strong naval tradition**:
  - Ship building
  - Strong navy
  - Enterprise of its traders
- ❖ **Canton on Kungfu** was the main seaport.
  - In the Canton, there were three Brahmana temples, where Brahmanas resided.
  - Presence of Indians has been testified by Japanese records as well.
  - Two Indians were given credit for introducing cotton in Japan.
  - Trade relations were encouraged by sending a series of embassies to the Chinese emperor by Palas, Senas, Cholas and Pallavas.
  - Rajendra's expedition against Malaya took place.
  - Buddhist scholars went from India to China.
- ❖ Other Indian influences such as: The Sailendras built a temple dedicated to Buddha at Barabodur in Java.

- ❖ **Angkor Wat**, Cambodia dedicated to Vishnu built by 12th century by **Suryavarman II**:
  - It is surrounded by a moat, filled with water.
  - It has a huge gopuram (gateway) and number of galleries, the walls of which are decorated with sculptures based on themes drawn from the Mahabharat and the Ramayana.



### Chalukya (Later) Cholas:

- ❖ This dynasty was the product of decades of **alliances based on marriages** between the Cholas and the Eastern Chalukyas based in Vengi.
- ❖ The Chalukya Chola dynasty saw very capable rulers in Kulothunga Chola I and Vikrama Chola; however, **the decline of the Chola power practically started during this period.**
- ❖ Around 1118 they lost the control of Vengi to Western Chalukya king Vikramaditya VI and Gangavadi (southern Mysore districts) to the **growing power of Hoysala Vishnuvardhana, a Chalukya feudatory.**
- ❖ During the last century of the Cholas, a permanent Hoysala army was stationed in Kanchipuram to protect them from the growing influence of the Pandyas.
- ❖ However, the Chola empire was completely overshadowed by the **Pandyan empire**, though many small chieftains continued to claim the title "Chola" well into the 15th century

### Chola Administration:

- ❖ The king was the most important person in the Chola administration. All authority rested in his hands, but he had a council of ministers to advise him.
- ❖ The Chola Empire was divided into **mandalams** or **provinces** and these, in turn, were divided into **valanadu** and **nadu**.
- ❖ Sometimes, princes of the royal family were appointed governors of provinces.



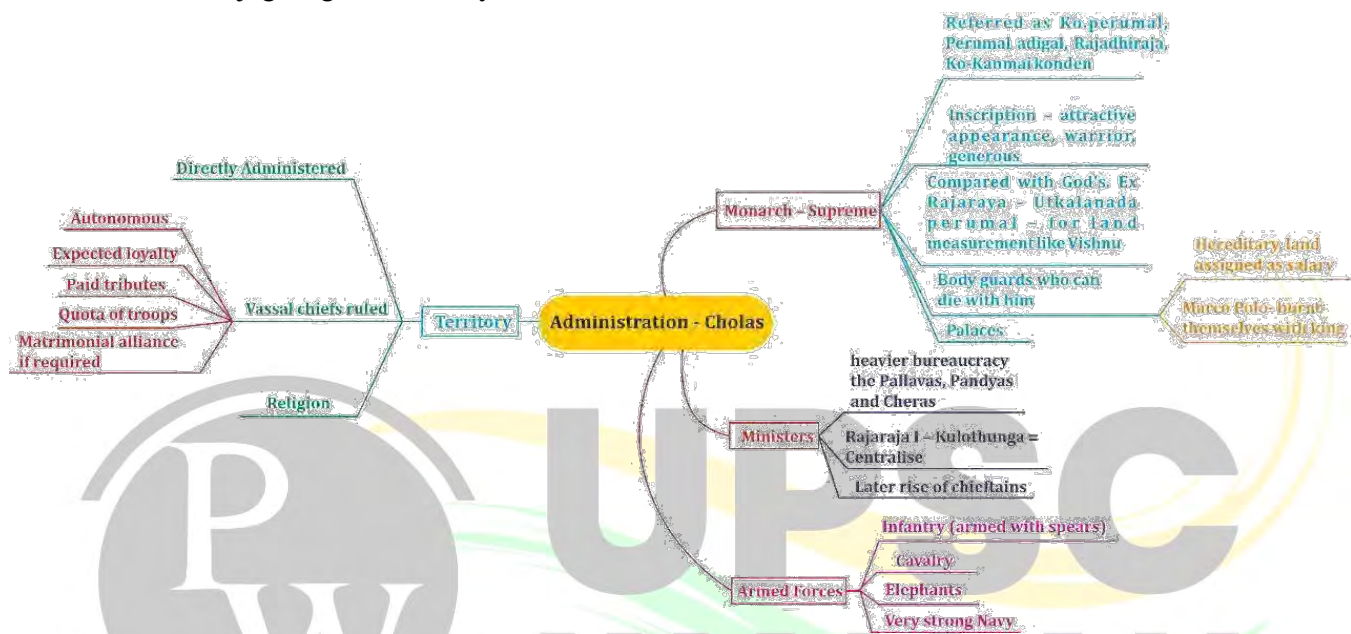
- ❖ Officials were generally paid by giving them assignments of revenue bearing lands.
- ❖ The Chola rulers built a **network of royal roads** which were useful for trade as well as for the movement of the army.
- ❖ **Trade and commerce** flourished in the Chola Empire, and there were some gigantic trade guilds which traded with Java and Sumatra.
- ❖ The Cholas also paid attention to **irrigation**. The main water resource for this kingdom was the **Kaveri River**. Many tanks for irrigation were built.
- ❖ Some of the Chola rulers carried out an elaborate **survey of land** in order to fix the government's share of the land revenue. The precise government share was not known.
- ❖ In addition to land tax, the Chola rulers drew their income from **tolls on trade, taxes on professions**, and also from the **plunder of the neighboring territories**.
- ❖ The Chola rulers were wealthy and could afford to build a number of towns and magnificent monuments.
- ❖ **Local-government** is the basic features of chola government.
- ❖ Inscriptions suggest some details about **village administration** during the time of Cholas empire.
- ❖ They seem to have two assemblies, called the **ur** and the **sabha or mahasabha**.
  - **Ur:** The ur was a general assembly of the village.
  - **Mahasabha:** This was a gathering of the adult men in the **brahmana villages** which were called **agraharas**. These were villages settled by the brahmanas in which most of the land was rent-free. These villages enjoyed a large measure of autonomy.
- ❖ The **affairs of the village were managed by an executive committee** to which educated persons owning property were elected either by drawing lots or by rotation.
- ❖ These members had to **retire every three years**. There were other committees for helping in the assessment and collection or land revenue One of the important **for maintenance of law and order, justice, etc**.
- ❖ There was the tank committee which looked after the distribution of water to the fields.
- ❖ The mahasabha could settle new lands, and exercise ownership rights over them. It could also raise loans for the village and levy taxes.

### **Chola Army and Navy:**

- ❖ The **Cholas maintained a large army consisting of elephants, cavalry and infantry** which were called the three limbs of the army.
- ❖ The infantry was generally armed with spears. Most of the **kings had bodyguards** who were sworn to defend the kings even at the cost of their lives.
- ❖ The Venetian traveler, **Marco Polo, who visited Kerala in the thirteenth century**, mentions that the soldiers in the bodyguard burnt themselves in the funeral pyre of the monarch when he died, a statement which may well be an exaggeration.
- ❖ **The Cholas also had a strong navy**, which dominated the Malabar and Coromandel coast and for some time, the entire Bay of Bengal.
- ❖ The Chola Navy comprised the **naval forces** of the Chola Empire along with several other naval arms of the country.



- ❖ The Chola navy played a vital role in the expansion of the Chola Empire, including the **conquest of the Ceylon islands** and **naval raids on Sri Vijaya** (present day Indonesia). The navy grew both in size and status during the Medieval Cholas reign.
- ❖ The Chola Admirals commanded much respect and prestige in the society. The navy commanders also acted as diplomats in some instances.
- ❖ From 900 to 1100, the navy had grown from a small backwater entity to that of a potent power projection and diplomatic symbol in all of Asia, but was gradually reduced in significance when the Cholas **fought land battles** for subjugating the **Chalukyas of Andhra Kannada** area in South India.



**Empire (Directly Administered) → Rajyam/Rashtram (Local Self-Government)**

**Local Self Government:**

- ❖ Officials were mostly paid by Land Grant (revenue bearing)
- ❖ Kottam or Valanadus.
- ❖ Also called as agricultural lands → Nadus (districts) → Assembly of the leading men (Nattar)
- ❖ It consists of autonomous villages.
- ❖ **Madalams (Province):** Headed by governor/Viceroy (generally princes)

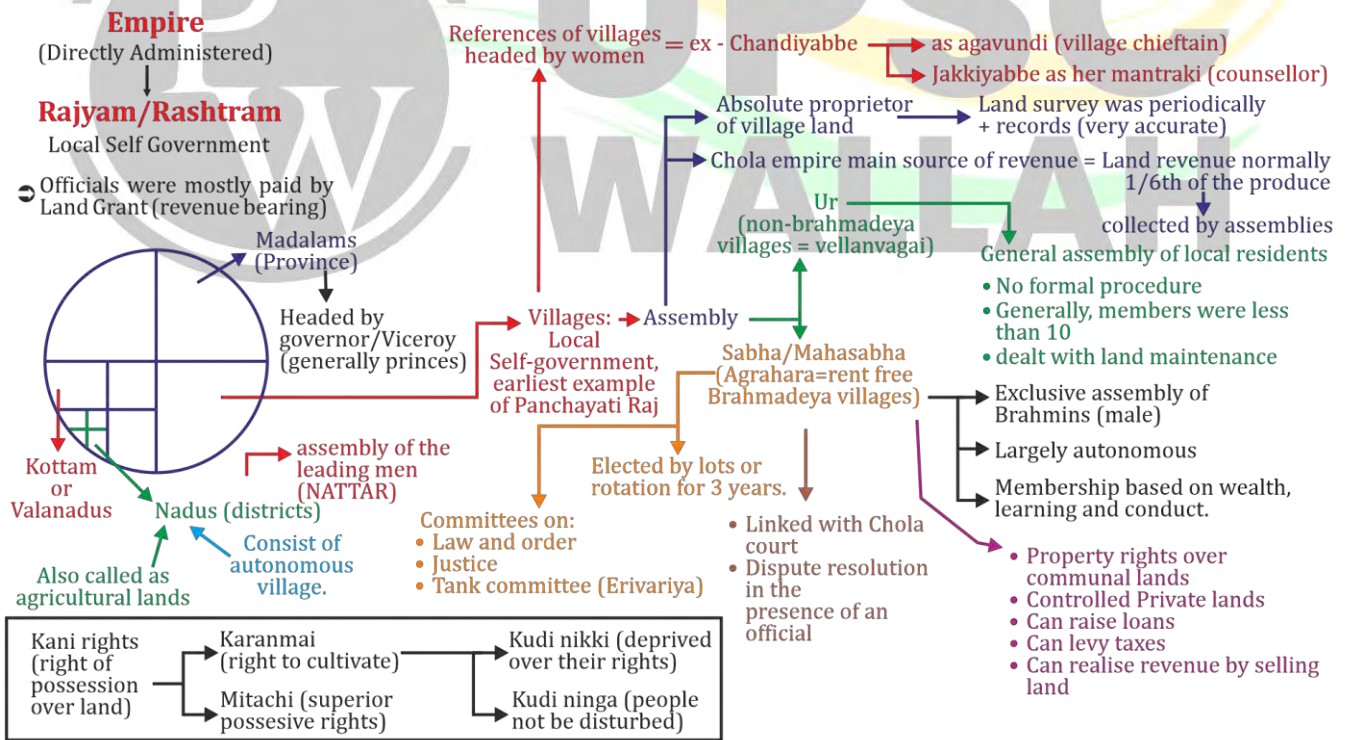
**Villages:**

- ❖ Local Self-government, earliest example of **Panchayati Raj**.
- ❖ References of villages headed by women. The example includes Chandiyabbe as agavundi (village chieftain) and Jakkiyabbe as her mantraki (counsellor).
- ❖ Absolute proprietor of village land.
- ❖ Land survey was periodically and records were kept in a very accurate manner.
- ❖ Chola empire main source of revenue. The land revenue was normally 1/6th of the produce → collected by assemblies.



**Assembly:**

- ❖ **Ur (Non-brahmadeya villages = vellanvagai):**
  - No formal procedure
  - Generally, members were less than 10
  - dealt with land maintenance
- ❖ **Sabha/Mahasabha (Agrahara = Rent free Brahmadeya villages):**
  - Exclusive assembly of Brahmins (male)
  - Largely autonomous
  - Membership based on wealth, learning and conduct.
  - Elected by lots or rotation for 3 years.
  - Property rights over communal lands
  - Controlled Private lands
  - They can raise loans and can levy taxes
  - They can realize revenue by selling land.
  - It was linked with Chola court. Dispute resolution in the presence of an officials
- ❖ **Committees on:**
  - Law and order
  - Justice
  - Tank committee (Erivariya)



### Chola Inscriptions detail qualifications for civic officials (In News - The Hindu, 4<sup>th</sup> Oct, 2021)

- ❖ The inscriptions of **Uthiramerur in Kancheepuram district** that dwells upon '**Kudavolai**' — a system to elect members to **annual committee ('variyaam')**, garden committee, tank committee and other committees for 30 wards — are well-known. But very little is known about the Thenneri inscriptions laying down qualifications for candidates to village administrative committees ('perumkuri sabai').
- ❖ The village is located between Walajah and Sunkuvarchathiram.
- ❖ **Kudavolai System** was used to select the village assemblies during the reign of imperial Cholas. In this system, the names of the nominated members for the village assemblies were written on palm leaves and put into a pot.
- ❖ A young boy or girl would take out 30 names each for 1 ward. They were divided into 6 **variyaams** to take up 6 different functions of the village administration. The committee members were called **variyaapperumakkal**.
- ❖ They usually met in the temple or under a tree and passed resolutions. The number of committees and ward members varied from village to village 9.

### Role of Merchants in Administration:

- ❖ Administration was also facilitated by Shrenis and Pugas (guilds).
- ❖ Autonomous organization of the people from the same craft.
- ❖ Nagarattar/Nagaram were the **Assembly of merchants** specific to different trades such as:
  - Saliya Nagaram = Textile
  - Satsum Nagaram = Textile
  - Shankarpaddi Nagaram = Ghee and oil
  - Paraga Nagaram = Seafares
  - Vaniya Nagaram = Oil
- ❖ Also referred to as **Samaya** and it was created via agreement, it is the **Code of Conduct** known as **Bananju dharma**.
- ❖ There were existence of powerful guild:
  - Ayyvole (The 500)
  - Manigramam
  - Trading caravans used to move with armed protection.
  - Guilds jointly fixed Cesses and tolls

## Role of Merchants in Administration

Administration was also facilitated by

**Shrenis and Pugas (guilds)**

Autonomous organisation of the people from same craft.

Nagarathar. Nagaram = Assembly of merchants

specific to different trade

**Saliya Nagaram = Textile**

**Satsum Nagaram = Textile**

**Shankarpaddi Nagaram = Ghee and oil**

**Paraga Nagaram = Seafares**

**Vaniya Nagaram = Oil**

Also referred to as **Samaya = created via agreement**

Code of = **Bananju conduct dharma**

Powerful guild

→ **Ayyarde (The 500)**

→ **Manigramam**

❖ **Trading caravans used to move with armed protection.**

❖ **Guilds jointly fixed Cesses and tolls**

## Society:

❖ **There was the existence of Various castes:**

- Paraiyar (untouchables) - Pathetic condition
- Vellalas (farming groups) - Shudra
- Idangai (artisans traders)
- Valangai (agricultural groups)
- Land holders economically powerful
- Not much discrimination
- **Trading Castes:**
  - Garvares – northern merchants migrated to south
  - Gaudas/Gavandas – originally cultivators
  - Heggades – originally revenue officials
  - Kayastha – Scribes
  - Karanas – Scribes

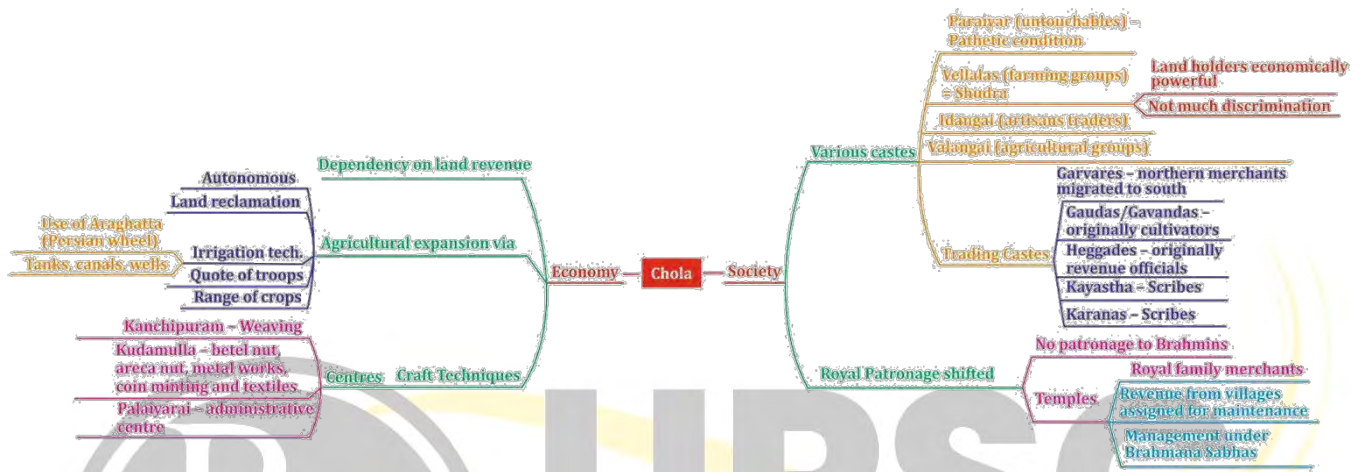
❖ **Royal patronage shifted** from Brahmins to temples:

- No patronage to Brahmins
- Royal family merchants contributed to the temples.
- Revenue from villages assigned for maintenance of temples.
- Management of financial resources were under Brahmana Sabhas.

## Economy:

- ❖ Dependency on land revenue increased.
- ❖ Agricultural expansion via:
  - Land reclamation

- Irrigation tech.
- Use of Araghatta (Persian wheel)
- Tanks, canals, wells
- Range of crops
- ❖ Craft Techniques evolved and the main centers of the craft were:
  - **Kanchipuram** – Weaving
  - **Kudamukku** – Betel nut, areca nut, metal works, coin minting and textiles
  - **Palaiyarai** – Administrative center



## Chola Art and Architecture:

### Temples:

- ❖ The temple architecture in the south reached its climax under the Cholas.
- ❖ Temple architecture in the **Dravida style** gained popularity, emphasizing the construction of storeys above the principal deity room (garbhagriha).
- ❖ The temple contained a mandapa, or pillared hall, with intricately carved pillars and a flat ceiling that was primarily used as an audience hall and a place for various events including devadasi ceremonial dances.
- ❖ In addition to being a site of prayer, the temple served as the hub of social and cultural activity.
- ❖ The temple had lofty and ornate gates known as **gopurams**.
- ❖ **Kailashnatha** at Kanchipuram, the **Brihadeswara** temple at Tanjore are some of the fine specimens of Dravida style of architecture.
- ❖ The magnificent temple of Hoysalesvara which is a fine example of Chalukyan style.

### Sculptures:

- ❖ The gigantic statue of **Gomateswar at Shravanabelagola** is evidence that the art of sculpture reached a high standard during this time.
- ❖ **Metal sculpture** from the Chola era is renowned for its technical skill and aesthetic sophistication.
- ❖ The dancing figure of Shiva called the **Nataraja** belongs to this period and is considered to be a bronze masterpiece.

### Literature:

- ❖ Along with Sanskrit, other languages used for everyday communication also saw a rise in literature at this time.
- ❖ Between the 6th and 9th centuries, a number of **Alvars (devotees of Vishnu) and Nayannars (devotees of Shiva)** flourished in the Tamilakam and produced a great volume of literature in Tamil and other local languages.
- ❖ Early in the 12th century, the writings of these saints were compiled into 11 volumes under the name Tirumurais and were considered as being so sacred that they were referred to as the Fifth Veda.
- ❖ The **Ramayana by Kamban** is another timeless work from this era.
- ❖ The Telugu **translation of the Mahabharata was begun by Nanniah**, a Chalukyan courtier, and finished by Tikkanna in the 13th century.
- ❖ The **Rajtarangini**, a vivid history of the Kashmiri monarchs written **by Kalhana**, and the Kathasaritasagara, a collection of stories, were significant Sanskrit works written around this time.
- ❖ The Gita Govinda, a piece of devotional literature composed on the theme of love between Radha and Krishna, by Jayadeva in Bengal under the Pala kings.

### Key Terminologies:

Key Term/Concepts:	Meaning:
Puravu-varitinaikkalam/ Shrikaranam	Revenue Department.
Eccoru	Villagers are required to provide food for representatives
Muttaiyal/Vetti/Kudimai	Villagers are required to provide labor services to state officials.
Kadamai	Land Revenue which was collected in kind.
Antarayam	Rural tax received in cash.
Dharmasana	Royal court of justice.
Ur-nattam or ur-irukkai	The landowning farmers' residential area.
Kammanacheri	Quarters where artisans lived.
Paraicheri	Quarters where agricultural laborers live.
Paraiyar	Socially and spatially segregated group of people who were considered ritually impure.
Vellalar	Cultivating groups.
Kaniyudaiyar	Land owning farmers.
Ulukudi	Tenant farmers.
Perudan	Highest officials.
Sirutaram	Lower officials
Kasu	Gold coins.



Gaudas	Cultivators.
Nettal	Compulsory labor.
Nagarams	Market and commercial centers.
Erivirappattanas	Protected mercantile towns.
Samanta	Refers to a king who has lost his kingdom but had it returned to him under the condition that he continue to <b>submit to the conquering king's rule and pay regular tribute</b> to him in kind or money. In emergency situations, he might also be asked to assist with military support.



PW Mobile APP: <https://physicswala.page.link/?type=contact-us&data=open>

For PW Website: <https://www.physicswallah.live/contact-us>

# DAILY CLASS NOTES

## MEDIEVAL HISTORY

Lecture - 06  
Age of Conflicts



## Age of Conflicts

### Kalyani/Western Chalukyas (10th-12th Century):

- ❖ **Tailapa II: 957-997 (Founder)**
- ❖ Satyashraya: 997-1008
- ❖ Vikramaditya V: 1008-1015
- ❖ Jayasimha II: 1015-1042
- ❖ Someshvara I: 1042-1068
- ❖ Someshvara II: 1068-1076
- ❖ **Vikramaditya VI: 1076-1126**
- ❖ Someshvara III: 1126-1138
- ❖ Jagadhekamalla: II 1138-1151
- ❖ Tailapa III: 1151-1164
- ❖ Jagadhekamalla III: 1163-1183
- ❖ Someshvara IV: 1184-1200



### Tailapa or Tailapa II (957-997):

- ❖ He was a feudatory of the Rashtrakutas ruled from the Bijapur region.
- ❖ He overthrew his overlords.
- ❖ **Kadambas** assisted him, as a result of which Banavasi and Goa were given as reward to him.
- ❖ He made **Manyakheta his capital in 973 CE** by taking advantage of the confusion generated in the Rashtrakuta ranks by the invasion of Manyakheta by the Paramaras of Malwa.

### Satyashraya (997 to 1008 CE):

- ❖ He was the **son of Tailapa** and succeeded him.
- ❖ He triumphed over the Rajaraja Chola monarch who had invaded his territory.
- ❖ He also took control of Rajaraja's territory.

### Jayasimha I (c. 1015-1042 CE):

- ❖ Rajendra Chola monarch attempted to invade during his reign.
- ❖ Jayasimha successfully resisted both of his attempt.

### Someshvara I (1042-1068):

- ❖ He was the **son of Jayasimha**.
- ❖ He relocated the **capital to Kalyani**.

- ❖ The Cholas had already plundered the capital previous to Rajadhiraja Chola's expulsion. He **killed Rajendra Chola**, breaking the line of succession, according to inscriptions.
- ❖ The dynasty soon gained prominence and expanded into an empire under his rule.
- ❖ He preferred **his second son Vikramaditya** to succeed him, but the latter chose the elder brother **Someshvara II (c. 1068-1076 CE)** instead.
- ❖ As his brother's army's general, Vikramaditya overthrew the Cholas, Kerala, and Ceylon.
- ❖ However, Somesvara II quickly developed undesirable habits and lost his brother's support.
- ❖ Vikramaditya thereafter began to autonomously rule the southern region of the kingdom.

### Vikramaditya VI (1076-1126 CE):

- ❖ The most notable king of this dynasty was **Tribhuvanamalla ("lord of the three worlds")**, also known as **Permadideva**.
- ❖ The Konkani king likewise submitted to Vikramaditya, who then marched off to confront Vira Rajendra Chola. The latter begged Vikramaditya for peace by offering the hand of his daughter.
- ❖ Vikramaditya installed his brother-in-law Adhi-Rajendra on the throne of the Cholas after Vira Rajendra passed away.
- ❖ Vikramaditya was **awarded control of Bellary** after being vanquished by the Eastern Chalukya monarch Jayasimha following the death of his brother-in-law.
- ❖ With the help of the Hoysalas, Vikramaditya was able to retake his position of authority, however, and became Vikramaditya VI in around 1076 CE. Around **1076 CE**, he inaugurated the **Chalukya Vikrama** period.
- ❖ Vikramaditya VI's reign saw the Western Chalukyas successfully contending with the Cholas. Between the Narmada River in the north and the Kaveri River in the south, they **controlled lands that covered the majority of the Deccan**. He had a number of queens who were skilled administrators.
- ❖ In the court of Vikramaditya VI, the two famous authors - **Bilhana and Vijaneswara** flourished. He served as Bilhana's **Vikramankadeva Charitra** hero. Bilhana, who had traveled from Kashmir to his court, and compared Ramarajya's dominion to his.
- ❖ The eminent lawyer in his court, **Vijnaneshwara**, wrote **Mitakshara**, a commentary on Yagnavalkya Smriti (on Hindu family law). "A King like Vikramarka is neither to be seen nor heard of," he wrote about the king.
- ❖ He was **Shaiva by faith**, Vikramaditya VI's reign saw a flurry of temple construction. The Mallikarjuna temple, the Mahadeva temple, the Kaitabheshvara temple, and the Kalleshvara temple are notable temples of that time.

### Decline:

#### Somesvara III (1126-1138):

- ❖ He was the next king, but a weak ruler.
- ❖ He had a preference for **literature** and was the author of **Abilashitartha Chintamani or Manasollasa**. He also wrote **Vikramankabhyudaya**.

- ❖ He gave Vishnuvardhana Hoysala the opportunity to seize freedom.
- ❖ The succeeding kings were also not particularly competent, and eventually the Chalukyan feudatories began to declare their independence.

### Somesvara IV (1184-1200):

- ❖ Under the direction of Somesvara IV, the son of Taila III, the Chalukyas were able to retake their realm. **Singhana**, the last Kalachuri ruler, recognized his suzerainty.
- ❖ He quickly won the support of the Pandyas of Uchchangi and the Kadambas of Goa and Banavasi.
- ❖ However, the Hoysalas under **Vira Ballala I** and the Yadavas of Devagiri attacked, which led to the collapse of the later Western Chalukya dynasty in around 1190 CE.

## Hoysala Empire (10<sup>th</sup> – 14<sup>th</sup> Century):

### History of Hoysala Empire:

- ❖ There is a famous Kannada folklore about a **young man- Sala**, who was instructed by his Jain guru Sudatta to kill a tiger he encountered near the temple of the Goddess Vasantika at Sosevur.
- ❖ The word "**strike**" literally translates to "hoy" in Old Kannada, hence the name "Hoy-sala." The figure representing Sala attacking the tiger became the **emblem of this royal family** and can be seen in almost every temple built by the Hoysalas.
- ❖ However, the story has a number of discrepancies and is considered folklore by many historians.
- ❖ Early inscriptions, dated 1078 and 1090, have implied that the Hoysalas descended from the Yadava by referring to the Yadava vamsa (clan) as Hoysala vamsa.

### Hoysala Empire:

- ❖ The Hoysala Empire was a **prominent South Indian empire** that ruled most of the modern-day state of **Karnataka** between the tenth and the fourteenth centuries. The capital of the empire initially resided at **Belur**, later moving to **Halebidu**.
- ❖ The Hoysala rulers originally lived as hill peoples of Malnad Karnataka, an elevated region in the Western Ghats range.
- ❖ In the twelfth century, taking advantage of the constant warfare between the then ruling **Western Chalukyas and Kalachuri kingdoms**, they annexed areas of present-day Karnataka and the fertile areas north of the Kaveri River delta in present day Tamil Nadu.
- ❖ By the thirteenth century, they governed most of present-day Karnataka, parts of Tamil Nadu and parts of western Andhra Pradesh in Deccan India.
- ❖ The Hoysala era emerged as an important period in the development of art, architecture, and religion in South India.



- ❖ The empire is remembered today primarily for its **temple architecture**. Over a hundred surviving temples exist across Karnataka, including the well-known Chennakesava Temple at Belur, the Hoysaleswara Temple at Halebidu, and the Kesava Temple at Somanathapura.
- ❖ The Hoysala rulers also patronized the fine arts. That patronage encouraged literature to flourish in **Kannada and Sanskrit**.

### Important Ruler of Hoysala Kingdom:

- ❖ Nripa Kama II: 1026-1047
- ❖ Vinayaditya: 1047-1098
- ❖ Ereyanga: 1098-1102
- ❖ Veera Ballala I: 1102-1108
- ❖ **Vishnuvardhana: 1108-1152**
- ❖ Narasimha I: 1152-1173
- ❖ Veera Ballala II: 1173-1220
- ❖ Vira Narasimha II: 1220-1235
- ❖ Vira Someshwara: 1235-1263
- ❖ Narasimha III: 1263-1292
- ❖ Veera Ballala III: 1292-1343
- ❖ Harihara Raya (Vijayanagara Empire): 1342-1355

### Political History of Hoysala Empire:

- ❖ They proudly used the title **Maleparolganda or "Lord of the Male (hills) chiefs" (Malepas)** in most of the inscriptions, in the Kannada language as their royal signature in their inscriptions.

### King Nripa Kama II (1026-1047):

- ❖ He was the **founder** of the Hoysala Kingdom.
- ❖ He built an alliance with the Western Ganga dynasty.
- ❖ He was succeeded by his **son Vinayaditya** who was followed by his son and their sons until Veera Ballala I who died childless and was succeeded by his younger brother Vishnuvardhana Raya.

### King Vishnuvardhana Raya (1108-1152):

- ❖ During his reign the Hoysala empire **achieved political prominence**.
- ❖ There were many military conquests, they won Gangawadi area from Cholas
- ❖ During his reign the influence of **Sri Ramanujacharya (vishishtadvaita)** spread in the Karnataka region and Srivaishnavism grew in popularity.

- ❖ Vishnuvardhana Raya himself was originally known as Bittideva and took on this name only after converting from Jainism to Srivaishnavism.
- ❖ A number of Vaishnava temples were built under his patronage.
- ❖ His queen, Shantala Devi remained a devout Jain, fostered a number of artists.

### Veera Ballala II (1173-1220):

- ❖ He was the grandson of Vishnuvardhana.
- ❖ He freed the Hoysalas from the Chalukya subordination and created an independent kingdom.
- ❖ Kannada folktale mentions that he founded Bangalore. It is also mentioned that he was succeeded by his **son Narasimha II**.
- ❖ Civil war broke out under Someshwara reign and the kingdom was partitioned into two parts which was ruled by his sons, **Narasimha III and Ramanatha**.

### Veera Ballala III (1292-1343):

- ❖ He was the **last ruler** of the Hoysala Dynasty.
- ❖ He got killed at the battle of Madurai in 1343.
- ❖ The territories merged with the areas administered by Harihara I in the Tungabhadra River region. (**Vijayanagara Empire**).

### Hoysala Administration:

- ❖ The kingdom was divided into provinces named **Nadu, Vishaya, Kampana and Desha**, listed in descending order of geographical size.
- ❖ Each province had a local governing body consisting of a **minister (Mahapradhana)** and a **treasurer (Bhandari)** that reported to the **ruler of that province (Dandanayaka)**.
- ❖ There were officials under this local ruler called **Heggaddes and Gavundas** who hired and supervised the local farmers and laborers recruited to till the land.
- ❖ Subordinate ruling clans such as **Alupas** continued to govern their respective territories while following the policies set by the empire.
- ❖ An elite and well-trained force of bodyguards known as **Garudas**, protected the members of the royal family at all times.
- ❖ These servants moved closely yet inconspicuously by the side of their master, their loyalty being so complete that they committed suicide after his death.
- ❖ **Hero stones (virgal)** erected in memory of these bodyguards are called Garuda pillars. The Garuda pillar at the Hoysaleswara temple in Halebidu was erected in honor of Kuvara Lakshma, a minister and bodyguard of King Veera Ballala II.

### Coinage:

- ❖ King Vishnuvardhana's coins had the legends "victor at Nolambavadi" (Nolambavadigonda), "victor at Talakad" (Talakadugonda), "chief of the Malepas" (Maleparolganda), "Brave of Malepa" (malapavira) in **Hoysala style Kannada script**. Their gold coin was called **Honnu or Gadyana** and weighed 62 grains of gold.
- ❖ Pana or Hana was a tenth of the Honnu, Haga was a fourth of the Pana and Visa was fourth of Haga. There were other coins called Bele and Kani.

### Religious Movements during Hoysala Period:

- ❖ During the rule of the Hoysalas, three important religious developments took place in present-day Karnataka inspired by three philosophers, **Basava, Madhvacharya and Ramanuja**.
- ❖ **Reform Movement by Basava:**
  - Basava flourished in the 12th century in Karnataka.
  - He was a Prime Minister to **King Bijjala** who ruled from 1157 to 1167 over Kalyana, a city of historic importance.
  - Basava strove hard to bring about **reformation in Hinduism** into which social evils had crept in.
  - He rejected gender or social discrimination, superstitions and rituals.
  - He introduced Ishtalinga, with an image of the **Shiva Linga (Lingayat)**.
- ❖ **His suggestions may be stated as follows:**
  - The Hindu Society should leave its smug satisfaction and become critical of itself.
  - Unity can only be achieved by **social and cultural rapprochement**.
  - A revolt against the exploiting forces is necessary for the preservation, protection and security of social democracy.
- ❖ The movement initiated by Basava through '**Anubhava Mantapa**' became the basis of religion of love and faith. It gave rise to a system of ethics and education at once simple and exalted.

### Significance of the Religious Reforms:

- ❖ The effect of these religious developments on **culture, literature, poetry and architecture** in South India was profound.
- ❖ Important works of **literature and poetry** based on the teachings of these philosophers were written during the coming centuries.
- ❖ The **Saluva, Tuluva and Aravidu dynasties of Vijayanagar empire** were followers of Vaishnavism and a Vaishnava temple with an image of Ramanuja exists in the Vitthalapura area of Vijayanagara.
- ❖ Scholars in the later Kingdom of Mysore wrote Vaishnavite works upholding the teachings of Ramanuja. King Vishnuvardhana built many temples after his **conversion from Jainism to Vaishnavism**.
- ❖ The later saints of **Madhvacharya's order** were Jayatirtha, Vyasatirtha, Vyasatirtha, Sripadaraja, Vadiraja Tirtha.

- ❖ The devotees (dasa) such as Vijaya Dasa, Gopaladasa and others and others from the Karnataka region spread his teachings far and wide.
- ❖ His teachings inspired later philosophers like **Vallabha in Gujarat** and **Chaitanya Mahaprabhu in Bengal**.
- ❖ Another wave of devotion (bhakti) in the 17<sup>th</sup> century-18th century found inspiration in his teachings.

### Assignment/Self Study:

#### Hoysala Architecture:

- ❖ Hoysala architecture refers to the distinctive building style developed under the rule of the Hoysala Empire in the region known today as Karnataka between the eleventh and fourteenth centuries.
- ❖ Hoysala architecture is noted for its **temple architectural style**.
- ❖ The extensive temple building activity of the Hoysala Empire arose from the social, cultural and political events of the period.
- ❖ Hoysala influence was at its peak in the 13th century, when it dominated the **Southern Deccan Plateau region**. Large and small temples built during this era remain as examples of the Hoysala architectural style, including the Chennakesava Temple at Belur, the Hoysaleswara Temple at Halebidu, and the Kesava Temple at Somanathapura.
- ❖ Other examples of Hoysala craftsmanship are the temples at Belavadi, Amruthapura, Hosaholalu, Mosale, Arasikere, Basaralu, Kikkeri and Nuggehalli.
- ❖ Hoysala architectural style was influenced by **both -Indo-Aryan and Southern Indian style** of architecture. However, Indo-Aryan influence was negligible while the impact of Southern Indian style is more distinct.
- ❖ Hoysala architecture is classified as part of the **Karnata Dravida tradition**, a trend within Dravidian architecture in the Deccan that is distinct from the Tamil style of further south. Other terms for the tradition are Vesara, and Chalukya architecture, divided into early Badami Chalukya architecture and the Western Chalukya architecture which immediately preceded the Hoysalas.
- ❖ The stylistic transformation of the Karnata temple building tradition reflected religious trends popularized by the Vaishnava and Virashaiva philosophers as well as the growing military prowess of the Hoysala kings who desired to surpass their Western Chalukya overlords in artistic achievement.
- ❖ More than hundred temples have survived in present-day Karnataka state, mostly in the Malnad (hill) districts, the native home of the Hoysala kings.

#### Deities at Hoysala Temples:

- ❖ The Hoysalas usually dedicated their temples to **Lord Shiva or to Lord Vishnu** but they also occasionally chose a different deity.
- ❖ Hoysalas maintained religious harmony by dedicating equal buildings to Shiva and Vishnu each.

- ❖ Most of those temples have secular features with broad themes depicted in their sculptures. This striking feature appears in the famous **Chennakeshava temple at Belur dedicated to Vishnu** and in the **Hoysaleswara temple at Halebidu dedicated to Shiva**.
- ❖ The names of Shiva temples can end with the suffix ‘eshwara’ meaning ‘Lord of’. The name Hoysaleswara for instance means Lord of Hoysala.
- ❖ The temple was also named after a devotee who commissioned the construction of the temple, for example: the **Bucesvara temple** at Koravangala named after a **devotee Buci**.

### Features of Hoysala Temple Architecture:

- ❖ A cuboid cell, the **garbha griha (sanctum sanctorum)** houses a centrally placed **murti (enshrined icon) on a pitha (pedestal)**.
- ❖ The **shikhara (superstructure)**, rises over the garbha griha and together with the sanctum they form the **vimana (or mulaprasada)** of a temple.
- ❖ A ribbed stone, amalaka, is placed atop the shikhara with a kalash at its finial.
- ❖ An intermediate **antarala (vestibule)** joins the **garbha griha** to an expansive pillared mandapa (porch) in front, chiefly facing east (or north). The temple may be approached via entrances with gigantic gopurams (ornate entrance towers) towering over each doorway.
- ❖ In the **prakaram (temple courtyard)** several minor shrines and outbuildings often abound.
- ❖ The vimanas are either stellate, semi-stellate or orthogonal in plan. The intricately carved banded plinths, a distinguishing characteristic of the Hoysala temples, comprise a series of horizontal courses that run as rectangular strips with narrow recesses between them.
- ❖ Also, the temples themselves are sometimes built on a raised platform or jagati which is used for the purpose of a **pradakshinapatha (circumambulation)**.

### Important Hoysala Temples:

#### Chennakesava Temple Complex (Belur):

- ❖ This is an ekakuta, i.e., a temple with one shrine.
- ❖ The garbha griha houses an enshrined **image of Krishna**. The whole temple, built on a grand scale, follows the general pattern of Hoysala architecture.
- ❖ It has an east-west orientation set on a **jagati**. The hall has 60 bays and a shrine measuring 10 m on either side.
- ❖ Under the eave cornice of mandapa there are 38 most wonderfully sculpted figures called salabhanjika or madanika (bracket figures).
- ❖ Their placements and inscriptions reveal these to be later additions.
- ❖ To the southern end of this main temple lies Kappchennigaraya, consecrated by the queen of Vishnuvardhan, Shantala, the same year.

- ❖ Beside the main shrine there is a subshrine housing the image of Venugopal. This temple follows the stellate plan but is less ornamental.

### Viranarayan Temple:

- ❖ The same compound (of Chennakesava Temple Complex) houses another temple named **Viranarayan** to the west of Chennakesava. It is an ekakuta, **Vaishnava temple**, probably erected at a later date of the 12th century CE.
- ❖ It is built following the basic pattern of a garbha griha and an antarala opening up to the mandapa, all built on jagati.
- ❖ Interestingly, this temple is relatively austere, lacking in the narrative friezes that are abundant in Chennakesava temple.
- ❖ A **relatively minor structure**, the **Saumyanayaka temple** is situated to the southwest of the main temple.
- ❖ Its damaged shikhara was repaired in 1387 CE by a minister under the **Vijayanagara King Harihara II**.

### Hoysaleshwara and Shantaleshwara (Halebidu):

- ❖ In this **dvikuta (temple with two shrines) Shaiva temple**, the two garbhagriha (sanctum sanctorum) are found connected by a mandapa (porch) forming a large open hall.
- ❖ One shrine is dedicated to King Vishnuvardhan and the other to his Queen Shantala, therefore it is called **Shantaleshwara**.
- ❖ Built in 1121 CE, it was principally constructed under the patronage of wealthy local merchants and aristocrats.
- ❖ There are four entrances to the twin temple with miniature vimanas flanking them on either side. Two adjunct shrines, one for Nandi (bull) and another for Surya (sun) are also built on the same jagati.
- ❖ The exquisite friezes on temple walls eloquently render stories from Ramayana, Mahabharata and Bhagavata Purana.
- ❖ These reliefs preserve one of the finest achievements of Hoysala craftsmen and constitute an exhaustive lesson in the symbology of Hindu art.

### Kedareshwara (Halebidu):

- ❖ This **Shaiva trikuta (temple with three shrines) temple** is located only a couple of kilometers to the south of Hoysaleshwara.
- ❖ It was built under the patronage of King Veer Ballala II and Queen **Ketala Devi**.
- ❖ Designed following a stellate plan, the central shrine is connected to the other two laterally positioned shrines by a common mandapa.
- ❖ The sculptural details illustrate beautifully executed Bhairava, **Vishnu** as Bharadwaj and Kaliyadamana among others.



Hoysaleswara Temple



Kedareswara Temple

### Assignment/Self-study:

#### Hoysala Sculpture:

- ❖ Hoysala artists are notable for their sculptural detail, whether in the depiction of the Hindu epics, Yali (mythical creature), deities, Kirthimukha (Gargoyle), eroticism or aspects of daily life.
- ❖ Their medium, the **soft chlorite schist**, enabled a virtuoso carving style. Their workmanship shows an attention paid to precise detail. Every aspect down to a fingernail or toenail has been created perfectly.



#### Features of Hoysala Sculptural Art:

- ❖ Wall panels present general life themes such as the act of reining horses, the type of stirrup used, the depiction of dancers, musicians, instrumentalists, rows of animals such as lions and elephants (with each animal unique).
- ❖ The **Hoysaleswara temple at Halebidu** presents perhaps the best depiction of the epics **Ramayana and Mahabharata in temple art**.
- ❖ The Hoysala artist handled erotica with discretion.
- ❖ They avoided exhibitionism, carving erotic themes into recesses and niches, generally miniature in form making them inconspicuous.

- ❖ Those erotic representations are associated with the **Shakta practice**. The temple doorway displays heavily engraved ornamentation called **Makaratorana (makara or imaginary beast)** and each side of the doorway exhibits sculptured **Salabanjika (maidens)**.
- ❖ Apart from those sculptures, entire sequences from the Hindu epics have been sculptured in a clockwise direction starting at the main entrance.
- ❖ The right-to-left sequence follows the same direction taken by the devotees in their ritual circumambulation as they wind inward toward the inner sanctum.
- ❖ **Depictions from mythology:** Such as the epic hero Arjuna shooting fish, the elephant-headed God Ganesha, the Sun God Surya, the weather and war god Indra, and Brahma with Sarasvati commonly appear.
- ❖ Also, **Durga frequently appears in the temples**, with several arms holding weapons given to her by other Gods, in the act of killing a water buffalo (a demon in a buffalo's form) and **Harihara (a fusion Shiva and Vishnu)** holding a conch, wheel and trident.
- ❖ The artisan signed many of those friezes, the first known instance of signed art work in India.



### Different Kind of Hoysala Sculpture Art:

- ❖ **Salabhanjika**, a common form of Hoysala sculpture, represents an old Indian tradition going back to Buddhist sculpture. Sala refers to the Sala tree and **bhanjika** the chaste maiden.
- ❖ **Madanika** figures constitute decorative objects put at an angle on the outer walls of the temple near the roof so worshippers who circumambulate the temple could view them.
- ❖ They served the purpose of bracket figures to pillars inside the mantapa of Hoysala temples. Artists sculpted those madanika as seemingly engaged in artistic skills such as music (holding musical instruments) and dance.
- ❖ **Kirthimukhas** (demon faces) adorn the towers of vimana in some temples. Sometimes the artists left behind their signatures on the sculpture they created.
- ❖ The **sthamba buttalikas** refer to pillar images that show traces of Chola art in the Chalukyan touches. Some of the artists working for the Hoysalas may have been from Chola country, a result of the expansion of the empire into Tamil speaking regions of Southern India.
- ❖ The **image of mohini** on one of the pillars in the mantapa (closed hall) of the Chennakeshava temple represents a fine example of Chola art.

## The Gangas/Chodagangas of Orissa 11th-15th c CE:

- ❖ It was the **Hindus Dynasty** in the eastern part of India and the dynasty also known as the **Eastern Ganga**.
- ❖ It included all of the present-day state of Odisha as well as portions of West Bengal, Andhra Pradesh, Chhattisgarh.
- ❖ Its **capital was Kalinganagara**, and contemporary Srimukhalingam in Andhra Pradesh's Srikakulam District, which borders Odisha.
- ❖ They constructed **Konark's Sun Temple**, a UNESCO World Heritage site.
- ❖ King Anantavarman Chodaganga claimed descent from both the Chola and Western Ganga dynasties
- ❖ Matrilineal ties to both the Eastern Chalukyas and the Chola empire, the Eastern Ganga monarchs brought **south Indian culture to Odisha** and it clearly reflected in **their coinage**.
- ❖ Through trade and commerce, this kingdom developed, **wealth was primarily used to build temples**.
- ❖ Also, it is important to remember that the **Lingaraja temple** in Bhubaneswar was constructed by the Kesaris who ruled Orissa before the Gangas.



### Chodaganga Anantavarman (c.1076-1150 CE):

- ❖ He was likely the first monarch to preside over all three divisions of Kalinga when he assumed the title of **Trikalingadhipathi** in 1076 CE,
  - Kalinga proper (South),
  - Utkal (North)
  - Kosal (West)
- ❖ He was a supporter of literature and art as well as a devout person.
- ❖ He built the famous **Jagannath Temple** of Puri.



Jagannath Temple, Puri, Odisha.

### Narsimhadeva (c.1238-1264 CE):

- ❖ He was another significant ruler from this dynasty, he built **Konark's Sun Temple**, a UNESCO World Heritage site.
- ❖ Under the leadership of King Bhanudeva IV in the early 15th century, the dynasty's rule came to an end (c.1414-34 CE).

- ❖ The Chalukyas of Vengi seized power in the area after the early Eastern Gangas' rule ended.



Sun Temple, Konark, Odisha.

### The Senas of Bengal 1091-1225 CE:

- ❖ A **Hindu dynasty** (in contrast to the Buddhist Palas) controlled Bengal for just over a century, from roughly 1097 to 1225 CE. Previously, the Pala dynasty ruled over both Bihar and Bengal.
- ❖ Senas were identified as **Brahma Kshatriyas**.
- ❖ **Deopara Inscription** mentions about:
  - **Sena Dynasty** kings were from Karnataka.
  - **Samanta Sen**, one of the founding fathers in the South.
  - **Hemanta Sen**, Samanta Sen's successor and the first member of the family to receive royal titles in the family records, took the Palas' authority and proclaimed himself king sometime before 1095 CE.
  - **Vijay Sena**, his successor, contributed to establishing the dynasty.



### Vijaya Sena (1095-1158 CE):

- ❖ The dynasty's founder, who enjoyed an extraordinarily long reign of more than 60 years, bringing wealth and peace to Bengal and leaving a lasting influence on its people.
- ❖ During **Mahipala II's rule**, it is thought that he took advantage of the **Samantachakra** uprising in the Varendra region, solidifying his power in western Bengal over time. At some point during **Madanapala's rule**, he moved into an independent role.
- ❖ He overcame Vanga and defeated Bhojavarman.
- ❖ There were two Vijaya Sena capitals:
  - Vikrampur
  - Vijaypura
- ❖ In honour of Vijay Sena, the renowned **poet Sriharsha** wrote the **Vijay Prasasti (Eulogy of Vijay)**.
- ❖ The court poet **Umapati Dhara** wrote the **Deopara Prashasti**, a stone inscription that praises the Sena kings, especially Vijaya Sen. Maharajadhiraja is how he is referred to in the **Barrackpore Copper-Plate Inscription**.

### Ballal Sena (c.1158-1179 CE):

- ❖ The Sena monarch who established the kingdom and is well known. He took control of Mithila and some of eastern Bihar.
- ❖ The five provinces of Banga, Barendra, Rar, Bagri (perhaps a section of lower Bengal), and Mithila made up Ballal Sena's dominion, according to a Bengali tradition. Additionally, he designated **Nabadwip the capital**.
- ❖ Ballal Sena is credited with bringing back orthodox Hindu rituals in Bengal, particularly with the establishment of the **regressive Kulinism tradition**, but these claims lack any historical veracity.
- ❖ The fact that he wed Ramadevi, a princess of the Western Chalukya Empire, shows that the Sena kings kept close social ties to south India.
- ❖ He wrote the **Danasagara and Adbhutsagara**.

### Lakshamana Sena (c.1178-1207 CE):

- ❖ Lakshmana Sena, who extended the Sena Empire to Assam, Odisha, Bihar, and likely Varanasi as well, brought the Sena dynasty's military prowess to a head. He also beat the Gahadavalas dynasty's Jayachandra.
- ❖ He is referred to as a renowned military leader and a patron of scholarship in **Seven Copper-Plate Inscriptions** that date to his reign. These inscriptions recount his triumphs over the kings of Gaur, Kamrupa, Kalinga, and Kashi.
- ❖ Additionally, he is reported to have built pillars in Puri, Benares, and Allahabad to honor his military accomplishments.
- ❖ He was the first Bengali king to assert his dominance outside of Benaras. His dominance in the Gaya region is confirmed by some inscriptions that were discovered there shortly after his reign.
- ❖ He inherited the title of **Ariraja-Madana Sankara** upon his ascension.

- ❖ He adopted the **appellation Paramvaishnava** in addition to the traditional title of Gaureswara, replacing the old epithet of Paramaeshwara used by both Vijay Sena and Ballal Sena.
- ❖ This shows that, in contrast to his father and grandparents, who were regarded as **Shaivas**, Lakshmana Sena was a devoted **Vaishnav**.
- ❖ The fact that every official pronouncement made afterward began with an invocation to Narayana also lends credibility to this.
- ❖ Among other prominent poets, **Jayadeva (the well-known Vaishanava poet of Bengal and the author of Geet Govinda)**, Dhoyi, and Umapati Dhar were present at Lakshmana Sena's court.
- ❖ **Halayudha, his prime minister**, was a talented poet in his own right. Being a man of letters, the king finished the **work Adbhutsagara** that his father had started, as per tradition.
- ❖ The Sena kingdom began to fall apart in the final years of his rule. Sena suzerainty was rejected by Kamrupa, Orissa, and South Bengal. Additionally, there were invasions by Central Asian invaders of Turkish descent who practiced Islam.
- ❖ One of Muhammad Ghori's generals, Muhammad Bin Bakhtiyar Khalji, conquered Nabadwip around the start of the 13th century (about 1203-1204 CE), then invaded Bengal and Bihar and annexed them to the Islamic kingdom.
- ❖ Although Sena continued to hold control of eastern Bengal, he took the north-west. The Deva dynasty, however, overthrew the Senas by the middle of the 13th century.

### The Chedis/Kalachuris of Tripuri:

- ❖ The Kalachuri dynasty ruled the **state of Chedi**, which was located between the Narmada and Godavari rivers.
- ❖ The Kalachuris of Chedi, often referred to as the Kalachuris of Tripuri, were once under the Pratiharas' control, much like the Chandellas, but they began to assert their independence in the middle of the 10th century CE.
- ❖ Their capital was at Tripuri, close to the present-day Jabalpur, MP, and they dominated the historical Chedi region (**also known as Dahala-mandala**).
- ❖ The Chandellas of Jejakabhukti were a frequent adversary of the Tripuri Kalachuris, with whom they subsequently formed marriage relationships.
- ❖ Additionally, they had to protect their land against the Palas and a coalition of the Cholas, Pallavas, and Pandyas.

### Important Rulers of Chedi/Kalchuri Dynasty:

- ❖ Vamaraja-deva (675-700 CE)
- ❖ Shankaragana I (750-775 CE)
- ❖ Lakshmana-rajya I (825-850 CE)
  - Voppa-rajya, described as Kokalla's predecessor in the Gyaraspur inscription.
- ❖ **Kokalla I (850-890 CE):** His younger son established the Ratnapura Kalachuri branch
- ❖ Shankaragana II (890-910 CE), alias Mugdhatunga

- ❖ Balaharsha (910-915 CE)
- ❖ Yuvaraja-deva I (915-945 CE)
- ❖ Lakshmana-raja II (945-970 CE)
- ❖ Shankaragana III (970-80 CE)
- ❖ Yuvaraja-deva II (980-990 CE)
- ❖ Kekalla II (990-1015 CE)
- ❖ Gangeya-deva (1015-1041 CE)
- ❖ Lakshmi-karna (1041-1073 CE), alias Karna
- ❖ Yashah-karna (1073-1123 CE)
- ❖ Gaya-karna (1123-1153 CE)
- ❖ Nara-simha (1153-1163 CE)
- ❖ Jaya-simha (1163-1188 CE)
- ❖ Vijaya-simha (1188-1210 CE)
- ❖ Trailokya-malla (c. 1210- at least 1212 CE)



### Kokkala I (845-885 CE):

- ❖ He was the **founder** of the dynasty and participated in **numerous military operations**. Invading the Northern Konkan, he supported Krishna II of the Rashtrakuta kingdom in his fight against the Eastern Chalukyas and the Pratiharas.
- ❖ His eldest son is thought to have ascended to the throne following his death, while the other sons were named kings of various mandalas or provinces.
- ❖ He **married a Chandella princess**. This caused the kingdom to split up because one of these people's descendants established a new kingdom in South Kosala with Tummana as its capital.



### Yuvaraja (c. 915-945 CE):

- ❖ An additional significant ruler who expelled and routed the Rashtrakuta army.
- ❖ The **well-known poet Rajasekara** presented his play **Vidda Salabhanjika** to commemorate this significant triumph.
- ❖ Yuvaraja is credited in the Kalachuri inscription with successful raids into Kashmir and the Himalayan region.

### Lakshmanaraja (945-970 CE):

- ❖ He was also a great conqueror, as evidenced by the fact that he not only invaded and subdued Vangala (south Bengal) and the Somavamsi king of South Kosala, but he also invaded and subdued Lata in the west, which was at the time ruled by a feudatory of the Rashtrakutas, and subdued the king of Gurjara, most likely Mularaja.

### Gangeya-deva (c.1019-40 CE):

- ❖ One of the most significant kings of the Kalachuri dynasty who, thanks to his military prowess, elevated the Chedis to the status of one of India's most powerful political forces at the time.
- ❖ He adopted the prestigious title of **Trikalingadhipati** as a symbol of his significant win (**the Lord of Trikalanga**).
- ❖ He adopted the name Vikramaditya as well. According to some historians, **Sultan Mahmud's catastrophic attacks**, which impacted the majority of the other great kingdoms to its north and north-west, did not damage his kingdom, which is thought to have played a significant role in his success.
- ❖ He produced coins in a variety of sizes, weights, and metals, including copper, silver, base gold, silver gold, and silvery copper (billon).
- ❖ During his rule, the four-armed Lakshmi statue was created. She is seated cross-legged on a lotus, holding a lotus in her top two hands, and has the inscription "**Shrimad- Gangeyadeva**" written in Nagari script on the back.



### Lakshmi-Karna (c.1041-73 CE):

- ❖ He was also referred to as the **Karna**, and like his father, he was a legendary general. He outperformed his father in the south as well as the north-west, and he carried the banner of his triumph up the eastern coast all the way to Kanchi.
- ❖ He is credited with overthrowing a number of southern dynasties, including Someshvara I, the Pallavas, Kungas, Muralas, and Pandyas (South).

### Yashkarna (c.1073-1125 CE):

- ❖ His reign was distinguished by a series of invasions, including raids by the Deccan Chalukyas and the Paramaras, who ravaged his capital and set up camp on the Narmada for a while.

- ❖ The Chandellas also succeeded in defeating him. The **Kalachuris were eventually made weaker** by all these defeats.

### Vijayasimha (1177-1211 CE):

- ❖ When **Chandella ruler Trailokyavarman** nearly completely overthrew the Kalachuri kingdom, the final king of the dynasty included Baghelkhand and Dahala Mandala.
- ❖ The Chedi lands were also lost to emerging dynasties like the Vaghela Rajputs, the Yadavas of Devagiri, and the Ganpatis of Warangal during the start of the 12th century CE.

### Yadavas of Devagiri:

- ❖ **Seunachadra (880 – 900)**: He secured feudatory status from Rashtrakutas.
- ❖ **Bhillama V (1187-1191)**: He laid the foundation by overthrowing Kalyani Chalukyas supremacy.
- ❖ **Simhana (1210-1246)**: He was the most powerful ruler of this dynasty.
  - **Sarangdeva composed Sangitaratnakara**, an important work on music in his court.
- ❖ **Ramchandra (1271-1308)**: During his reign, Allauddin Khalji attacked Devagiri and compelled him to sue for peace.



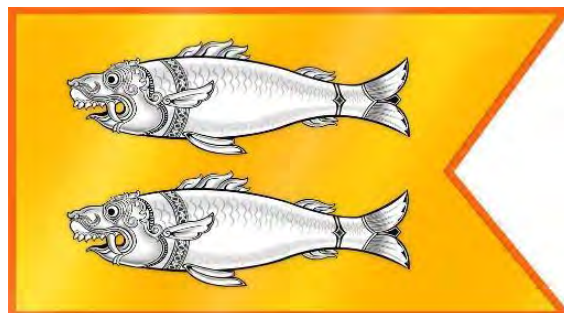
### Kakatiyas of Warangal:

- ❖ **Beta I**: He was the earliest known feudatory of Western Chalukyas.
- ❖ **Prola II**: He threw off the overlordship of Chalukyas.
- ❖ **Rudradeva (1175-1244)**: He built a **thousand pillar temple** at Hanumakonda and also founded Orugallu (Warangal).
- ❖ **Ganapatideva**: He completed the city of Warangal land and shifted the capital to it.
- ❖ **Rudramadevi (1262-1289)**: She was the daughter of Ganapatideva, the greatest ruler.
- ❖ **Prataparudra (1289-1323)**: He was the last ruler/repeated Muslim invasion/first by Khiljis and later by Tughlaq.



## Pandyan Dynasty:

- ❖ The Pandyan dynasty was an **ancient Tamil dynasty**, one of the three Tamil dynasties, the other two being the Chola and the Chera.
- ❖ The Early Pandyans ruled parts of Southern India from at least 4th century BCE.
- ❖ Pandyan rule ended in the first half of the 16th century CE. They initially ruled their country Pandya Nadu from Korkai, a seaport on the southernmost tip of the Indian Peninsula, and in later times moved to Madurai.
- ❖ Pandyas were experts in **water management, agriculture and fisheries** and they were eminent sailors and sea traders too. Pandyan was well known since ancient times, with contacts, even diplomatic, reaching the Roman Empire.
- ❖ The Pandya kings were called either **Jatavarman or Maravarman**. They were Jains in their early ages but **later became Shaivaites**.
- ❖ During their history, the Pandyas were repeatedly in conflict with the Pallavas, Cholas, Hoysalas and finally the Muslim invaders from the Delhi Sultanate.
- ❖ The **Islamic invasion** led to the end of Pandyan supremacy in South India and in 1323, **the Jaffna Kingdom of Sri Lanka** declared its independence from the crumbling Pandyan Empire.



## Under Reign of Imperial Cholas:

- ❖ After Vijayalaya Chola **conquered Thanjavur by defeating the Muttarayar** chieftains who were part of Pandya family tree around 850, the Pandyas went into a period of decline.
- ❖ They were constantly harassing their Chola overlords by occupying their territories.
- ❖ Parantaka I invaded the Pandya territories and **defeated Rajasimha III**.
- ❖ However, the Pandyas did not wholly submit to the Cholas despite loss of power, territory and prestige.
- ❖ They tried to forge various alliances with the Cheras and the Kings of Lanka and tried to engage the Cholas in war to free themselves from Chola supremacy.
- ❖ But right from the times of Parantaka I to the early 12th century up to the times of **Kulottunga Chola I** the Pandyas could not overpower the Cholas who right from 880-1215 remained the most powerful empire spread over South India, Deccan and the Eastern and Western Coast of India during this period.

## Later Pandyas:

- ❖ The 13th century is the greatest period in the history of the Pandyan Empire. This period saw the rise of **seven prime Lord Emperors (Ellarkku Nayanar Lord of All) of Pandyan**, who ruled the kingdom alongside Pandyan princes.
- ❖ The foundation by **Maravarman Sundara Pandyan** took place early in the 13th century.
- ❖ The power of the Later Pandyas reached its zenith under **Jatavarman Sundara Pandyan** in the middle of the 13th century or at 1251 AD.

Assignment/Self-study:	
Pandya kings (13 <sup>th</sup> -14 <sup>th</sup> Centuries CE)	
Pandya ruler	Reign
Maravarman Sundara I	1216-1238 CE
Sundaravarman Kulasekara II	1238-1240 CE
Maravarman Sundara II	1238-1251 CE
Jatavarman Sundara I	1251-1268 CE
Maravarman Kulasekara I	1268-1310 CE
Sundara Pandya IV	1309-1327 CE
Vira Pandya IV	1309-1345 CE

### Decline of Pandyan Empire:

- ❖ Later Pandyans had to face expeditions from the:
  - **1314:** Khalji Sultanate led by Khusro Khan (later Sultan Nasir-ud-din).
  - **1323:** Muhammad bin Tughluq under Sultan Ghiyath al-Din Tughluq.
- ❖ The last **attack of Muhammad bin Tughlaq** shattered the Pandyan empire beyond revival.
- ❖ While the previous invasions were content with plunder, Ulugh Khan annexed the former Pandyan dominions to the Delhi Sultanate as the province of Malabar.
- ❖ Afterwards, it fragmented among **Hoysala rulers and Vijayanagar rulers.**
- ❖ Nayaka chieftains were appointed by Vijayanagar rulers to govern the region.



PW Mobile APP: <https://physicswala.page.link/?type=contact-us&data=open>

For PW Website: <https://www.physicswallah.live/contact-us>

# **DAILY CLASS NOTES**

---

## **MEDIEVAL HISTORY**

**Lecture - 07**

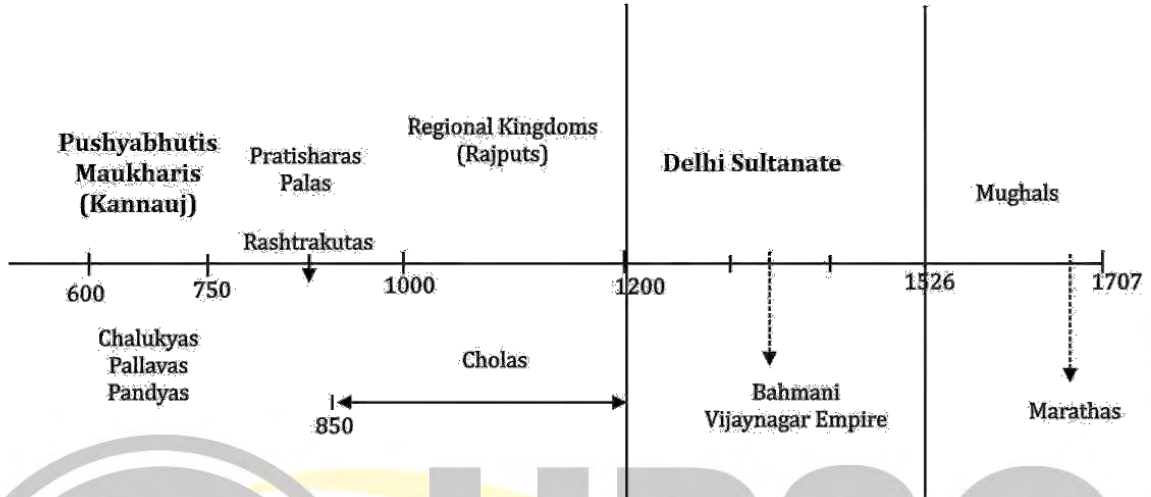
**Age of Conflicts - II  
(1000-1200 CE)**



## Age of Conflicts – II (1000-1200 AD)

### Indian History after Guptas (600-1200):

- ❖ Though India was politically divided during these years, this era added new and rich cultural elements in the fields of art, literature and language.
- ❖ In fact, some of the best specimens of **temple architecture and Indian literature** belong to this period.



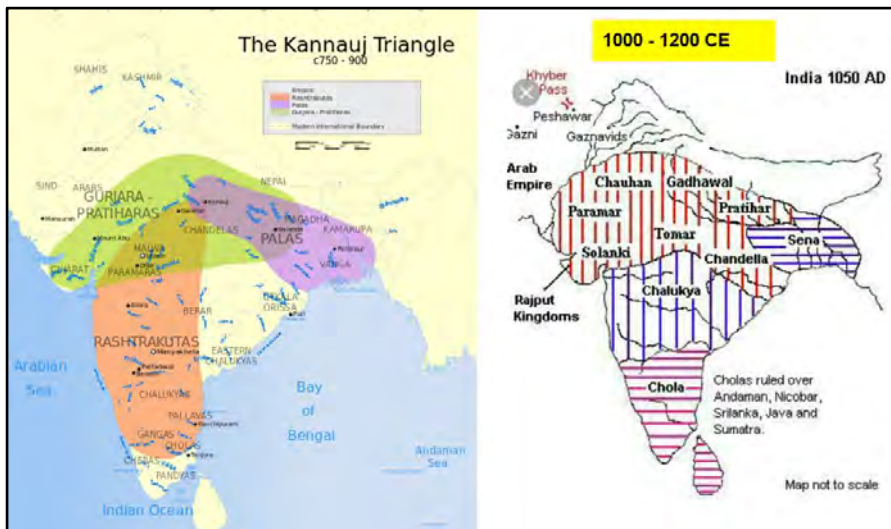
### Rise of Rajputs:

- ❖ Rajput refers to **lineage-based clans** and dominated a compact territory.
- ❖ They were attached to **land, family and honor**, which were considered important by the Rajput clans.
- ❖ The sense of brotherhood and egalitarianism prevailed among the Rajputs.
- ❖ They considered war as a sport that led to continuous warfare among them over struggle for **land and cattle**.
- ❖ The majority of the Rajput kings were **devout Hindus**, while several of them also supported Jainism.
- ❖ Many of the Rajputs trace their origin from the Kshatriyas which were mentioned in the Mahabharata.
- ❖ Some others trace '**Agnikula**' as their origin, meaning they trace their origin from the Sacrificial fire which is said to have been held at Mt. Abu by the sage Vasishta.

### ❖ The four Agnikula Rajput clans were:

- Pratiharas
- Chahamanas/Chauhans of Ajmer
- Chandellas of Bundelkhand
- Paramaras of Malwa

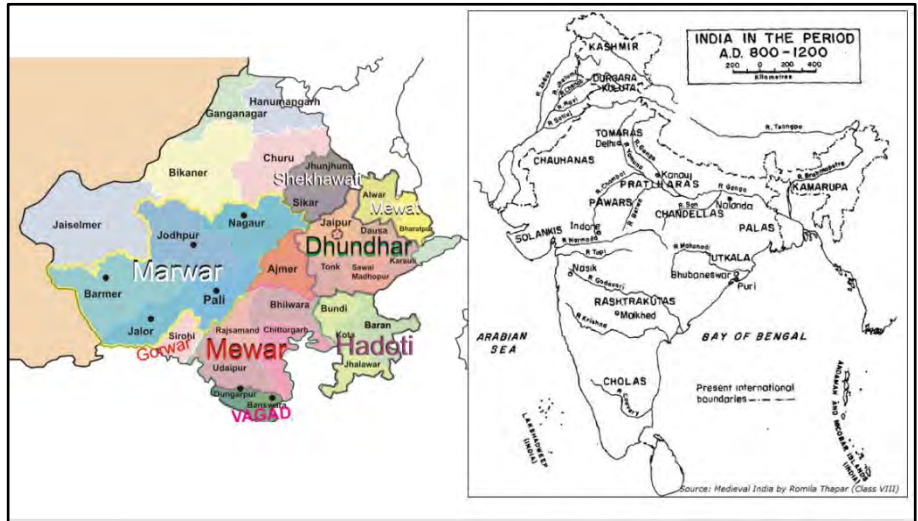
❖ Some scholars think that few of these clans descended from



Huns, Scythians and Kushans who settled in India after Harsha and while few of others belong to the Indigenous tribe.

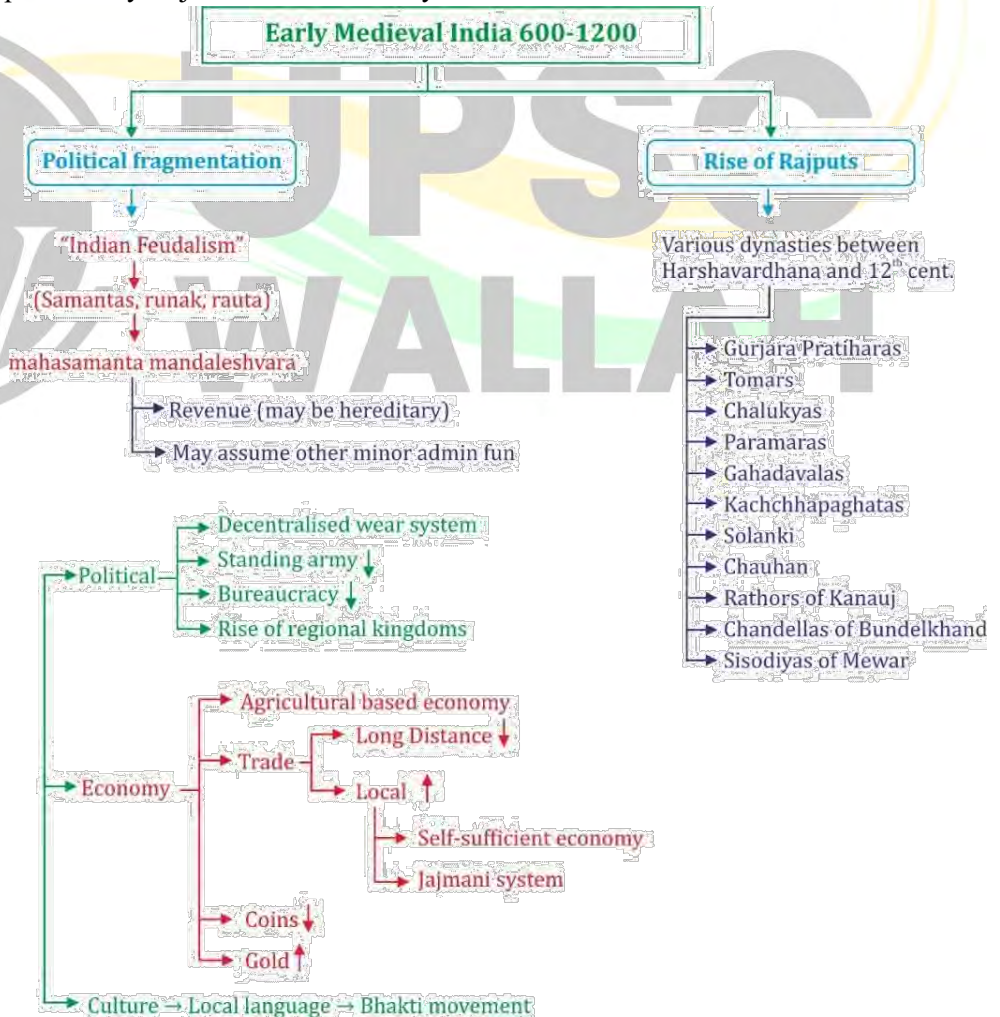
❖ The rise of Rajput could be attributed to:

- Expansion of Agriculture
- Land Grants to Royal Kinsmen
- Interclan Collaboration and Alliances
- Construction of Fortresses



**Chahamanas of Shakambhari/Chauhans of Sambhar (7th - 11th Century):**

- ❖ They ruled in parts of the present-day Rajasthan and its nearby areas between 7th and 11th centuries CE.
- ❖ They had their capital at **Shakambhari** identical to **modern Sambhar** near Jaipur.
- ❖ The later kings, however, **relocated the capital to Ajmer**, and as a result, they are also referred to as the Chahamanas (Chauhans) of Ajmer.
- ❖ They were initially the feudatories of the Pratiharas and gained freedom under King Simharaja.



**Simharaja (944-971):**

- ❖ He was the **founder** of the Chauhan Dynasty.
- ❖ He also adopted the title **Maharajadhiraja**.



### Vigroharaja (971-988):

- ❖ He defeated Mulraja and invaded Gujarat.
- ❖ He also captured Chittor.

### Ajayraja II (1110-1135):

- ❖ He was the next important ruler of the Chahaman or Chauhan dynasty.
- ❖ He **defeated Paramaras** and captured their capital, Ujjaini.
- ❖ Also, founded the city of **Ajaymeru (Ajmer)**.

### Vigraharaja IV/Visaldev (1150-1164):

- ❖ He was known as **Visaldev** and captured Delhi from Tomars.
- ❖ He allowed the Tomars to rule as feudatories of the Chahaman/Chauhan Dynasty.
- ❖ He also captured Eastern Punjab and Gujarat.
- ❖ His kingdom extended from Shivalik hills in the north to Udaipur in the south.
- ❖ He **moved the Capital from Shakambhari to Ajmer**.
- ❖ He engaged in conflicts with Paramars of Malwa, which was ruled by Bhoja.
- ❖ He patronized literature and also wrote a play, **Harikeli Nataka**.
- ❖ He constructed a temple which was later converted to Adhai Din ka Jhopra by Qutub-ud-din Aibak.

### Prithviraj Chauhan (1177 - 1192):

- ❖ **Prithviraj Chauhan/Prithviraj III** is popularly known as **Rai Pithora** as per folk legends.
- ❖ He ascended at age of 11 after the death of his father Someshwara and took administration at the age of 16.
- ❖ He defeated:
  - Chandella king Paramardi
  - Chalukya Bhima II
  - Gahadvala Jayachandra
- ❖ He led an **expedition in Bundelkhand** against the Chandella ruler and its capital Mahoba fought a fierce battle against the Chandella warriors Alha and Udal. Alha and Udal were killed in the battle.
- ❖ He defeated **Muhammad Ghori** in the First Battle of Tarain in 1191 AD. However, in the **Second Battle of Tarain** in 1192, **Muhammad Ghori defeated and killed Prithviraj Chauhan**.
- ❖ The second battle of Tarain is well known as one of the turning points in Indian history and has been described in the poem '**Prithviraj Raso**'. The battle opened the way for further conquests of India by the Muslims. Ajmer and Delhi were occupied by Muhammad.
- ❖ Two great poems, **Prithviraj Raso and Prithviraj Vijaya**, were written by his court poets **Chandbardai and Jayanaka** respectively.

### Hari Raja (1193 – 1194) (Brother of Prithviraj):

- ❖ Muhammad Ghori conquered Ajmer and Delhi and placed Govinda (younger son of Prithviraj) as his vassal in Ajmer.
- ❖ Hariraja banished Govinda for accepting Muslim suzerainty.
- ❖ Govinda established the Chahaman branch at **Ranastambhapura (Ranthambhore)**.

- ❖ Hari Raja regained Ajmer and was hostile towards the conqueror.
- ❖ Overthrown by Qutubuddin Aibak who invaded Ajmer and took control.
- ❖ In 1301, Ranthambore was captured by Alauddin Khilji and destroyed the last stronghold as well.

### Chandellas of Bundelkhand (831-1203):

- ❖ They trace their descent to mythical ancestor **Chandratreya, born on the Moon**.
- ❖ They were initially **feudatories of Gurjara Pratiharas** and were engaged in the conflicts with the Pratiharas, the Palas, and the Kalachuris of Chedi.
- ❖ They were widely regarded for their **art and architecture**, particularly for the fully built temples in the **Nagara style** that could be found in Khajuraho, their original capital.
- ❖ The Chandella kings Yashovarman, Dhanga, and Vidyadhara, respectively, built the Lakshmana Temple (c. 930–950 CE), the Vishvanatha Temple (c. 999–1002 CE), and the Kandariya Mahadeva Temple (c. 1030 CE).
- ❖ They also built a variety of palaces, forts, and water bodies in other places, notably their strongholds of Jayapura-Durga (modern Ajaigarh), Kalanjara (modern Kalinjar), and Mahotsava-Nagara (modern Mahoba), which served as their later capital.

### Nannuka (831-845):

- ❖ He was the founder and the ruler of the small kingdom known as Chandella.
- ❖ He established his capital at Kharjjuravahaka (Khajuraho).

### Vakpati (c. 845–865 CE):

- ❖ As per the Chandella inscriptions, he succeeded Nannuka and defeated several enemies.

### Jayashakti and Vijay Shakti (865-885):

- ❖ The two sons of Vakpati, Jayashakti (Jeja) and Vijayashakti (Vija), strengthened Chandella authority.
- ❖ As per the **Mahoba Inscription**, the Chandella territory was called Jejabhukhti after Jayshakti.

### Rahila (885-905):

- ❖ Rahila, Vijayashakti's successor, is credited with a number of military triumphs in numerous eulogistic inscriptions.

### Shri Harsha (905-925):

- ❖ He helped in the restoration of Mahipala (the Pratihara King) after the Indra III invasion.

### Yashovarman (925-950 CE):

- ❖ Yashovarman essentially became independent around the 10th century, even though he acknowledged **Pratiharas suzerainty**.
- ❖ He conquered the fortress of Kalinjara.
- ❖ The renowned Chandella style of art and architecture first emerged during his rule.
- ❖ **Laxmana Temple** at Khajuraho was built during his reign.



Laxmana Temple at Khajuraho

### Dhangadeva (950-999):

- ❖ He was the first independent Chandella King.
- ❖ He adopted the title **Maharajadhiraja** and from the time of his reign no Pratihara overlord mentioned in the inscription.
- ❖ Khajuraho inscription mentions rulers of Koshala, Kritha (Vidarbha region), Kuntala and Simhala obeyed Dhanga's officers.
- ❖ It also mentions the wives of Andhra, Anga, Kanchi and Radha resided in his prison as a success of his wars.
- ❖ Similar to his predecessor, Dhanga also ordered the construction of the beautiful **Vishvanatha Temple** in Khajuraho.

### Ganda-Deva (999-1008):

- ❖ He was able to retain the territory which was inherited by him.

### Vidyadhara (1003-1035):

- ❖ As per the legends he killed Rajyapala (Pratihara King of Kannauj) for fleeing his capital, instead of fighting **Mahmud of Ghazni** (the Ghaznavid invader).
- ❖ The fight ended with Vidyadhara paying tribute to Mahmud after Mahmud eventually attacking Vidyadhara's realm.
- ❖ The Chandella kingdom had been weakened by the Ghaznavid invasions by the end of Vidyadhara's rule. The Kalachuri ruler Gangeya-deva took advantage of this and seized control of the kingdom's eastern regions.
- ❖ He is known for having commissioned the **Kandariya Mahadeva Temple**.

### Vijaypala (1035-1050):

- ❖ He defeated Gangeya Deva in a battle.
- ❖ Chandellas power started to decline during his reign.
- ❖ During this time, the **Gwalior Kachchapaghatas** pledged loyalty to the Chandellas.
- ❖ Reasons for their decline:
  - Struggle with neighbors like Paramaras (Malwa) and Kalchuri (Tripuri).
  - He faced raids by Northern Muslim Dynasties Ghaznavids and Ghurids.

### Parmardi Deva (1165-1203):

- ❖ In 1183 Prithviraj Chauhan invaded the Chandella kingdom and as per the **Madanpur Stone Inscriptions** he sacked Mahoba.
- ❖ He took shelter at Kalinjar fort.
- ❖ In this conflict, the Chandella force under the command of Alha, Udal, and other generals was defeated.
- ❖ There are different versions of Parmardi's fate - some legends highlighted that he committed suicide in shame, while other says Parmardi restored the Chandella power and ruled till 1203 CE.

### Paramara Kingdom of Malwa (800–1305 CE):

- ❖ The **Harsola Copper Plates** issued by Paramara king Siyaka II in 949 mentions that the early rulers most probably ruled as vassals of the Rashtrakutas of Manyakheta.

- ❖ **Malwa region** emerged as the main center of political and cultural prestige under the Paramaras and also the main branch ruled at Malwa.
- ❖ Their capital was **Dhara (now Dhar)**. Later moved their capital to **Mandapa-Durga (now Mandu)** after Dhara was sacked.
- ❖ The Paramara Dynasty **reached its zenith under Munja's nephew Bhoja**, whose kingdom extended from Chittor in the north to Konkan in the south, and from the Sabarmati River in the west to Vidisha in the east.
- ❖ They faced struggles with Chalukyas of Gujarat, Chalukyas of Kalyani, Kalachuris of Tripuri and Chandelas of Jejakabhukti.
- ❖ **Mahalakadeva**, the last known Paramara king, was defeated and killed by the forces of Alauddin Khalji of Delhi in 1305 CE
- ❖ They were known for their patronage to Sanskrit poets and scholars, and Bhoja was himself a renowned scholar.
- ❖ Most of the **Paramara kings were shaivites** and commissioned several Shiva temples; they also patronized Jain scholars.

### Important Rulers of Paramara Dynasty:

- ❖ Upendra Krishnraja (late 8 to early 9th century CE)
- ❖ Vairisimha (I) (early 9th century CE)
- ❖ Siyaka (I) (mid of 9th century CE)
- ❖ Vakpati (I) (late 9th or early 10th century CE)
- ❖ Vairisimha (II) (middle 10th century CE)
- ❖ Siyaka (II) (940–972 CE)
- ❖ Vakpati (II) alias Munja (972–990 CE)
- ❖ Sindhuraja (990–1010 CE)

### Bhoja (1010–1055 CE), greatest ruler of dynasty

- ❖ Jayasimha I (1055–1070 CE)
- ❖ Udayaditya (1070–1086 CE)
- ❖ Lakshmadeva (1086–1094 CE)
- ❖ Naravarman (1094–1130 CE)
- ❖ Yashovarman (1133–1142 CE)
- ❖ Jayavarman I (1142–1143 CE)
- ❖ Interregnum from 1143 to 1175 CE under an usurper named 'Ballala' and later the Solanki king Kumarapala
- ❖ Vindhyavarman (1175–1194 CE)
- ❖ Subhatavarman (1194–1209 CE)
- ❖ Arjunavarman I (1210–1215 CE)
- ❖ Devapala (1218–1239 CE)





- ❖ Jaitugideva (1239–1255 CE)
- ❖ Jayavarman II (1255–1274 CE)
- ❖ Arjunavarman II (1274–1285 CE)
- ❖ Bhoja II (1285–1301 CE)
- ❖ **Mahalakadeva (1301–1305 CE)**

### Upendra Krishnraja:

- ❖ Upendra Krishnraja ruled around the late 8<sup>th</sup> to early 9<sup>th</sup> century CE.
- ❖ He is said to be the **founder of the Paramara dynasty.**
- ❖ He was **made ruler of Deccan by Rashtrakuta king Govinda III** after his expedition in Malwa.
- ❖ He lost Malwa to Pratiharas and lost significance till **revived by Vairasimha II and Siyaka II.**
- ❖ He was succeeded by Vairisimha (I) in the early 9th century CE and Siyaka (I) in the mid of 9th century CE, Vakpati (I) in the late 9th or early 10th century CE and Vairisimha (II) in the middle 10th century CE.

### Siyaka (II)/Harsha (940–972 CE):

- ❖ He defeated the Rashtrakuta king Khottiga at Kalighatta.
- ❖ He sacked Manyakheta (Rashtrakuta capital) and established Paramara as sovereign power.

### Vakpati (II) alias Munja (972–990 CE):

- ❖ He expanded the empire and had several **military victories**, such as when he defeated the Kalachuris and captured Tripuri, their capital.
- ❖ He fought against Rajputs and Hunas and sacked the capital of the Guhilas of Medapati Aghata.
- ❖ He annexed Mount Abu and southern parts of Jodhpur from the other branch of Chahamanas.
- ❖ He also invaded the Anahilapataka and Lata Chalukyan kingdoms.
- ❖ He was defeated by Tailapa II of Western Chalukyas] and as a result of it he lost southern territories.
- ❖ He adopted the title **Amogavarsha/Prithvivallabha/Sri Vallabha.**
- ❖ He was a **poet** and patron of art and literature.
- ❖ He also made few constructions of tanks and temples during his reign.

### Sindhuraja (990–1010 CE):

- ❖ He was Munja's brother.
- ❖ He defeated Western Chalukyas and recovered territories.
- ❖ He succeeded against Huns, Lata rulers and Somavanshis of South Koshala and Shilaharas of Konkana.
- ❖ His biography **Nava Shashanka Charita** was written by his court poet **Padmagupta.**

### Bhoja (1010–1055 CE):

- ❖ He was the son of Sindhuraja and nephew of Munja. He was the **greatest ruler of the Dynasty.**
- ❖ During his reign, the dynasty **reached its zenith.**
- ❖ His kingdom extended from Chittor in the north to upper Konkan in the south and Sabarmati River in the west to Vidisha in the east.
- ❖ In 1018, he defeated Chaulukyas of Lata.



- ❖ He gained control over northern Konkan where **Shilahara rulers became feudatories**.
- ❖ He also formed an alliance with Rajendra Chola and Gangeya Deva Kalachuri against the Kalyani Chalukyan king Jayasimha II.
- ❖ Later, Jayasimha's son - Someshwara I invaded Malwa and sacked its capital Dhara.
- ❖ Bhoja recovered immediately but the southern boundary was pushed northwards from Godavari to Narmada.
- ❖ His eastward expansion attempt was checked by **Chandella King Vidyadhara**.
- ❖ However, Bhoja was able to control Chandella feudatories like **Kacchaphagatas of Dubkund**.
- ❖ He also launched an attack against the **Kacchaphagatas of Gwalior** as well but was repulsed by the ruler Kirtiraja.
- ❖ He defeated Chahamanas of Shakambhari killing their ruler Viryarama but were defeated by Chahamanas of Naddula.
- ❖ He took the title of **Parameshwara Parambhattaraka**.
- ❖ May be Mahmud of Ghazni changed his route after plundering Somanath temple so as to avoid Bhoja.
- ❖ May be Bhoja has also **supported Anandpala (Hindu shahi dynasty)** against Mahmud of Ghazni.
- ❖ May be involved in hindu Alliance that expelled Mahmud's governors from Hansi and Thanesar.
- ❖ In the last years of his reign his kingdom was attacked by Solanki King Bhima Deva and Kalchuri king Karna.
- ❖ He probably died of some disease during the above attack.
- ❖ He **was a scholar** himself and wrote on various topics like Grammar, poetry, architecture, chemistry and yoga.
- ❖ He **patronized the arts, literature and sciences**. He established Bhojshala which was a center of Sanskrit studies and a temple of Saraswati at Dhar.
- ❖ He is believed to have **founded the Bhojpur city** and he was credited for building Bhojeshwar temple and 3 dams in the area.

### **Jayasimha I (c.1055–1070 CE):**

- ❖ Following Bhoja's death, his son and successor **faced the joint invasion of Kalachuri and Solanki**.
- ❖ The chronicles of Bilhana imply that he sought assistance from the Chalukyas of Kalyani.

### **Lakshmadeva (c.1086–1094 CE):**

- ❖ According to the **Nagpur Prashasti Inscription** from around 1105 CE, he made significant military conquests.
- ❖ Interregnum from (1143 to 1175 CE) under a usurper named 'Ballala' and later the Solanki king Kumarapala.

### **Mahalakadeva (1301–1305 CE):**

- ❖ He was defeated and killed by Allauddin Khilji in 1305.

### **Chaulukya of Gujarat/ Solanki Rajput (940–1244 CE):**

- ❖ The Chaulukya Dynasty, also known as the Solanki Dynasty, was a dynasty that ruled parts of what are now **Gujarat and Rajasthan**.
- ❖ Their capital was at Anahilavada (modern Patan).
- ❖ There were many branches:
  - Oldest were Central India's Mattamayura and its earliest rulers were Simhavarman, Sadhanva, and Avanivarman.
  - Chaulukyas of Lata (south gujarat) founded by Barappa and important city was Bhrigukachcha (Broach)

❖ The most important rulers of Chalukyas of Gujarat were:

- Mularaja (c. 940 – c. 995)
- Chamundaraja (c. 996 – c. 1008)
- Vallabharaja (c. 1008)
- Durlabharaja (c. 1008 – c. 1022)
- Bhima I (c. 1022 – c. 1064)
- Karna (c. 1064 – c. 1092)
- Jayasimha Siddharaja (c. 1092 – c. 1142)
- Kumarapala (c. 1142 – c. 1171)
- Ajayapala (c. 1171 – c. 1175)
- Mularaja II (c. 1175 – c. 1178)
- Bhima II (c. 1178 – c. 1240)
- Tribhuvanapala (c. 1240 – c. 1244)



### Mularaja I (c. 940 – c. 995):

- ❖ He was the **founder of the Chalukyas of Gujarat or Solankis Rajput.**
- ❖ He led expeditions against Saurashtra, Kutch and Abhiras.
- ❖ His kingdom was invaded by Chahmanas and Chaulukyas of Lata.
- ❖ He was **defeated by Paramaras of Malwa.**
- ❖ He took refuge with Rashtrakuta ruler Dhavala.
- ❖ He was a Shiva devotee and also patronized Jainism.
  - He built **Mulavasatika temple** for Dagamabars.
  - He also built **Mulanatha Jinadeva temple** for Shwtamabars.
- ❖ He was succeeded by Chamundaraja (c. 996 – c. 1008), Vallabharaja (c. 1008) and Durlabharaja (c. 1008 – c. 1022).

### Bhima I (1022 – 1064):

- ❖ He was the grandson of Mularaja.
- ❖ During his reign, **Mahmud of Ghazni overran Gujarat** and plundered Somnath Temple in 1025.
- ❖ He built the **Sun temple of Modhera.**
- ❖ His wife Udaymati built **Rani ki Vav** (enlisted in the UNESCO's World Heritage Sites) in the memory of Bhima I.
- ❖ He built 1 out of 5 Dilwara temples, also known as **Vimal Vasahi Temple** dedicated to Jain Lord Rishabha was built by his minister Vimal Shah.



### Karna (1064 – 1092):

- ❖ He defeated Bhil chief and found Karnawati which is now known as Ahmedabad.

### Jayasimha Siddharaja (1092 – 1142):

- ❖ During his reign the expansion over Saurashtra and Kutch took place.
- ❖ The siege of Junagadh by Jayasimha is the basis of one of the most well-known legends of the Gujarati bards.
- ❖ He **captured the fort** along with **Ranakdevi**, wife of Raja Rakhenagar.
- ❖ Ranakdevi preferred to commit sati rather than remarry Jayasimha and he was persuaded to allow her to burn herself on a pyre at Wadhwan.
- ❖ Jain monk Hemachandra gained prominence and enjoyed good ties with the king. During his rule, the Rudra Mahakala Temple at Siddhapur was also constructed.

### Hemachandra:

- ❖ Hemachandra was a **12th century (c. 1088 - c. 1172/1173 CE) Jain** saint, scholar, poet, mathematician, philosopher, yogi, grammarian, law theorist, historian, lexicographer, rhetorician, logician, and prosodist.
- ❖ He gained the title **kalikalarvajaa**, “the knower of all knowledge in his times” and father of Gujarati language.
- ❖ He wrote **Arhanniti**, a work on politics from a Jain perspective.
- ❖ He produced **Trishashti shalaka-purusha charita** ("Deeds of the 63 Illustrious Men"), a Sanskrit epic poem on the history of important figures of Jainism.
- ❖ Siddha-Hema-Sabdanusasana includes six languages (grammar).
- ❖ The **poetry Dvyashraya Kavya** on the history of Chaulukya Dynasty.
- ❖ Trisastisalakapurusa Charitra or "Lives of Sixty-Three Great Men" is a hagiographical treatment of the twenty-four tirthankaras.
  - The appendix to this work (Parisistaparvan or Sthaviravalicarita).

### Lexicon:

- ❖ Abhidhan-Chintamani
- ❖ Anekarth Kosha - words with multiple meanings.
- ❖ Deshi-Shabda-Sangraho or Desi-nama-mala- local or non-Sanskrit origin.
- ❖ Niganthu Sesa - botanical lexicon.
- ❖ Chandonushasana, a work on prosody, described the Fibonacci sequence in around 1150, about fifty years before Fibonacci (1202).

### Kumarapala (1142 – 1171):

- ❖ During his reign prosperity in the region rose at its peak.
- ❖ Hemachandra and Kularapala shared good relations and also patronized Jainism.
- ❖ He helped in the **rebuilding of the Somnath temple**.

### Bhima II (c. 1178 – c. 1240):

- ❖ He **repelled the incursions of Muhammad Ghori** at the battle of Kayadara.
- ❖ During 1195 - 97 Ghori's army led by Aibak was defeated multiple times by him and assumed the title **Abhinav Siddharaj**.



### **Tribhuvanapala (c. 1240 – c. 1244):**

- ❖ After 1243 they lost control of their feudatories.
- ❖ The kingdom came to an end when **Khilji conquered Gujarat in 1297.**

### **Tomara Dynasty:**

- ❖ They ruled from Haryana with their capital at **Dhillika (Delhi).**
- ❖ They were believed to be the feudatory of Pratiharas.
- ❖ They fought a battle against the Chahamanas of Shakambhari and later their rule was replaced by Chahamanas.
- ❖ The Iron pillar at Mehrauli carries an 11th century inscription that refers to **Anangapala Tomar**, the ruler of Delhi.
- ❖ His coins feature horsemen and Bull with the title **Shri Samanta Deva.**
- ❖ His coins were similar to coins of Chauhan ruler Someshwara and Prithviraj III so maybe they were contemporary.
- ❖ He constructed waterworks in Delhi.
- ❖ **Anangpal II** was the founder of the Citadel of Lal Kot and built a tank called **Anang Tal.**
- ❖ The famous **Surajkund reservoir in Faridabad** was commissioned similarly by **Surajpala (Tomar King).**

### **Gahadvalas of Kannauj (1190 – 1194):**

- ❖ The Gahadvalas or Gaharwars, who claimed to be **Suryavanshi Kshatriyas**, ruled the kingdom of Kannauj.
- ❖ They were the Rathore clan of Rajputs claiming to be the descendents of Gahadvalas.

### **Chandradeva (1089-1103):**

- ❖ He was the **founder of the Gahadvala Dynasty.**
- ❖ He successfully wrested Delhi from Gurjara Pratiharas and Rashtrakutas and annexed it to Kannauj.

### **Madanapala (1104-1113 CE):**

- ❖ He governed with the help of a committee of 5 people.
- ❖ He was successful in suppressing the Muslim invasion.
- ❖ He won the battle against Rampala of the Pala Dynasty.

### **Govindachandra (1114-1155 CE):**

- ❖ He defeated the Ghaznavids and got his father Madanpala released.
- ❖ His kingdom extends to present day UP and Bihar.
- ❖ He was a patron of both **Hindu temples and Buddhist monasteries.**
- ❖ His **wife Kumaradevi** was a devout Buddhist.

### **Vijayachandra (1155-1169 CE), alias Vijayapala or Malladeva:**

- ❖ He was also known as Vijayapala or Malladeva.
- ❖ He successfully faced the waves of Ghaznavids.
- ❖ During his reign **Delhi was lost** and Tomars had accepted the suzerainty of Chauhans of Ajmer.



### Jayachandra (1170-1194 CE):

- ❖ He was the son of Vijaychandra and the last great king of the Gahadavalas.
- ❖ He was called Jaichand in vernacular legends.
- ❖ During his reign **Prithivraj Chauhan annexed Delhi.**
- ❖ As per the Samyukta story he was defeated by Lakshmansena of Bengal.
- ❖ In 1194 Kannauj was attacked by Muhammad Ghori and Jaichandra was defeated in the **battle of Chanawar** and then drowned in Ganga.
- ❖ His Kingdom was sacked by Ghori's army.

### Harishchandra (c. 1194-1197 CE):

- ❖ His descendents founded the **Rathore clan** who ruled Marwar/Jodhpur.
- ❖ The glory of Kannauj finally ended with the **Conquest of Iltutmish.**



PW Mobile APP: <https://physicswala.page.link/?type=contact-us&data=open>

For PW Website: <https://www.physicswallah.live/contact-us>

# **DAILY CLASS NOTES**

---

## **MEDIEVAL HISTORY**

**Lecture - 08**

**Arab Invasion and  
Delhi Sultanate**



## Arab Invasion and Delhi Sultanate

### Kingdoms of Kashmir and North West:

- ❖ **Rajatarangini**, which means "the river of kings", is a mythological and historical chronicle that provides a significant part of the history of Kashmir and North-West India.
  - It was probably written in the 12th century CE in Sanskrit by a Kashmiri Brahmana called **Kalhana**.
  - This earliest historical source consists of 7826 verses, divided into eight books called **Tarangas** (waves).

### Karkota Empire (c. 598–855 CE)

#### Durlabhvardhana (c.598–634 CE):

- ❖ He was the founder of the Karkota Dynasty.
- ❖ He is also known as Prajnaditya.
- ❖ Hiuen Tsang visited Kashmir during his rule.

#### Lalitaditya/Muktapida (c.697–733 CE):

- ❖ He extended the power of Kashmir beyond the normal mountain limits.
- ❖ He fought and was victorious against Turks, Tibetans, Bhutias, Kambojas, etc.
- ❖ His main success was against king Yasovarman of Kannauj.
- ❖ He constructed the famous **Martand (Sun) Temple** in the Anantnag district of Kashmir, the earliest Sun temple in India and one of the largest temple complexes of the time.
- ❖ Parihasapur Stupa was also built during his rule.



#### Vajraditya (c.734–741 CE):

- ❖ During his reign, he faced frequent Arab raids upon Kashmir.

#### Jayapida (c.745–776 CE):

- ❖ He led many military expeditions against Gauda and the ruler of Kannauj.
- ❖ He also imposed excessive taxes and oppressed his subjects cruelly.

#### Utpala Dynasty (8th - 10th century):

- ❖ The Kashmir region was governed by the Hindu Utpala Dynasty from the 8th to 10th centuries CE.
- ❖ The dynasty was founded by Avanti Varman, ending the rule of the Karkota dynasty in 855 CE.

#### Few important elements of early Medieval Kashmir:

- ❖ **Tantrins:** A body of foot soldiers,
- ❖ **Ekangas:** A body of royal bodyguards
- ❖ **Damaras:** Landed chiefs who played a crucial role in the politics of that time and at times acted as kingmakers.

#### The History of this region has also the Legacy of Powerful Queens:

- ❖ Yashovati of Gonanda dynasty
- ❖ Sugandha of Utpala Dynasty
- ❖ Didda of Yashaskara dynasty



### Avanti Varman (c. 855–883 CE):

- ❖ He was the **founder** of the Utpala dynasty.
- ❖ He controlled the powers of the damaras, rural aristocrats causing internal problems.
- ❖ He was known as a great administrator.
- ❖ He prevented flood waters of Mahapada (Wular Lake) from damaging the crops.
- ❖ Cities of Avantipur and Suryapur were founded during his time period.
- ❖ Shiva and Vishnu temples were also constructed and he helped in the construction of Buddhist Monasteries.
  - Anantheshwara
  - Avantiswami Temple

### Sankarvarman (c. 883 – 902 CE):

- ❖ He led military expeditions into Gujarat and Punjab and these military expeditions led to the decline of the economy.
- ❖ He imposed heavy taxes and also plundered many temples.

### Sugandha (c. 904 – 906):

- ❖ Grief soon followed in her life as **Shankaravarman died** trying to recover from a battlefield injury.
- ❖ Many followed their king in death, but Sugandha Devi donned the mantle of becoming the regent until her son, Gopalavarman, came of age.
- ❖ She found a way for the lineage to continue by placing the rightful king on the throne.
- ❖ Queen Sugandha's regency proved to be lacking, but her reign (CE 904-906) was majestic. It was short, yet much was accomplished by her, owing to which it is often dubbed **Kashmir's 'golden era'**.
- ❖ She founded the towns of **Gopalapura and Sugandhapura**.

### Yashaskara Dynasty:

#### Queen Didda (c. 958 - 1003)/The Catherine of Kashmir:

- ❖ She was the wife of **Kshemgupta** and daughter of Simharaja of Lohara.
- ❖ Grand-daughter of Bhimashahi (Hindu shahi of Kabul).
- ❖ Initially regent of her son and various grandsons and then sole ruler in her own right.
- ❖ Kalhana disapproved of her.
- ❖ She founded the **towns of Diddapura and Kankanbura**.
- ❖ She also built a temple called **Diddasvamin temple**.
- ❖ Later she had placed **Sangram Raja**, son of her brother on the throne and diverted the kingdom to her natal family. This initiated the start of the **Lohara Dynasty**.

### Hindu Shahi Dynasty:

- ❖ Details regarding past rulers have been assembled from chronicles, coins and stone inscriptions as no consolidated account of their history is available.
- ❖ After the decline of the Kushana in the 3rd century to early 9th century CE, the **Turkish Shahiya Dynasty** ruled over Kabul Valley and Gandhara.
- ❖ They were Splitted in two eras:
  - Buddhist Shahis

- Hindu Shahis
- The transition into Hinduism occurred around 870 CE.

- ❖ In the 9th century Kallar, a Brahmin minister of King Langaturman overthrew the Shahiya king and started Hindu Shahi dynasty.

### Kallar (890 - 895 CE):

- ❖ He was referred as **Lallyashahi in Rajatarangini** and was a Brahmin Minister.
- ❖ He could not control Kabul.
- ❖ He was defeated by Arab, Sarrarid Yaqui Ibn.
- ❖ Moved his capital to Udabhandra (Und, Rawalpindi, Pakistan)
- ❖ **Samanta, Lalliya, Kamaluka, Bhimadeva were the other important kings.**



### Jayapala (c. 964 - 1001 CE):

- ❖ He was regarded as the hero as he defended the territory against Turkish rulers of Ghazni.
- ❖ He was challenged by Sultan Sabuktigin in the **Battle of Peshawar**.
- ❖ Later challenged by his son **Mahmud of Ghazni**.

### Anandapala (c. 1001 - 1010 CE):

- ❖ He was the son of Jayapala.
- ❖ During his reign many losses were inflicted by Ghaznavids.
- ❖ In the **Battle of Chach**, he fought against Ghaznavids where the outcome was:
  - Lost and incurred heavy losses.
  - Eventually signed a treaty with the Ghaznavid empire.
  - Compared with Porus.

### Trilochan Pala (c. 1010 - 1021 CE):

- ❖ He expanded his kingdom in **Shivaliks** and also fought against **Rai of Sharwa**.
- ❖ As per **Al Biruni**, he was initially respected as his father's treaty with Ghaznavid
- ❖ Later he rebelled against Sultan Mahmud and was assassinated by his own mutinous troops.

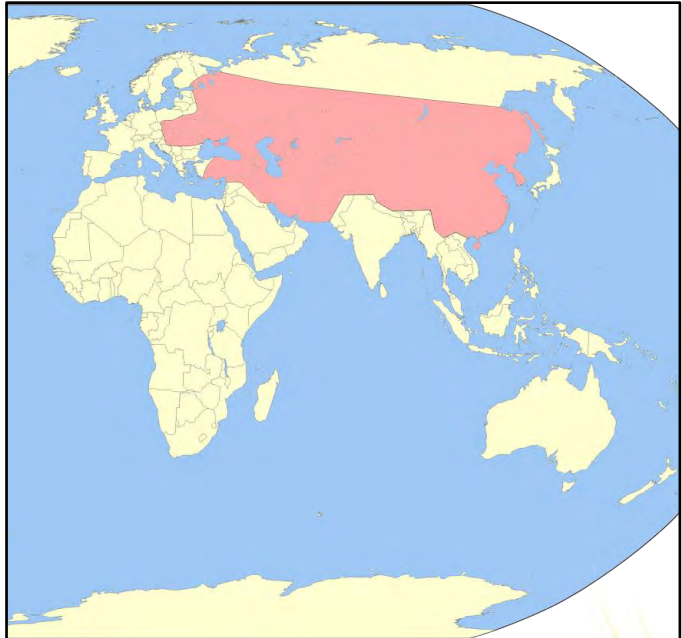
### Bhimapala (c. 1022 - 1026 CE):

- ❖ Historian **Utbi** calls him fearless due to his courage and valor.
- ❖ He commanded the **Battle of Nandana** where he wounded the commander of Ghaznavid army **Muhammad Bin Ibrahim**.
- ❖ His kingdom was destroyed by Mahmud of Ghazni.

### East and Southeast Asia:

- ❖ In **China** the Society and culture had attained a climax by the 9th Century under the **T'ang rule**.
- ❖ He extended their lordship over a large part of **Sinkiang in Central Asia**.

- ❖ This helped in giving a boost to the trade across the **Silk Route**. Not just Silk but also fine quality Porcelain and semi-precious stones were exported to Europe, West Asia and India through this route.
- ❖ By the 9th Century, the T'ang Empire declined and was replaced by the **Sung Dynasty**.
- ❖ Over the period of time, the growing weakness of the Chinese gave the Mongols the opportunity to conquer China in the 13th century.
- ❖ Due to their highly disciplined cavalry, the Mongol rulers were able to unite North and South China. In the North, they overran Korea and became the largest empire in East Asia.



### Southeast Asia:

- ❖ Most of the **South Asian** states remained independent during this time.
- ❖ **Sailendra and Kambuja** were the two powerful empires that emerged during this period.
- ❖ At its height, the Saliendra Empire included the Java, Sumatra, Malaya peninsula, Parts of Siam and even the Philippines. They had a powerful navy and dominated the **sea trade with China**.
- ❖ The Kambuja **empire** expanded over Cambodia and Annam (North Vietnam). It Flourished till the **15th century** and attained a high level of cultural development and prosperity.



### India and the World after 8th century - An Overview

#### Europe:

- ❖ By the third quarter of the 6th century, the mighty **Roman Empire had broken into two parts**.
- ❖ The western part had its capital at **Rome**. It included the Slav and Germanic tribesmen.
- ❖ The eastern part of the Roman Empire had its capital at **Constantinople**. It included most of eastern Europe as well as modern Turkey, Syria etc.
- ❖ Constantinople was ruled over by the **Byzantine Empire**.

## Byzantine Empire:

- ❖ It had a system of **strong monarchy** and highly **centralized administration**.
- ❖ It was a large and flourishing empire which continued to trade with Asia after the collapse of the Roman Empire.
- ❖ It also acted as a bridge between Greco-Roman civilization and the Arab World.
- ❖ It disintegrated by the mid-15th century with Constantinople falling to the turks.
- ❖ **Dark Age of Europe:** This was the period followed by the **collapse of the Roman Empire** in West Europe. It was marked by the disappearance of Cities and severe decline of foreign trade, decline of Science & Technology in Europe. It only revived after the 10th Century.
- ❖ **Renaissance in Europe:** Between 12th and 14th century, western Europe was able to regain its high level of prosperity. It is marked by growth in Science & Technology, growth of towns and establishment of towns and cities and emergence of universities.
- ❖ **Feudalism in Europe:** The emergence of Feudalism in Europe started after the break-up of the Roman Empire. Basically, it was the type of society in which the Chiefs or feudal lords were the most powerful elements. The **King** was just one of the more powerful feudal Chiefs. The chiefs dominated a large tract of land and played a dominant role in the government.
- ❖ The System of feudalism was not just unique to Europe. It appeared in several countries in different forms. E.g., Rajputs in India. However, **in Europe the Feudalism had two basic features:**



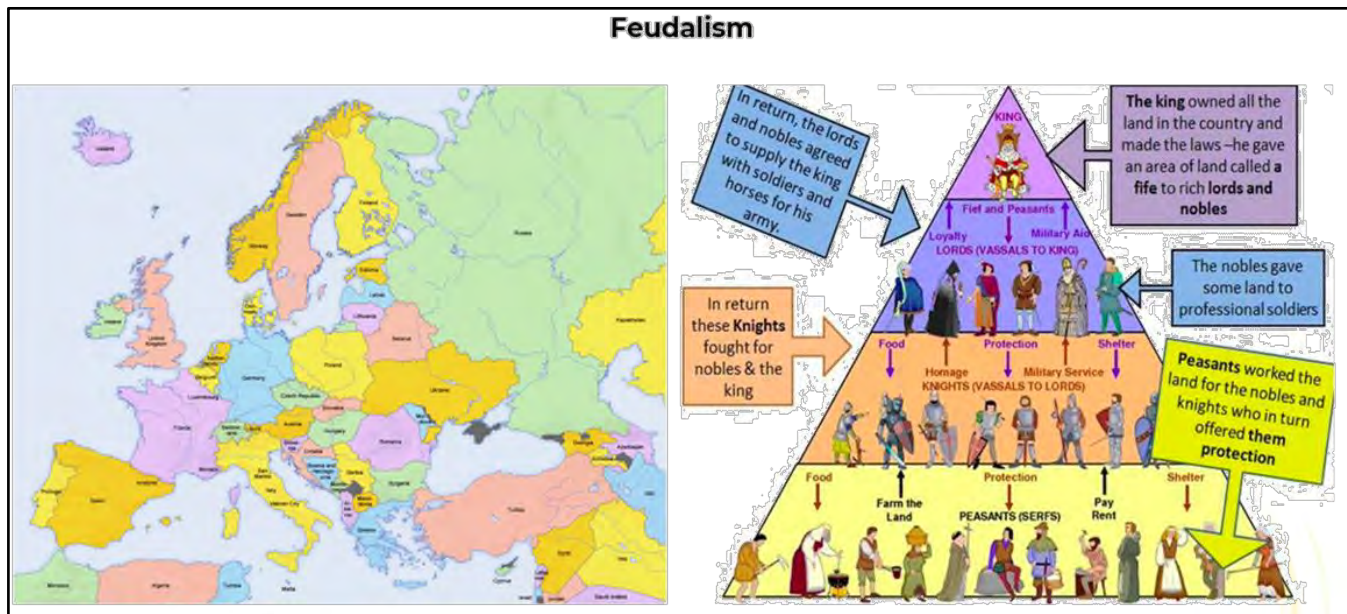
### 1. The System of Serfdom and the Manor:

- A serf was a peasant who worked on the land. But he was not allowed to change his profession or migrate to any other areas. The peasants used to cultivate the private lands of the lords. They also used to pay dues/rent to the lords for the lands they cultivated themselves
- Basically, all lands belonged to the lords. A manor was a house or a castle where the lord lived. They owned a large tract of land. The lord had the responsibility of maintaining law and order, dispensing justice, etc.

### 2. The system of Military Organisation:

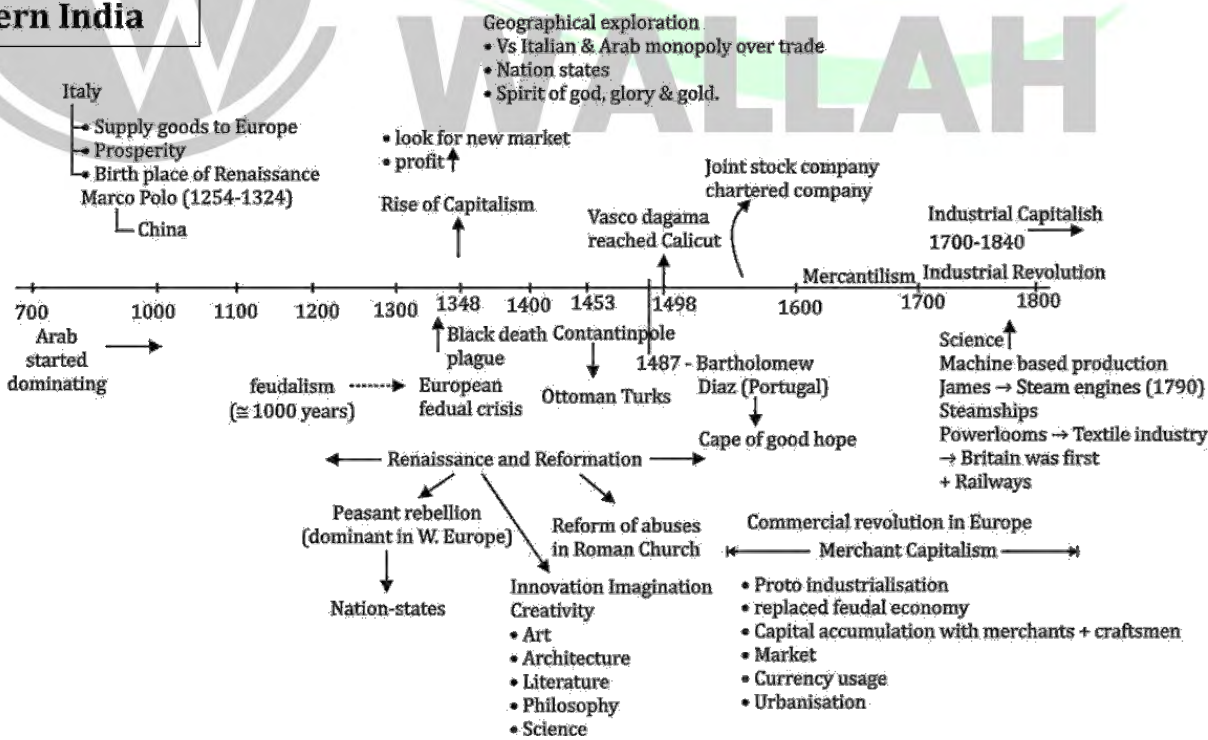
- Armored Knight on Horseback was the most typical feature of Feudalism in Europe.
- The King could not maintain such a large body of Cavalry out of their own resources.
- This led to decentralization of the army where each feudal lord helped to maintain a fixed force of cavalry and infantry for the service of the king.

- **Note:** During this time the cavalry war had become a principal mode of warfare bcoz of the swiftness of the horse.



- ❖ **Role of Church:** Apart from feudalism, the Church also had a great role in shaping the lives of people in Europe during the medieval period. **The Pope** of the Church was not just the religious head but also exercised a great deal of **political authority**.
- ❖ **Note:** The most important feature of the medieval age in Europe, West Asia and India was that it was the **age of religion** and those who spoke on behalf of religion (Pope) exercised great deal of power.

### Modern India



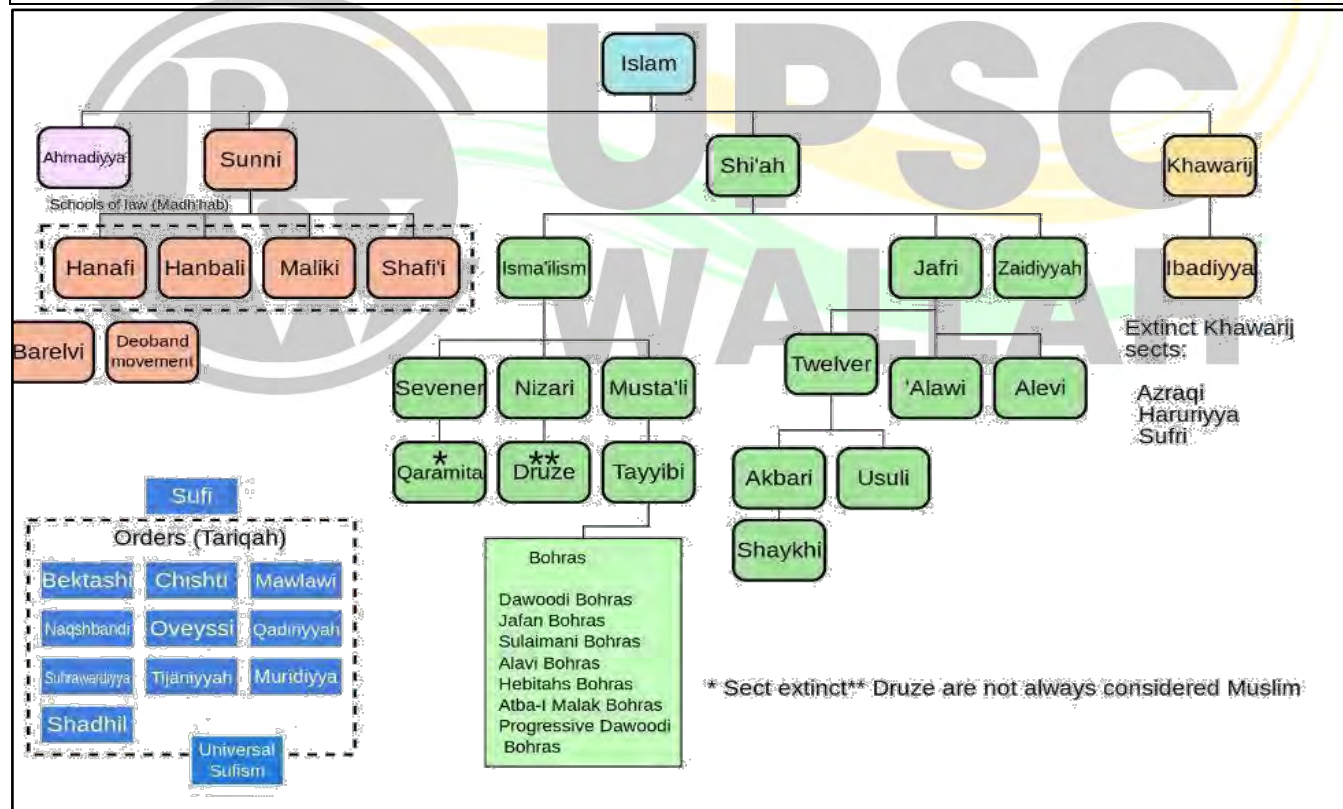


### Prophet Muhammad (570 CE – 8 June 632 CE):

- ❖ He introduced **Islam in 600s AD.**
- ❖ He laid stress on equality and unity of all before Allah.
- ❖ He spread the philosophy to north Africa, Spain, Iran & India.
- ❖ According to Islamic doctrine, he was a prophet, sent to present and confirm the monotheistic teachings preached previously by **Adam, Abraham, Moses, Jesus,** and other prophets.
- ❖ He is viewed as the final prophet of God in all the main branches of Islam.
- ❖ Muhammad united Arab into a single Muslim polity, with the Quran as well as his teachings and practices forming the basis of Islamic religious belief.
- ❖ After the death of the Prophet Muhammed, many Muslim sects have arisen by means of schools of thought, traditions and related faiths.

### Aftermath of Prophet Muhammad:

- ❖ Prophet Muhammad - 622-32 CE
- ❖ Rashidun - 632-661 CE
- ❖ Umayyads - 661-749 CE
- ❖ Abassids - 750-1258 CE



### Sunni Muslims:

- ❖ They are the largest denomination of Islam.
- ❖ The word Sunnah, means the teachings/actions/examples of Prophet Muhammad.

- ❖ They believed that Muhammad died without appointing a successor to lead the Muslim ummah (community).
- ❖ After an initial period of confusion, a group of his most prominent companions gathered and elected **Abu Bakr**, Muhammad's close friend and father-in-law, as the first Caliph.
- ❖ In this regard the first four caliphs - **Abu Bakr, Umar, Uthman Ibn Affan, and Ali** - as the "**Rashidun**" (**The Rightly Guided Caliphs**).
- ❖ Initially they were democratically chosen, later turned into a hereditary dynastic rule.
- ❖ No Caliph since the fall of the Ottoman Empire in 1923.

### Shia Islam:

- ❖ The second largest denomination of Islam.
- ❖ They believe that, similar to the appointment of prophets, Imams after Muhammad are also chosen by God.
- ❖ According to Shias, **Ali (cousin and son in law of Mohammad) was chosen by Allah** and thus appointed by Muhammad to be the direct successor and leader of the Muslim community.
- ❖ They regard him as the first Shia Imam, which continued as a hereditary position through Fatimah and Ali's descendants.




### Sufism:

- ❖ It is a **mystical-ascetic** form of Islam practiced by both Shia and Sunni Muslims.
- ❖ Some Sufi followers consider themselves Sunni or Shia, while others consider themselves as simply Sufi. Sufism is usually considered to be **complementary to orthodox Islam**.
- ❖ By focusing on the more spiritual aspects of religion, Sufis strive to obtain direct experience of God by making use of "**intuitive and emotional faculties**" that one must be trained to use. One starts with sharia (Islamic law), the exoteric or mundane practice of Islam, and then is initiated into the mystical path of a Tariqah (Sufi Order).

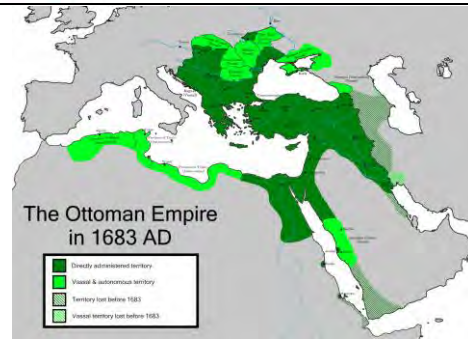


**Kharijite:**

- ❖ It is a general term embracing a variety of Islamic sects which, while originally supporting the **Caliphate of Ali**, eventually rejected his legitimacy after he negotiated with **Mu'awiya during the 7th Century Islamic civil war**.
- ❖ Their complaint was that the Imam must be spiritually pure, whereas Ali's compromise with Mu'awiya was a compromise of his spiritual purity and therefore of his legitimacy as Imam or Caliph.
- ❖ While there are few remaining Kharijite or Kharijite-related groups, the term is sometimes used to denote Muslims who refuse to compromise with those with whom they disagree.

<b>Caliphates</b>	
<p><b>Rashidun Caliphate 632-661</b></p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ <b>Abu Bakr</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ He aggressively expanded the territory.</li> <li>➤ He fought against the Byzantine empire of the Mediterranean and the Sassanid Empire of Persia.</li> </ul> </li> <li>❖ <b>Umar</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ He conquered the Middle East (Egypt, Levant and Persia.)</li> </ul> </li> <li>❖ <b>Uthman</b></li> <li>❖ <b>Ali</b></li> </ul>
<p><b>Umayyad Caliphate 661-750</b></p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ Succeeded the pious Caliphs.                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Muawiya I</li> <li>➤ Yazid I</li> <li>➤ Muawiya II</li> </ul> </li> <li>❖ Stability &amp; prosperity</li> </ul>
<p><b>Abbasid Caliphate</b></p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ The Umayyad dynasty was followed by the Abbasid Caliphate.                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ 750–1258</li> <li>➤ 1261–1517</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## Ottoman Caliphate (1517–1924)



## The Arab World:

- ❖ The rise of Islam - united the warring Arab tribes into a powerful empire.
- ❖ Following internal differences and civil wars amongst the Arab tribes the Abbasids came to power as Caliphs at Baghdad in the middle of 8th century.
- ❖ They claim to belong to the tribe of Prophet Mohammad - considered holy.
- ❖ **For about 150 years it was among the most powerful and flourishing empires.**
- ❖ At its height it included the all-important centers of civilization in the area
  - Example: **North Africa, Egypt, Syria, Iraq.**
- ❖ They controlled some of the most productive countries of **West Asia and North Africa.**
- ❖ They commanded the important Trade routes linking the **Mediterranean world with India and China.**



- ❖ Arabs were keen merchants and quickly emerged as the most enterprising and wealthy merchants' seafarers.
- ❖ The standard of living and cultural environment of the Arab towns could hardly be matched by any other countries.
- ❖ The most famous caliphs of this period were: **Al Mamun and Harun al - Rashid.**



- ❖ Initially the remarkable capacity of assimilation the scientific knowledge and administrative skills of the ancient civilizations.

### Scientific progresses in Arab Land:

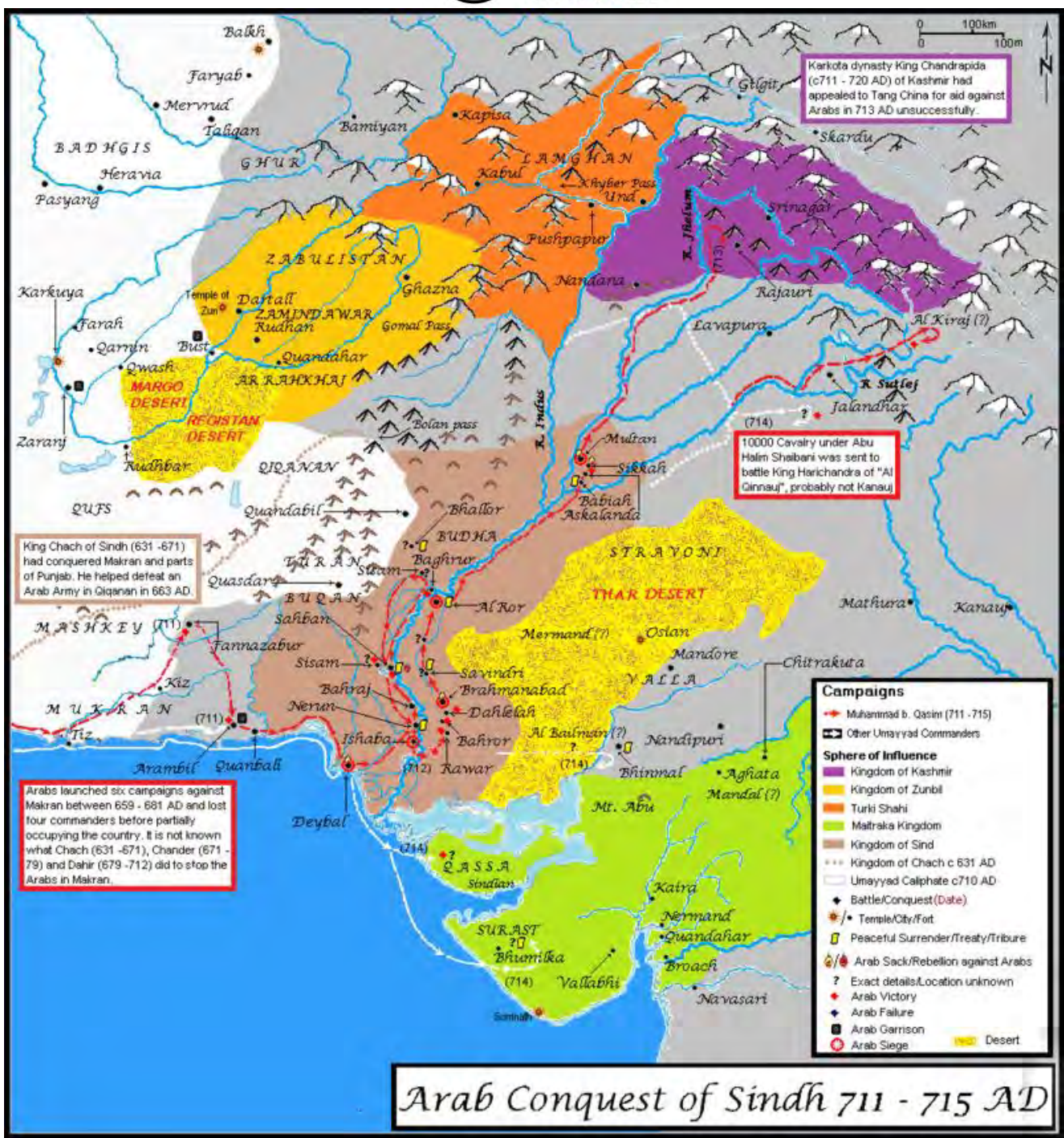
- ❖ The **decimal System** traveled to the Arab.
- ❖ By the 9th century it was popularized in Arab by **Al- Khwarizmi**.
- ❖ Many astronomical and mathematics were also translated to **Arabic**.
  - **Surya Sidhhanta** which was revised by **Aryabhata**.
- ❖ **Charak and Sushruta Samhita** (medicine) translated.
- ❖ A number of **Sanskrit** literatures such as **Panchtantra** (Kalila wa Dimna) were also translated into Arabic.

### Arab Invasion of Indian Subcontinent:

- ❖ The earliest invasion of India was undertaken by the Arabs in **636-637 A.D.**
  - He directed against Thane near Bombay during the **Khilafat of Umar - the second Caliph**.
  - However, this single incident and some other minor incidents largely led to the failure.
- ❖ They did not unnerve them from attacking the Indian subcontinent.
- ❖ Moreover, their determination to conquer India increased with their conquest of Balochistan in the first decade of the 8th century A.D.
- ❖ They only waited for a pretext to invade India and it did not come until 708 A.D.
- ❖ By 708 A.D Arab had reached till Mekran - the most eastern province of the caliphate on the Persian coast.

### First Arab Invasion:

- ❖ During this time **Sindh was ruled by king Dahir**, son of Brahman.
- ❖ In 708 A.D., some ships which were carrying rich presents from Ceylon to Hajaj, the Governor of Persia, were captured by the sea Pirates of the port of Debal in Sindh.
  - But Dahir neither paid the compensation nor asked for an apology.
  - He said it was an act of the pirates and he was not at all responsible.
  - Hajaj was determined to punish Dahir after this response.
  - However, despite successive attempts, he could not be succeeded.
  - Ashamed by these disastrous failures, Hajaj planned a fresh expedition better organized and better equipped than the previous ones.
  - He sent his own nephew & son in-law, Muhammad Bin Qasim a high spirited and daring youth 17.
- ❖ Marching through Persia and Baluchistan he reached **Debal in 712 A.D.**
  - The battle was fought between Qasim and Dahir near Reward.
  - Qasim emerged a clear winner.
- ❖ Annexed Nerun (Hyderabad), Siwistan (Sehwan), Alor, Brahmanabad.
- ❖ Then advanced towards **Multan** and finally captured it in 713 A.D. plundered so much of wealth that they named it the '**City of Gold**'.
- ❖ Then planned to attack over Kanauj but did not materialize due to his death, he was killed by the two revengeful daughters of Dahir.



Arab Conquest of Sindh 711 - 715 AD

- ❖ Later attempted to expand into Punjab but were defeated by **Lalitaditya Muktapida** of Kashmir.
- ❖ The Arab conquest of Sindh is regarded as a significant event in the history of early medieval India.
  - The event though by no means be regarded as of much consequence from the immediate point of view, was the **first successful venture** in a series of attempts made by them to reach India.
  - The conquest **exposed the weakness of the structure of Indian society**.
- ❖ However, except for the loss of Sindh, the Arabs conquest did not seriously disturb Indian society and its consequences began to unfold themselves in the centuries that followed.

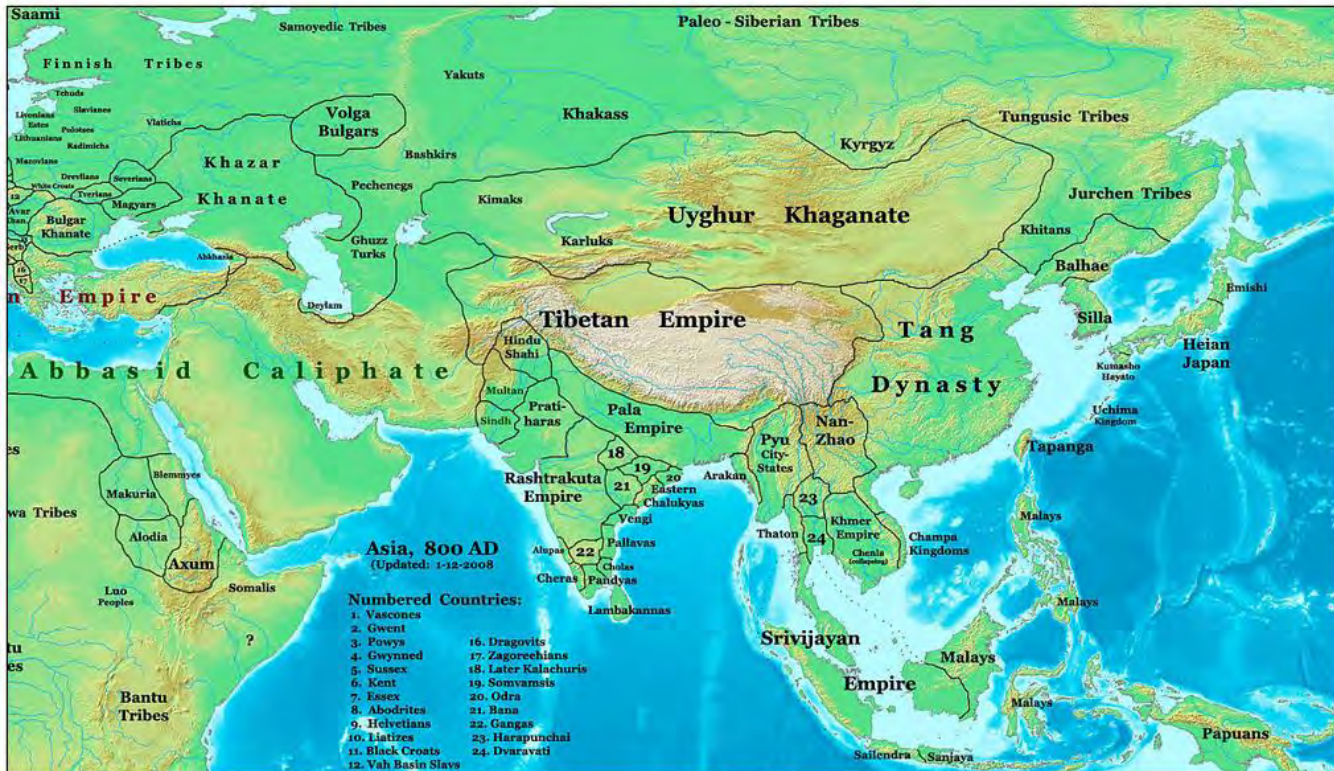


- ❖ All the same, it was more congenial to India's cultural intercourse with the outside world. Even though the Arabs invaded India, they failed to establish their permanent government. Kingdom lasted for 2 years only and Qasim died in 715.
- ❖ The Arabs failed to penetrate further into India. When Muhammad conquered Sindh, he found it absolutely impossible to convert all Hindus to Islam or put them to death.
- ❖ Therefore, he **accepted Hindus as Zimmis** and sought the permission of Hajjaj for the same, which was granted.
- ❖ The Turks, who followed the Arabs in India afterwards, thus, could find a **ready-made solution** and the Hindus were allowed to live in an Islamic state after the **payment of Jizya**.
- ❖ Zimmis were those Jews and Christians who used to live under Muslim rulership. They paid a tax called Jizya and gained the right to be protected by Muslim rulers.

**Chachnama (Tareekh al-Hind wa a's-Sind in Arabic):**

- ❖ Chahnama, written in **Persian language**, was the primary and most authentic source on the history of indigenous ruling dynasty of Sindh.
- ❖ It was composed by an anonymous author, possibly a camp-follower of Muhammad bin Qasim, and titled Chachnama after the name of the founder of the ruling house of Sind.
- ❖ The source of colonial understanding of the origins of Islam and the Islamic conquests in the Indian subcontinent.

800 AD



### Impacts of Arab Invasion:

- ❖ The Arabs did not break the military strength of India and therefore, did not pave the way for the conquest of India by Islam. They simply drew **closer the contacts of Indians with the Arabs and the Islamic world.**
- ❖ Besides, they were the first who established the rule of Islam in India and converted Hindus to Islam in quite large numbers.
- ❖ The Arabs did not impress Indians culturally. Instead, they themselves were influenced by the culture of India.
- ❖ The Arabs learnt much from fine arts, astrology, science of medicines and literature of India.
- ❖ They employed Hindu artists and architects to construct their buildings. They also learnt from Buddhist and Hindu philosophy, literature and religious ideals.

### Ground for the Battle:

- ❖ By the 10th century, the Caliphas (**the Abbasid**) became mere nominal sovereigns and a number of independent dynasties established.
- ❖ Its place was taken by a series of states ruled by Turks, initially they entered the empire as a palace guard.
- ❖ He assumed the title of Amir ul Umra and later Sultan.
- ❖ Empire and states rose and fell in rapid succession.



### India:

- ❖ For 3 centuries after the earliest Arabs invasion, India was free from foreign invasions.
- ❖ Even though Sind became the principality of Arabs they failed to organize a good government.
- ❖ The credit to establish a **permanent Muslims government** in India goes to **Turks**, one of the Arab races. The Turks have exercised significant influence on the history of Islam.
- ❖ Break up of Pratiharas empire led to political uncertainty in North India.

### Samanids Empire

- ❖ Transoxiana, Khorasan and parts of Iran ruled by the Samanids (Iranian).
- ❖ They were supported by Ghazis (fighters as well as missionaries).



- ❖ They fought a battle continually with non-muslim (Turks).
- ❖ In course of time many Turks became Muslim, and emerged as the **greatest defenders and crusaders of Islam.**

## The Ghaznavids

### Ahmad:

- ❖ He was the **ruler of Afghanistan** of the Samanid Dynasty.
- ❖ He purchased a Turkish slave Alaptagin.
- ❖ Later, he appointed Alaptagin as the governor of Balkh (Afghanistan).

### Alaptigin:

- ❖ He established an independent kingdom with its capital Ghaznavids.

### Sabuktigin (977 – 998):

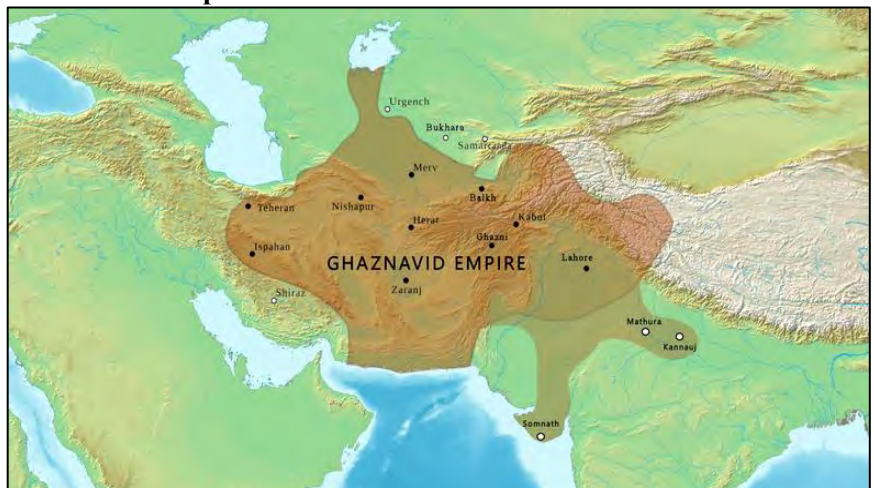
- ❖ He was a slave and son-in-law of Alaptagin.
- ❖ He set aside the dynasty of his master and founded an **independent Turkish Dynasty** at Ghazni in Afghanistan in 977 AD.
- ❖ The **Hindu Shahi king Jayapala** invaded Ghazni in alliance with the son of the former governor of Ghazni under the Samanid ruler.
- ❖ Jayapala faced humiliating defeat and subsequently signed a treaty.

### Mahmud of Ghazni (998 - 1030):

- ❖ He was the eldest son of Sabuktigin.
- ❖ He led numerous invasions to India - 17 raids into India and plundered and destroyed temples.
- ❖ He brought the Turks into direct intimate contact with the country.
- ❖ He ascended the throne at Ghazni and was considered as a **hero of Islam.**
- ❖ He was associated with the **renaissance of Persian spirit.**

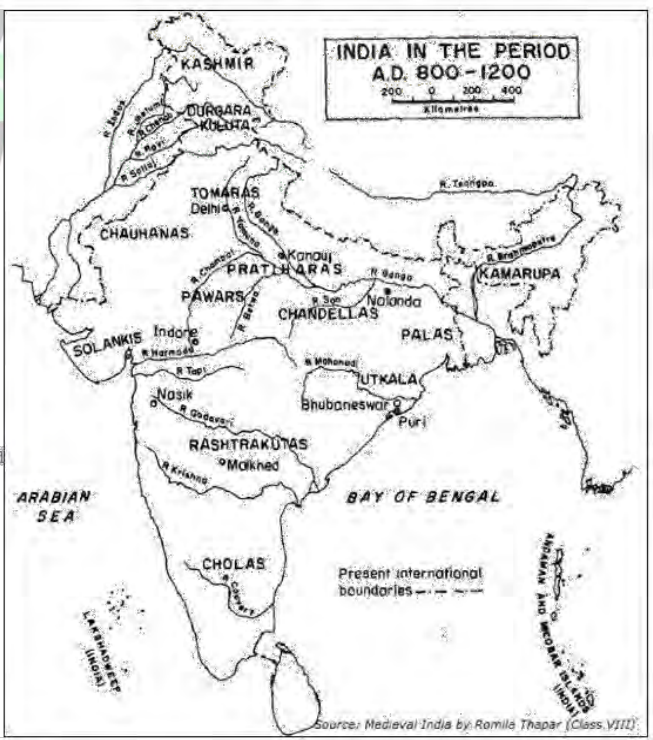
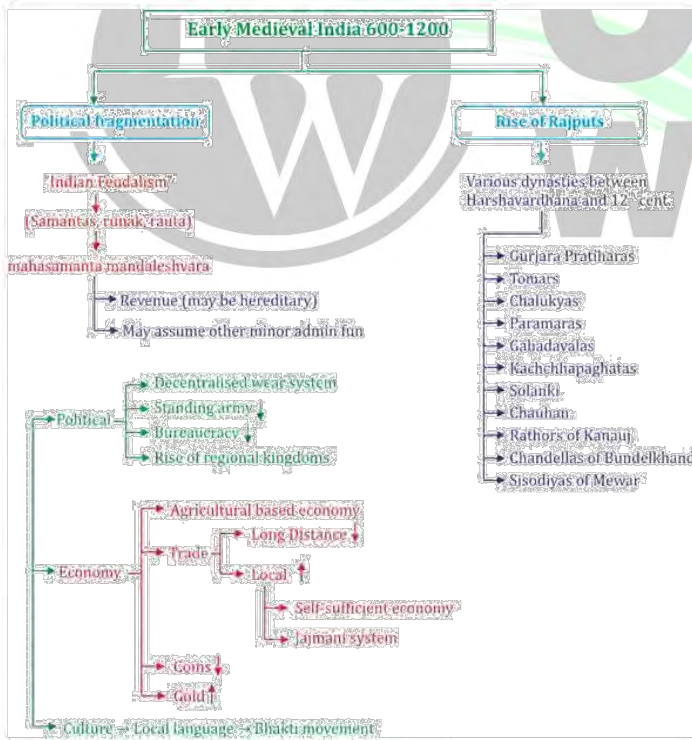
- **Firdausi** was his court laureate and the author of **Shahnama ("Book of Kings")**. Firdausi is celebrated as one of the most influential figures of Persian literature and one of the greatest in the history of literature. He was also known to be popular as **'Homer' of the east.**

- ❖ Reason of Raids:
  - To accumulate wealth.



- To spread Islam and to destroy temples. He was also called **Shikan**, destroyer of Images.
- Also, to not give time to Indian rulers to unite.

1000 AD





### Why did Mahmud Ghazni invaded the Indian Subcontinent?

- ❖ The chief motive of Mahmud's invasions in India was the desire to sense its **wealth**. He knew that India was **famous for its wealth** and Mahmud wanted to loot the wealth of India.
- ❖ Some historians have interpreted that Mahmud was religious. He wanted to invade India in order to **popularize Islam**. But this is a less acceptable argument.
- ❖ He wanted to invade India also to get access to a strong contingent of **war elephants**.
- ❖ But as far as possible he wanted to avoid establishing his direct rule in any part of India that is why his invasions were directed against rich cities and wealthy temples rather than against the seats of Government impregnable forts.
- ❖ He raided practically the whole of northern India but he took no steps to find authority in this region.
- ❖ Mahmud led his expeditions from Kashmir, in the north to Kanauji in the east to Samanthal in the west. Historians are divided in their opinion regarding the number of Mahmud's invasions of India.
  - The most accepted view is that Mahmud attacked India seventeen times. So, his rides were confined to rich cities and temples. His real objective was the **military glory and wealth of India**.

#### Assignment/Self-study:

##### Political conditions in India at that time:

- ❖ The political condition in India on the eve of Mahmud Ghazni's invasions was neither very good nor very bad.
- ❖ The land was divided into numerous small states. However, the division of India was not its primary weakness. India was a subcontinent and it was not possible to keep it under one rule at that time.
- ❖ Besides, even after its division, there had been quite a few extensive kingdoms at that time which were powerful enough to meet the challenge of foreign aggressors.
- ❖ The weakness of India was not its division into many states but constant fighting among them for power and glory.
- ❖ On the northwestern frontier there were two principal kingdoms. To the south, the **Shia kingdom of Multan** and the principality of Mansard, which was under the control of Arabs. To the east the **kingdoms of Delhi; Pratiharas at Kanauji and Solankis in Gujarat**.
- ❖ **Administrative conditions during invasion of Mahmud of Ghazni:**
  - The form of government was **feudal monarchy**.
  - There were **no political units and the monarchs** were less interested in the welfare of the common people.
  - The people were gradually becoming indifferent to political matters.
  - The **Rajputs** had a monopoly on **civil and military** appointments.
  - The cumulative effort of this was that the masses paid scant respect to the rise and fall of ruling dynasties.

#### Assignment/Self-Study:

##### Society of India prior to the Invasion:

- ❖ Indian society was **divided into castes and sub-castes** and generally inter-dining and inter-caste marriages were not permitted. Yet, the caste system had not grown very much rigid.

- ❖ Inter Caste marriages, change of caste and absorption of foreigners among Hindus was possible.
- ❖ Women did not enjoy equal rights with men, yet they occupied a respectable place in society.
- ❖ There was **no Purdah system**. Women received education, participated in social and religious functions and even in administration and had the right to choose their husbands. However, while a man could marry several women, the women enjoyed no such right.
- ❖ Besides, the practice of **Sati was getting popular** among the ruling class. The people observed high morality and the common people led a simple life.
- ❖ **Education** was also widely prevalent and besides religious education all other subjects of study were also taught to the students.
  - Nalanda, Vallabhi, Kashi, Kanchi etc. were the great centers of learning at that time.
  - Hinduism was the most popular religion, though Buddhism was also fairly widespread.
- ❖ **Economically**, India was prosperous. Agriculture, trade and commerce, handicrafts and industries were all in a **progressive stage** which had brought all- round prosperity to India. Of course, the major share of this prosperity was enjoyed by the rich minority class, yet, the common people did not suffer economic hardships.
- ❖ Thus, politically, economically and culturally India did not suffer from extreme weakness at the time of the invasion of the Arabs.
- ❖ Yet, the rivalry and constant fighting of different rulers among themselves, indifference to improvement of their arms and fighting skill as compared to foreigners and lack of emotional unity for the country as a whole were the weaknesses which were slowly coming up and, when these were not attended to properly, it weakened India in the coming centuries and, finally, led to her defeat.

### Campaigns of Mahmud Ghazni:

- ❖ The first opponents of Mahmud Ghazni were **Jayapala of the Shaha dynasty**.
- ❖ Mahmud destroyed some frontier regions of Jayapala and when the latter planned a counter attack in 1001, he tried to check his advance near Peshawar.

### Battle of Waihind 1000 CE:

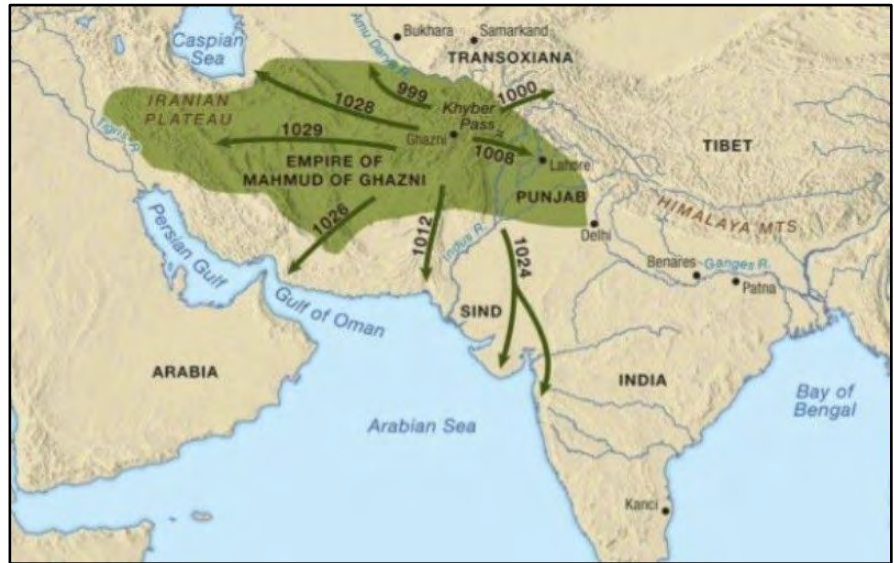
- ❖ Mahmud followed the tactics of his father and he divided his army into several units, sent them in succession in order to harass the enemy and this tired out the Shaha ruler, ultimately defeating him.
- ❖ Jayapala could not tolerate the humiliation and therefore he abdicated the throne in favor of his son Anandapala in 1002 A.D and jayapala burnt himself.
- ❖ In 1004 - 1006 Ghazni attacked the rulers of Multan.
- ❖ Mahmud fought two wars with Anandapala too in 1006 A.D and Anandapala was defeated by Mahmud.

### Battle of Waihind II 1008 AD:

- ❖ A more serious encounter took place in 1008 A.D **near Peshawar** where Anandapala as the head of the confederate force of Ujjain, Gwalior, Kandhar, Kanauji, Delhi and Ajmer made a determined stand but Anandapala with his associate was defeated by Muhammad and the latter captured Nagarkot and went away to Ghazni with a large quantity of treasure and gold.

### Patronage:

- **Alberuni:** He was a Central Asian scholar, wrote **Kitab ul Hind**.
- **Firdausi:** He was a Persian poet also, called “Homer of the East”, he wrote **Shahnama**.
- **Utbi:** He was the court historian of Mahmud, wrote **Kitab ul Yamni**.
- ❖ **In 1014** he attacked Delhi and took Thaneshwar. He also burnt the temple of Mathura.
- ❖ **In 1018** he sacked Kannauj defeating the **Chandella King Vidyadhara**, also, he defeated and killed Hindu Shahi rulers Trilochanpala and Bhipala and got Rahib and Lahore.
- ❖ In 1025 he attacked and plundered the Somnath Temple Gujarat (Shiva Temple) in Kathiawar Saurashtra, nearly 50,000 people lost their lives.
- ❖ He left Somnath when he realized that the Chaulukyan ruler Bhima I was planning an attack. Later, Bhima I repaired the Somnath Temple.
- ❖ In 1026 he fought against Jats for conspiring against him.
- ❖ After the death of Mahmud, a powerful empire, the Seljuk empire came to being.



PW Mobile APP: <https://physicswala.page.link/?type=contact-us&data=open>

For PW Website: <https://www.physicswallah.live/contact-us>

# **DAILY CLASS NOTES**

---

## **MEDIEVAL HISTORY**

**Lecture - 09**  
**Delhi Sultanate I**



## Delhi Sultanate II

### Impact of the Arab Invasion:

- ❖ The Sanskrit texts - the **Brahma Siddhanta** and the **Khanda-Khadhyak** were translated into Arabic language during the period of Khalifa Al-Mansur.
- ❖ The Arabs learnt the philosophy of Sanyas and Tapa from the Indians.
- ❖ The Arabs also gained the **knowledge of numericals** and profited from the science of medicine of Indians.
- ❖ Not only the Arabs but Europeans also drew advantage from the knowledge of the Indians in the eighth and ninth centuries A.D. because of their contacts with them through the Arabs.
- ❖ They themselves and through them the western world also drew advantage in many fields by coming in contact with the Indians, which also justifies the view that by that time the Indian people and their culture had not lost their vigor and were in a position to contribute constructively to the culture and knowledge of the world.

### Tahqiq-i-Hind:

- ❖ **Tahqiq-i-Hind** also known as **Kitab-ul-Hind** was written in Arabic language by Abu Raihan Muhammad Ibn Ahmad Al-Biruni-al-Khwarizm or simply **Al-Biruni**.
- ❖ Al-Biruni accompanied the invading hordes of **Mahmud Ghaznavi** to the Indo-Gangetic valley as a freelance observer in 1018-19. He stayed behind in India for a number of years.
- ❖ He visited various parts of India. He studied the **language, religion and philosophy** of the Hindus. He compiled his observations and his knowledge about India in his book **Tahqiq-i-Hind or Kitab-ul-Hind**. It was later translated into Persian language.
- ❖ Tahqiq-i-Hind was translated from Persian into English by Edward C. Sachau with the title **Alberuni's India**.

### Tarikh-i-Yamini:

- ❖ Utbi was the author of **Tarikh-i-Yamini** or **Kitab-ul-Yamini**. He was attached to the personal staff of Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni.
- ❖ This book is a fine piece of Arabic literature. This book throws light on the rise of Ghaznavid power under Sabuktigin. It also explains the nature of military exploits of Sultan Mahmud up to 1020 AD.

### Shahnama of Firdausi - 'The Book of Kings':

- ❖ It is one of the world's longest epic poems, written by the **Persian poet Firdausi** (c. 977 - 1010 CE).
- ❖ It is regarded as the national epic of Iran, Afghanistan, and Tajikistan.
- ❖ It consisted of some 50,000 "**distichs**" or **couplets** (two-line verses).
- ❖ It contains the **mythical** and to some extent the **historical past** of the Persian Empire from the creation of the world until the Muslim conquest in the seventh century.





- ❖ It has a central importance in Persian culture and Persian language, and is regarded as a literary masterpiece.
- ❖ It traces the historical links between the beginnings of the religion and the death of the last **Sasanian Emperor**, which brought an end to the Zoroastrian influence in Iran.

### Reasons for the Turkish conquest of North India:

- ❖ The lure for plunder was made by the successors of Mahmud.
- ❖ Muslim traders were allowed.
- ❖ Process of interaction between Hindu and Islam started.
- ❖ Towards the end of the 12th century, another group of **Turkish men** shattered the power of **Seljuk Turks**. Mahmud died and the **Seljuk Empire** came into being.

### Meanwhile in India - The Rajputs:

- ❖ Break-up of the Pratihara Empire, a number of Rajput states came into existence in North India. Most important of these were the:
  - Gahadavalas of Kanauj,
  - Paramaras of Malwa,
  - Chauhans of Ajmer.

### The Rajputs:

- ❖ The basis of the society during the Rajputs was the clan, every clan trace their descent from a common ancestor, real or imaginary.
- ❖ Rajputs generally dominated a compact territory.
- ❖ They were attached to land; family and honor, which was the characteristic of the Rajputs.
- ❖ The sense of brotherhood and egalitarianism prevailed among Rajputs, but this made it difficult to maintain discipline among them.
- ❖ Tendency to form exclusive groups is their basic weakness, each claiming superiority over the others.
- ❖ The Rajputs treat war as a sport, the ideal ruler was one who led out his armies after celebrating the Dussehra festival to invade the territories of his neighbors.
- ❖ They are champions of Hinduism.
- ❖ This period was regarded as marking a climax in temple-building activity in north India.

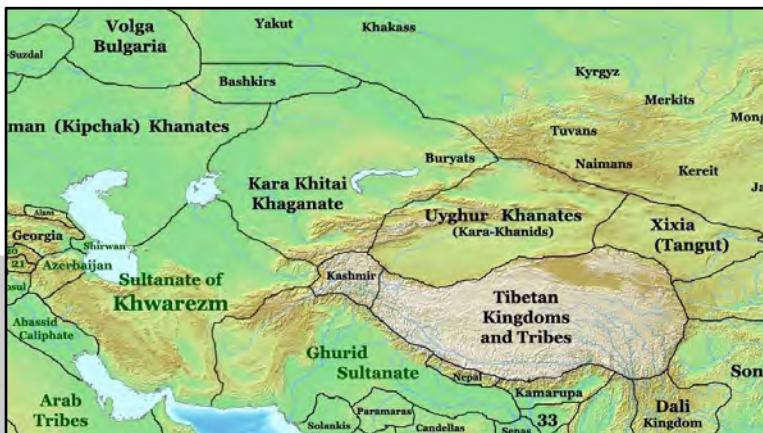
### The Turkish Conquest of North India:

- ❖ In the vacuum two new power rose:
  1. The **Khwarizmi Empire** based on Iran
  2. The **Ghurid Empire** (vassal of Ghazini) based on Ghur in North-west Afghanistan.
- ❖ The Central Asian ambition of the **Ghurids** was limited by Khwarizmi. **Khorasan**, which was the bone of contention between the two, was conquered by Khwarizm Shah.
- ❖ This left no option for the Ghurids but to look for expansion towards India.

### Shahabuddin Muhammad/Muhammad Ghori (Muizz-ud-din Mohammad Bin Sam):

- ❖ In AD 1173, **Shahabuddin Muhammad (1173–1202)**, also popularly known as “**Muhammad of Ghor**”, ascended the throne of Ghazni while his elder brother (Ghiyath ud din) was ruling at Ghur.

- ❖ The Ghoris were not strong enough to meet the growing power and strength of the central Asian empire. Thus, they realized that they could gain nothing in Central Asia. This forced Ghoris to turn towards India to fulfill his expansionist ambitions.
- ❖ Unlike Mahmud of Ghazni, Muhammad Ghori was very much interested in establishing a permanent empire in India and not merely looting its wealth.
- ❖ His campaigns were well organized and after conquering each territory, he left a general behind to govern it in his absence.
- ❖ His invasions resulted in the permanent establishment of the **Turkish Sultanate** in the region lying north of the Vindhya Mountains.
- ❖ Muhammad Ghori led his first expedition in AD 1175.
  - **1175 - 78:** He marched against **Multan** and freed it from its ruler. In the same campaign he captured **Uchch (North Sindh)** from the Bhatti Rajputs.
  - **1178 - Gujarat:** Solanki ruler of Gujarat, **Bhima II** defeated him at the **Battle of Kayadara/Anhilwara**.
- ❖ Ghori realized the need of creating a suitable base in Punjab.
  - He launched a campaign against the Ghaznavid possessions in Punjab.
  - Peshawar was conquered in AD 1179–80 and Lahore in AD 1186.
  - The forts of Sialkot and Debol were captured.





- ❖ Thus, by AD 1190 having secured Multan, Sind and Punjab, Muhammad Ghori had paved the way for a further thrust into the Gangetic Doab.
- ❖ At the same time, the **power of Chauhan had steadily risen**. He captured Delhi from Tomars. The expansion of the Chauhan power brought them into conflict.

### **The First Battle of Tarain (AD 1191):**

- ❖ **Muhammad Ghori's possession of Punjab** and his attempt to advance into the Gangetic Doab brought him into direct **conflict with the Rajput ruler Prithviraj Chauhan**.
- ❖ Prithviraj was the ruler of Delhi and Ajmer when Ghori was marching towards Delhi after conquering several parts of Punjab. Prithviraj was able to unite some Rajput states to present a united front against the common enemy. However, **Jai Chand, the ruler of Kanauj** did not join the confederation headed by Prithviraj, on account of his personal animosity.
- ❖ Muhammad Ghor had overrun many small states in Rajputana, captured Delhi and wanted to extend his control over Punjab and Ganga valley.
- ❖ The conflict started with claims of Bhatinda (Tabarhinda).
- ❖ In the first battle fought at Tarain in AD 1191, Ghori's army was routed and he narrowly escaped death. Prithviraj conquered Bhatinda but he made no efforts to garrison it effectively.
- ❖ This gave Ghori an opportunity to re-assemble his forces and make preparations for another advance into India.

### **The Second Battle of Tarain (1192):**

- ❖ Muhammad Ghori was determined to establish his authority over India. He was not disheartened over his defeat. He wanted to avenge his humiliation.
- ❖ He reorganized and strengthened his army. With a large cavalry of unrivaled marks-men, he again descended the plains of Tarain in 1192.
- ❖ Prithviraj again formed a confederation of the **North Indian Kings**.
- ❖ Nevertheless, Jaichand of Kannauj, not only kept himself aloof from the battle but is also said to have helped Muhammad Ghori in order to wreck his vengeance on Prithviraj.
- ❖ Conflicting accounts of the defeat and ultimate fate of Prithviraj as well as Muhammad Ghori are given.
- ❖ The numerical strength of the Rajput forces was far greater than Ghori's army which, however, was better organized.
- ❖ The fighting quality of the Turkish cavalry decided the issue. The bulky Indian forces were no match against the superior organization, skill and speed of the Turkish cavalry.
- ❖ The Turkish cavalry was using **two superior techniques**:
  - The first was the **horse-shoe** which gave their horses a long life and protected their hooves.
  - The second was the **use of iron stirrup** which gave a good hold to the horse rider and a better striking power in the battle. A large number of Indian soldiers lost their lives. Prithviraj was captured.
- ❖ **Chandbardai**, the court poet of Prithviraj has presented an alternate view:
  - According to him Prithviraj was taken to Ghori as a prisoner. In a show of exhibiting his skill as an archer, the blind Prithviraj shot a sound-guided arrow at Muhammad Ghori killing him instantly. Prithviraj later committed suicide.



- ❖ This battle is regarded as one of the turning points in Indian History. The crux of the defeat of Prithviraj is that the sovereignty of a considerable part of India passed into the hands of the foreigners.
- ❖ The sovereignty of the Rajputs ended to a great extent. The Turkish army captured the fortresses of Hansi, Sarsuti and Samana. Then they moved forward, running over Delhi and Ajmer.

### **Battle of Chandwar (1194):**

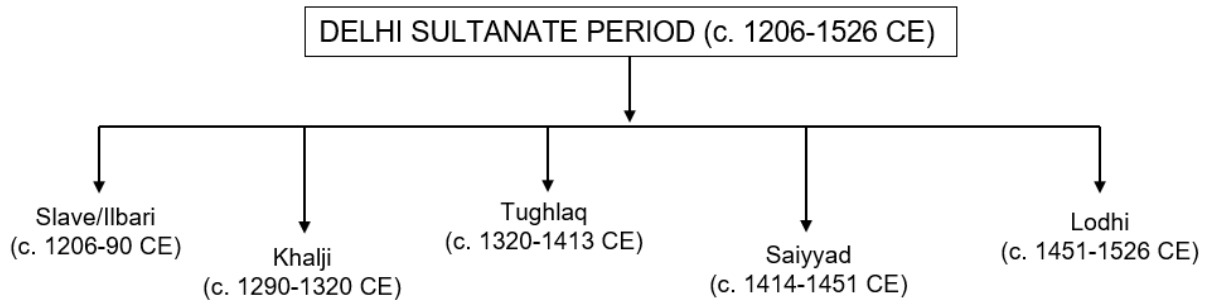
- ❖ After Tarain, Ghori returned to Ghazni, leaving the affairs of India in the hands of Qutbuddin Aibak.
- ❖ In 1194 AD **Muhammad Ghori** again returned to India. He crossed Yamuna with 50,000 cavalry and moved towards Kanauj. He gave a crushing defeat to **Jai Chand (king of Gahadavalas) at Chandwar near Kannauj.**
- ❖ Thus, the battle of Tarain and Chandwar laid the foundations of Turkish rule in Northern India.
- ❖ **Defeat of Rajputs (Reasons):**
  - The rise of feudalism affects the political and military organization of the states.
  - The lack of organization and leadership.
  - The Rajputs kingdoms were small and scattered.
  - They lacked unity.

### **Gujarat Bundelkhand, Bengal and Bihar 1195 - 1202**

- ❖ In 1195 AD, Qutbuddin Aibak captured Aligarh and Ranthambore.
- ❖ Qutbuddin Aibak attacked Bhima II (Solanki) who defeated Aibak in the first battle, however, Aibak defeated him in the next battle and got Gujarat.
- ❖ Aibak got Bundelkhand from Chandela rulers.

### **Bakhtiyar Khalji:**

- ❖ In 1197 AD he **conquered Bihar** and in 1202 AD **conquered Bengal** and destroyed universities of Nalanda and Vikramshila.
- ❖ **Minhaj-i-Siraj's 'Tabaqat-i Nasiri'** documents Bakhtiyar Khalji's sack of a Buddhist monastery.
- ❖ According to the early 17th-century Buddhist scholar Taranatha, the invaders massacred many monks at Odantapuri, and destroyed Vikramashila.
- ❖ Bakhtiyar Khalji became governor of Bengal and Bihar.
- ❖ After the battle of Tarain, Muhammad Ghori left his trusted Mamluk Qutb ud-din Aibak to serve as his viceroy while he returned to Ghazni, the capital of his extensive Ghurid Empire and died in 1206.
- ❖ Muhammad Ghori's governors:
  - Qutbuddin Aibak (Delhi)
  - Yaldiz (Ghazni)
  - Ikhtiaruddin Bakhtiyar Khalji (Bengal and Bihar)
  - Qabacha (Multan)
- ❖ In 1205 AD, the Revolt of Khokhars took place for which Ghori had to return to India to stop the revolt.
- ❖ Muhammad Ghori was killed during his return journey and after his death the Slave dynasty started under Qutbuddin Aibak.



### Mamluk Sultans:

- ❖ The **Delhi Sultanate** traced its foundation to Mamluks, who were slave soldiers usually of Turkish birth.
- ❖ Slavery in the **Central Asian Muslim culture** did not mean submission and degradation, but rather an opportunity to rise up in society and politics.
- ❖ Masters bought Turkish slave boys and groomed them to become excellent soldiers, advisers, and, luckily for some, successors. Such was the particular condition of the Mamluk Dynasty of the Delhi Sultanate.
- ❖ After battle of Tarain, Muhammad Ghori left his trusted Mamluk Qutb ud-din Aibak to serve as his viceroy while he returned to Ghazni, the capital of his extensive Ghurid Empire
- ❖ With Qutbuddin Aibak, begins the period of Mamluk Sultans or the slave dynasty. Mamluk is an Arabic word meaning “**owned**”. It was used to distinguish the imported Turkish slaves meant for military service from the lower slaves used as domestic labor or artisan.
- ❖ The Mamluk Sultans ruled from AD 1206 to 1290.

### Qutbuddin Aibak (AD 1206–1210):

- ❖ He was the founder of the Mamluk dynasty and the first sultan of the Delhi Sultanate. Most of the scholars consider Aibak as the real founder of Muslim rule in India.
- ❖ Born to Turkic parents in Turkistan. In his childhood, Aibak was sold as a slave and eventually became a slave of Muhammad of Ghor who made him **Amir-i-Akhur, the Master of Slave**. Eventually, Aibak was appointed to military command and became an able general of Muhammad of Ghor.
- ❖ In 1193 and after conquering Delhi, his master returned to Khorasan and left the consolidation of the Ghurid conquests in northwest India to him.
- ❖ When Muhammad of Ghor was assassinated in 1206, Aibak was his logical successor. He was still technically a slave, but he quickly obtained manumission.
- ❖ He **married the daughter of Taj al-Din Yalduz of Ghazni**, one of the other principal claimants to succeed Muhammad of Ghor, and, by other judiciously arranged marriages, consolidated his rule.
- ❖ Tajuddin Yalduz, the ruler of Ghazni, claimed his rule over Delhi. He defeated Yalduz and occupied Ghazni.
- ❖ Aibak had to face many revolts from Rajputs and other Indian chiefs.
- ❖ **Nasiruddin Qabacha**, the governor of Multan and Uchch, aspired for independence. Aibak was able to win over his enemies by conciliatory measures as well as a display of power.
- ❖ The successor of Jaichand, Harishchandra had driven out the Turks from Badayun and Farukhabad. Aibak re-conquered both Badayun and Farukhabad.
- ❖ Qutbuddin Aibak was brave, faithful and generous. Due to his generosity, he was known as “**Lakh Baksh**”.

- ❖ He assumed the title of **Sultan** and his capital was at **Lahore**.
- ❖ Aibak made Delhi his administrative center. From there he ruled vast lands, administered justice, and collected tribute from lesser rulers who swore fealty to the Sultanate.
- ❖ He placed upon himself the beautification of the city by building mosques, one of which was the Qutb Complex and its Qutub Minar which then stood as the tallest minaret and today a UNESCO Heritage Site.
- ❖ Aibak's reign, however, ended unexpectedly when he **fell from his horse during a game of polo and died of injuries** received during this accident in 1210 AD. He was buried in Lahore near Anarkali Bazaar.
- ❖ He constructed **two mosques**
  - Quwwat -ul- Islam at Delhi (first mosque in India)
  - Adhai-din-ka jhonpra
- ❖ Built the **first tower of Qutub Minar** to commemorate Khwaja Qutubuddin Bhaktiyar Kaki who was a famous Sufi Saint and disciple of Khwaja Moinuddin Chisti. It is also a symbol of **Turkish Victory** in India.
- ❖ **He patronized:**
  - Hasan Nizami (Taj ul Maasir)
  - Fakhruddin (Tarikh e Mubarak Shahi)



### Taj-ul-Maasir:

- ❖ **Hasan Nizami** was the author of Taj-ul-Maasir (crown of exploits). This book deals primarily with the **history of Qutb-ud-din Aibak**.
- ❖ The narrative of his book commences from years 1191-92 when Muhammad Ghori attacked India for the 2nd time to take revenge of his earlier defeat at the hands of Prithvi Raj III Chauhan, the ruler of Delhi and Ajmer.
- ❖ Taj-ul-Maasir is the first historical account of the beginning of Muslim rule in India. It thus separates the history of Delhi sultanate from that of Ghazni, Central Asia or Islam, which was otherwise the starting points of many other contemporary narratives.
- ❖ The languages used are both Arabic and Persian and, in both prose, and poetry forms.

### Tabaqat-i-Nasiri:

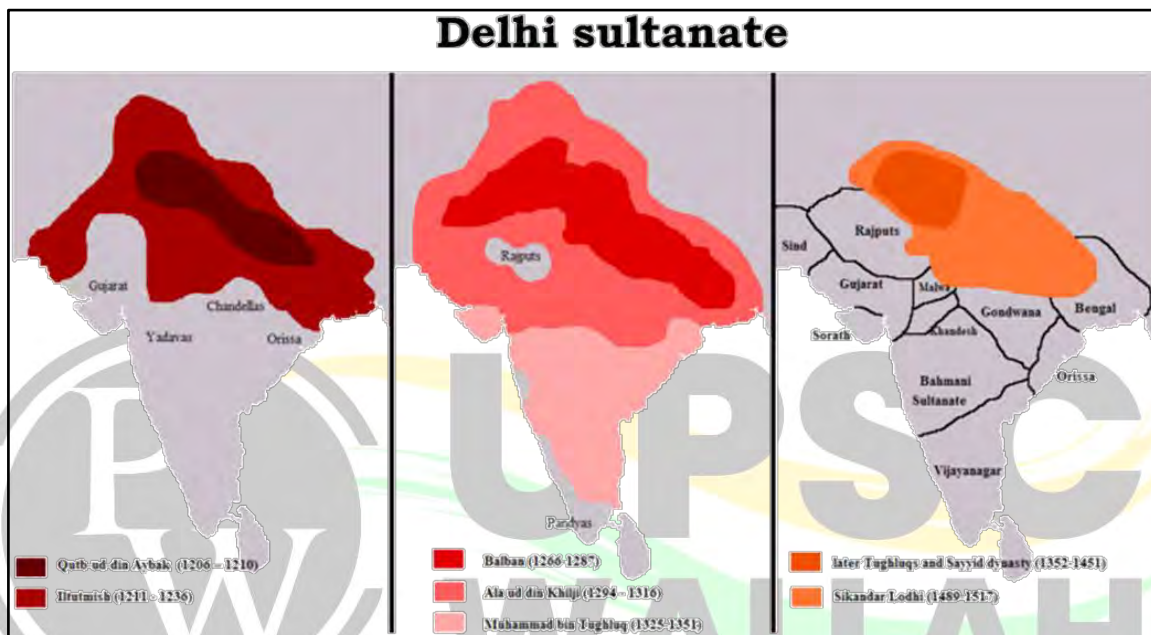
- ❖ This book was written by **Minhaj-ud-din Siraj**. He accompanied Sultan Iltutmish to Delhi from Uchh in 1228 AD and was patronized by the Sultan.
- ❖ Minhaj was appointed as **Qazi (judge) and Sadr (head of department of charity)** in Delhi by Sultan Iltutmish.
- ❖ This book covers the history of Delhi Sultanate up to 1259 AD.
- ❖ It is originally **written in Persian** and was translated into English by H.G. Raverty.

### Khazain-ul-Futuh:

- ❖ This book was written by **Amir Khusrau**.
- ❖ It describes the conquests and other achievements of Ala-ud-din Khalji.
- ❖ It was **translated into English** by **M. Habib** with the title - The Campaigns of Ala-ud-din Khalji.

### After Death of Qutbuddin Aibak (AD 1206–1210):

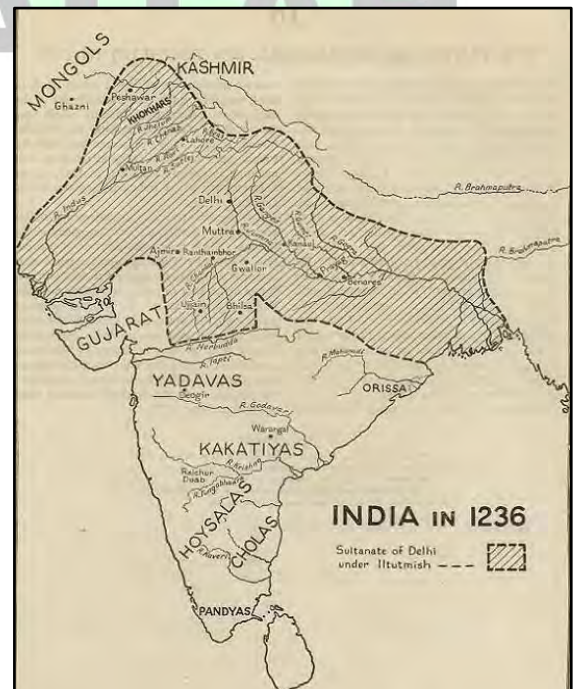
- ❖ Division followed the demise of Sultan Aibak. After his death a few amirs raised his son **Aram Shah** to the throne in Lahore. But Aram Shah was an incapable ruler and the Turkish amirs opposed him.
- ❖ The Turkish chiefs of Delhi invited the governor of Badaun (son-in-law of Qutbuddin Aibak) “Iltutmish” to come to Delhi.
- ❖ Aram Shah proceeded against him at the head of the army from Lahore to Delhi but Iltutmish defeated him and became the Sultan with the name of Shamsuddin.
- ❖ The credit of **consolidating the Delhi Sultanate** lies largely with him. He was able to establish the independence of the Delhi Sultanate under the Mamluk dynasty.



### Shams ud-Din Iltutmish (1210 - 1236 AD):

- ❖ Shams ud-Din Iltutmish (1210 - 1236 AD) belonged to the **Ilbari tribe** in the Eurasian steppes of Turkestan.
- ❖ While his association with the Turkic nobility of that tribe can be seen as dubious and anachronistic, it is possible that he was indeed high-born.
- ❖ Iltutmish was sold into slavery at an early age, reportedly after being sold by his kinsmen to slave merchants. He was apparently handsome and particularly intelligent, causing jealousy among his brothers.
- ❖ The tradition goes that the intelligence, sagacity and handsome appearance of Iltutmish excited the jealousy of his brothers who sold him into slavery at an early age.
- ❖ Eventually Aibak bought Iltutmish. Iltutmish rose quickly in Aibak's service, earned the **title Amir Tamghach**, married Aibak's daughter, and served in succession as the Governor of Tabarhind, Gwalior and Baran.
- ❖ When Iltutmish ascended the throne, he found himself surrounded with many problems.
- ❖ Other commanders of Muhammad Ghori like **Yaldauz, Qubacha and Ali Mardan rose in defiance again**. The chiefs of Jalore and Ranthambore joined Gwalior and Kalinjar in declaring their independence.
- ❖ New danger was coming after the conquest of Ghazni by the **Khwarizm Empire**.

- ❖ Apart from this, the rising power of Mongols under **Temujin/Genghis Khan** threatened the North West Frontier of the Sultanate.
- ❖ Iltutmish took up the task of consolidating his position.
- ❖ He defeated Yalduz in 1215 AD in the Battle of Tarain.
- ❖ In 1217 AD, he drove away Qabacha from Punjab.
- ❖ In AD 1220, when **Genghis Khan** destroyed the Khwarizm empire, Iltutmish realized the political necessity of avoiding a confrontation with the Mongols.
- ❖ Thus, when **Jalaluddin Manggabarani**, the son of the Shah of Khwarizm, while escaping from the Mongols, sought shelter at Iltutmish's court, Iltutmish turned him away. Consequently, Mongols turned westwards rather than India. He thus saved the Sultanate from destruction by the Mongols.
- ❖ From 1225 AD onwards, Iltutmish engaged his armies in suppressing the disturbances in the East.
- ❖ Expedition of Iltutmish against Chalukyas of Gujarat failed.
- ❖ In 1226–27 AD Iltutmish sent an army under his son Nasiruddin Mahmud which **defeated Iwaz Khan** and brought Bengal and Bihar back.
- ❖ He launched a campaign against the Rajput chiefs, in 1226 AD Ranthambore was captured and in 1231 AD he established his authority over **Mandor, Jalore, Bayana and Gwalior**.
- ❖ During his reign the expansion of the Sultanate went to different directions, towards Malwa and Ujjain to the southwest, and every land north of Vindhyas.
- ❖ He attacked **Nagda (Mewar's capital)** but had to retreat because of the advent of Chalukyas of Gujarat. Then he launched an expedition against them but failed.
- ❖ There is no doubt that **Iltutmish completed the unfinished work of Aibak**. The Delhi Sultanate under his reign covered a sizable territory.
- ❖ He separated the Delhi Sultanate from Ghazni, Ghor and Central Asian politics.
- ❖ Iltutmish strived to survive and to conquer that earned him the powerful **Abbasid Caliphate's seal of recognition** (the Mansur - letter of recognition/ investiture) as Sultan of Delhi and a prominent power in India.
- ❖ Although a Muslim, Iltutmish set the tone of **religious tolerance** as part of the Delhi Sultanate's survival.
- ❖ He did face pressure from extremist Muslims to convert the Hindus, but he resisted and insisted on toleration as necessary to preserve the country's unity and stability. He believes forcing conversion meant rebellion of most of their people.
- ❖ He was a far-sighted ruler and he **consolidated and organized** the newly formed Turkish Sultanate.
- ❖ Besides this, he also organized his trusted nobles or officers into a **group of "Forty" (Turkan-i-Chahalgani)**.





❖ **Turkan-i-Chahalgani:**

- These were Turkish amirs (nobles) who advised and helped the Sultan in administering the Sultanate.
- After the death of Iltutmish, this group assumed great power in its hands.
- For a few years they decided on the selection of Sultans one after the other.
- The group was finally **eliminated by Balban.**

❖ He also introduced the **Iqtadari System.**

❖ He patronized **Minhaj ul Siraj**, who wrote **Tabaqat-i-Nasiri.**

❖ **Influences of outsiders:**

- ❖ Iltutmish introduced **Chalisa**, who were outsiders. These nobles were called **Umrah.**
- ❖ Orthodox Islamic Scholars were called **Ulema.**
- ❖ Each of the Sultans have been under the influence of these groups. Successful Sultans knew how to control them.

**Minhaj al-Siraj Juzjani:**

- ❖ He was a 13th-century Persian historian born in the region of Ghur in 1193.
- ❖ In 1227, Juzjani migrated to Uch then to Delhi.
- ❖ He was the principal historian for the Mamluk Sultanate of Delhi.
- ❖ He wrote about the Ghurid dynasty.
  - He wrote the **Tabaqat-i Nasiri** (1260 CE) for Sultan Nasiruddin Mahmud Shah of Delhi
- ❖ He died in 1266.

**Iqta System:**

- ❖ It was an assignment of land in lieu of Salary.
- ❖ The Iqtadars were transferable.
- ❖ **The Iqtadar’s responsibilities:**
  - Maintain Law and Order
  - Collect revenue
  - After deduction of salary and expenses surplus to be sent to state
- ❖ Each Iqta was further divided into Shiq, Shiqs into Parganas, and Parganas into Gaons.

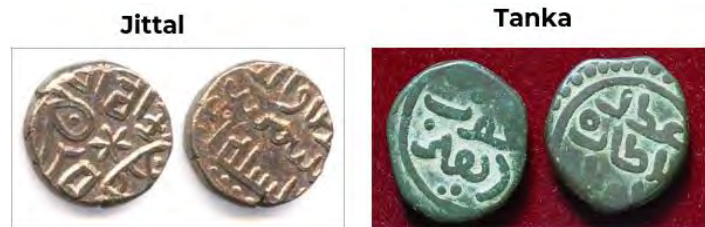
Unit	In charge
Iqta	Iqtadar
Shiq	Shiqdar
Pargana	Amil
Gaon	Chowdhury

- ❖ To affect greater control over the conquered areas Iltutmish granted Iqtas (land assignments in lieu of cash salaries) to his Turkish officers on a large scale.
- ❖ The recipients of “iqtas” called the “**iqtadars**” **collected the land revenue** from the territories under them.
- ❖ Out of this they maintained an armed contingent for the service of the state, enforced law and order and met their own expenses.

- ❖ Iltutmish realized the economic potential of the Doab and the Iqtas were distributed mainly in this region. This secured for Iltutmish the financial and administrative control over one of the most prestigious regions of North India
- ❖ Iltutmish made a significant contribution in giving shape to administrative institutions such as Iqtas, army and currency system.
- ❖ He gave the Sultanate two of its basic (Arabic coinage) coins - the **silver 'Tanka'** and the **copper 'Jittal'**.

### End of Iltutmish:

- ❖ The self-made Mamluk Sultan Iltutmish's reign ended in 1236.
- ❖ His son who succeeded him, however, ruled with tyranny and before long he was murdered. **Iltutmish's daughter Raziya** then took over as the new Sultana of Delhi.



### Art and Architecture during Iltutmish:

- ❖ During his dominion in Badaun, Iltutmish built the **city's fort (Kotla)** and the **Jama Masjid Shamsi** (great Friday Mosque) of the city, which remained the biggest and most famous Mosque in Medieval India until the expansion of Delhi's Jama Masjid in Alauddin's time and is still second largest with the largest Mosque Dome.
- ❖ Iltutmish built several **Khanqas (monasteries) and Dargahs (graves)** for Sufi saints, as Sufism was dominant in the Deccan.
- ❖ He also commenced the structure of Hamid ud-din's Khanaqa, and built the **Gandhak-ki-Baoli**, a stepwell for the Sufi saint, Qutbuddin Bakhtiar Kaki, who moved to Delhi during his reign.
- ❖ Near the Gandha-ki Baoli, Shams ud-din also built the **Hauz-i-Shamsi**, a water tank (a popular means for the welfare of pilgrims), which he erected in 1230 after the Prophet Muhammad was claimed to have appeared in his dream and led him there.
- ❖ Iltutmish claimed to have found the footprint of the Buraq, the prophet's mount, at the site. The site also encompasses the **Jahaz Mahal** standing on its edge, used by later Mughal Emperors
- ❖ He built colleges:
  - **Nasriya Madrasa**
  - **Musiya Madrasa**
- ❖ He also **completed the Qutub Minar** in Delhi.
- ❖ He is called as the **father of tomb building** (Sultangarhi in Delhi).



Jama masjid Shamsi

Qutub Minar

Gandhak ki Baoli

### Raziya Sultan (1205 –1240):

- ❖ The problem of a successor troubled Iltutmish during his last days. Iltutmish did not consider any of his sons worthy of the throne.
- ❖ His own choice was his daughter Raziya hence he nominated her as his successor.
- ❖ Razia was a favorite of her father, and as a child was allowed to be present around him while he dealt with affairs of state.
- ❖ Later, like some other princesses, she was trained to administer a kingdom if required, in the absence of her father. Her abilities and diligence commended Razia to Iltutmish and made her a confirmed favorite with him.
- ❖ But after his death his son **Ruknuddin Firoz** ascended the throne with the help of (Shah Turkan) army leaders. However, with the support of the people of Delhi and some military leaders, Raziya soon ascended the throne. Raziya Sultan was the only female Sultana. (Firuz and Shah Turkan were killed)
- ❖ Started holding court with her face unveiled. She was very popular among the masses. She was **married to Altunia**
- ❖ Despite her obvious qualities, Raziya did not fare significantly better primarily because of her attempts to create a **counter nobility of non-Turks** and invited the wrath of the **Turkish amirs**.
- ❖ They were particularly incensed over her decision to appoint the Abyssinian, Malik Jamaluddin Yaqut, as the **amir-i-akhur (master of the horses)**; the recruitment of a few other non-Turks to important posts further inflamed matters.
- ❖ The nobility realized that, though a woman, Raziya was not willing to be a puppet in their hands, therefore the nobles started revolting against her in the provinces.
- ❖ In 1240, Bhatinda rebellion broke out under Altunia and eventually they **murdered Yakut and imprisoned Razia**.
- ❖ The Turkish nobles placed Bahram Shah (another son of Iltutmish) on the throne.
- ❖ Though, Razia managed her release, she was **killed by Bahram Shah**.

### Raziya's love story: A popular theme in Bollywood and TV world:

- ❖ Razia and Malik Ikhtiar-ud-din Altunia, the governor of Bathinda, were childhood friends. Some recognize them as childhood sweethearts who were strongly in love with each other.

- ❖ However, when Altunia was in Bathinda, the Turkic aristocracy spread rumors about Razia's romantic involvement with Jamal-ud-Din Yaqut, an Abyssinian Siddi (Habshi) slave.
- ❖ This triggered Altunia's jealousy and he led a rebellion against Razia, simply with the intention of getting her back.

### **Bahram Shah (c.1240–42 CE) and Alauddin Masud Shah (c.1242–46 CE):**

- ❖ Bahram Shah was killed by his own army in 1242.
- ❖ After Bahram Shah was murdered by the army, the chiefs chose Alauddin Masud Shah (son of Ruknuddin Firuz Shah) to become the next ruler of the sultanate.

### **Nasiruddin Mahmud (1246 - 1265):**

- ❖ The struggle between the sultan and the Turkish nobles following the death of Raziya Sultan continued till one of the Turkish chiefs, Ulugh Khan, Balban, gradually arrogated all power to himself and finally ascended the throne in AD 1266.

### **Balban (AD 1246–87)**

- ❖ Ghiyas ud din Balban (1266–1287) was the ninth sultan of the Mamluk dynasty of Delhi.
- ❖ He was one of the greatest Sultans of the Medieval period. His period has been marked as an illustrious chapter in the history of the Delhi sultanate
- ❖ He held the **position of naib** (deputy to Nasiruddin Mahmud a younger son of Iltutmish) and married one of his daughters to the Sultan Nasiruddin Mahmud.
- ❖ After the death of Sultan Nasiruddin Mahmud he got the throne.
- ❖ It is worthwhile to note here that about 84 year's rule of the Slave Dynasty, **Balban's rule lasted for about 40 years** i.e., 20 years as 'Naib' or **Prime Minister** but virtually the Sultan and 20 years as the Sultan of Delhi.
- ❖ In 1250, he was replaced for a while by **Imaddudin Raihan (Indian Muslim)**.
- ❖ He was from humble origins and also sent Mansur to the Khalifa.
- ❖ He was a complex of a person from humble origin to claimed relation to **Afrasiyab Dynasty** and named his sons and grandson Keiyumar, Qaiqabad (Mythical Afrasian Princes).
- ❖ He assumed the title **Zill-e-ilahi** (Shadow of God) i.e., **Divine Theory of Kingship** and **Niyabat-i-Khudai** (recipient of divine grace).
- ❖ His biggest achievement was the consolidation of the empire.
- ❖ He was a racist and excluded Indian muslim i.e., the non-turks from all important posts.
- ❖ **Balban**, like his master Iltutmish, was born in a Turkish family of **Ilbari Tribe**.
- ❖ When he was young, he was **captured by the Mongols**, carried to Ghazni and sold to Khawaja Jamal ud-din of Basra, a Sufi.
- ❖ The latter then brought him to Delhi in 1232 AD along with other slaves, and all of them were purchased by Iltutmish.
- ❖ **Balban** belonged to the **famous group of 40 (Turkan-e-Chahalgani)** of Turkish slaves of Iltutmish.
- ❖ Ghiyas ud-din made **civil and military reforms** that earned him the position of the strongest ruler between Shams ud-din Iltutmish and the later Alauddin Khalji.



- ❖ Balban was the **wazir** and heir of the last Shamsi Sultan, Nasir ud-Din.
- ❖ During the reign of Raziya Sultana, he was promoted to the post of **Amir- i-Shikar (Lord of the Hunt)**.
- ❖ He was loyal to Raziya in his early days. But later on he joined hands with the nobles who deposed Raziya Sultana from the throne of Delhi successfully.
- ❖ When Balban became the Sultan, his position was not secure. The affairs of the state had fallen into confusion as well as the prestige of the crown had sunk low due the **misrule of weak and incompetent successors of Iltutmish**.
- ❖ The powers of the nobles had increased and the majority of the members of the **famous Forty had become disloyal to the throne**.
- ❖ Many Turkish chiefs were hostile to him; they were proud, arrogant and were jealous of Balban; the royal treasury was empty and the army was not well-organized; the Mongols were looking forward for an opportunity for attacking the Sultanate, the governors of the distant provinces were also trying to become independent rulers, the Indian rulers were also ready to revolt at the smallest opportunity.
- ❖ The law-and-order situation in the area around Delhi and in the Doab region had deteriorated.
- ❖ In the Ganga-Yamuna doab and Awadh, the roads were infested with the **robbers and dacoits**, because of which the communication with the eastern areas had become difficult.
- ❖ Some of the **Rajput zamindars** had set up forts in the area, and defied the government. The Mewatis had become so bold as to plunder people up to the outskirts of Delhi.
- ❖ Such was the critical stage, when Balban had been given the responsibility to face and fight. However, he proved himself to be more than an equal for them.
- ❖ Balban adopted a **“Blood and Iron”** policy. Balban displayed great vigor and energy to follow this policy and saved Delhi. Sultanate from the shocks of internal revolts and external invasions.
- ❖ This policy implied being ruthless to the enemies, use of sword, harshness and strictness and shedding blood. It allowed use of all sorts of methods of **terrorizing the enemies and inflicting violence** upon them.
- ❖ Balban realized that problems arose on account of the weak position of the king. He therefore put forward the concept of **Divine Right of Kings** i.e., the king was the representative of God on earth and none could challenge him. The powers of the king were absolute and he was a despot. The king was there to rule and the nobles and others were there to obey him.
- ❖ He maintained his dignity by grim and serious looks. He appointed tall and fearsome bodyguards who stood round him with their swords drawn and dazzling in the sun.
- ❖ He ordered for **Sijda (prostration) and paibos (feet- kissing)** as the normal form of salutation.
- ❖ He prohibited drinking, jokes, laughing and even smiling among the courtiers and officers.
- ❖ He himself also gave up wine and merrymaking.
- ❖ He also dismissed all low-born persons from important offices of his administration.
- ❖ Thus, Balban by displaying his power, authority and dignity struck terror in the hearts of the people and made them submissive.
- ❖ This was a right step at that time for the restoration of the crown’s prestige. He also abolished “forty turks council” system which was established by Iltutmish.



### ❖ Main Characteristics of the rule:

- **Non Expansionary Rule:** just consolidation of the empire.
- **Border Management:** Chain of forts fearing mongols & soldiers appointed in Western border.
- **Foreign Policy:** When Halauq Khan killed Caliph, he made peace with him in a diplomatic way even though his Ulema was against it.
- **Law and Order:** Group of Plunderers in Haryana – Mewatis; Balban cleared forest, established Kothwals, thanas and appointed Afghanis as Policemen.

❖ Always lived in Delhi, never left Delhi.

### Administration under Balban:

- ❖ Balban organized an **efficient system of espionage** as an instrument of his despotism. He appointed reporters and news- writers in every department, in every province and district to collect information of various happenings in the state.
- ❖ Balban reorganized his army and made it strong and efficient as it was the main pillar of his despotic government.
- ❖ He appointed **Imad-ul-Mulk**, who was a competent vigilant officer, as the **Diwan- i-Ariz (minister of war)** in charge of the army.
- ❖ The minister in charge of the army was made independent of the financial control of the Wazir and he enjoyed full confidence of the Sultan. [Separated **Diwan-i-unzarat (Finance department)** from Diwan-i-arz (military department)]
- ❖ However, Balban did not introduce any revolutionary change in the military organization.
- ❖ But certainly, he raised the efficiency and morale of the Army.
- ❖ During the reign of Balban, some severe rebellions took place which he put down with a strong hand.
- ❖ The most dangerous rebellious men were the Mewatis, the people of Mewat, who were very often plundering the vicinity of Delhi. He took stern action against them. In Mewat many were killed. In the area around Badayun, Rajput strongholds were destroyed.
- ❖ The disturbances in Doab, Awadh and Katihar were also ruthlessly suppressed. Balban also secured control over Ajmer and Nagaur in eastern Rajputana but his attempts to capture Ranthambore and Gwalior failed.
- ❖ In AD 1279, encouraged by the Mongol threats and the old age of Sultan the governor of Bengal, Tughril Beg, revolted, assumed the title of Sultan and had the khutba read in his name. Balban sent his forces to Bengal and had Tughril killed. Subsequently he appointed his own son Bughra Khan as the governor of Bengal.
- ❖ By all these harsh methods, Balban controlled the situation.
  - In order to impress the people with the strength and awe of his government, Balban maintained a magnificent court.
  - Balban was undoubtedly one of the main architects of the Sultanate of Delhi, particularly of its form of government and institutions.

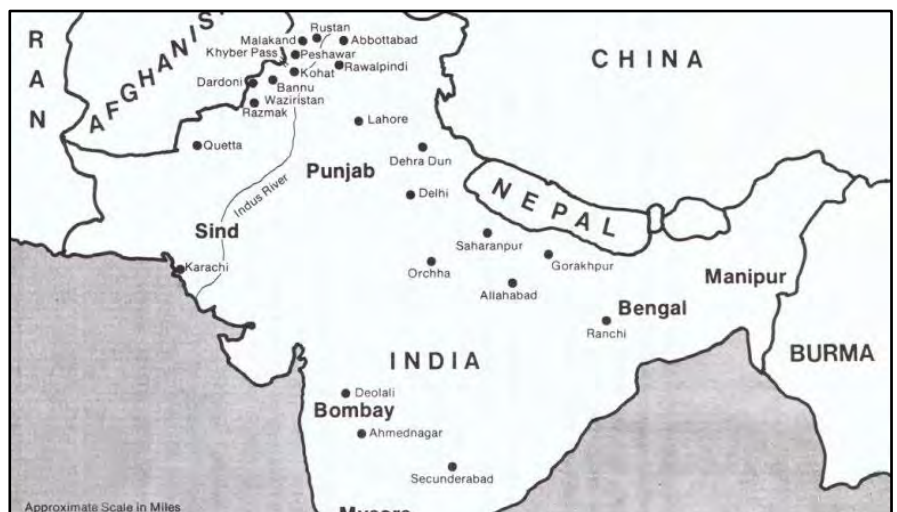
### The Mongol's Problem:

- ❖ The North-West of India was vulnerable.
- ❖ During this time, the rise of Khwarizmi empire led to:
  - The control of the Ghurids over Kabul, Qandahar and Ghazni was lost rapidly.

- The boundary of this empire reached the river Indus.
- Rivalry between Khwarizmi and Aibak just started.
- At the same time, Changez khan (1160-1227) attacked the Khwarizmi empire.
- ❖ The Mongol threat to India appeared in 1221.
- ❖ After the defeat of Khwarizmi ruler, Chengiz khan and Jalal ad-Din Mingburnu, the sultan of the Khwarezmian dynasty fought a war at the bank of Indus.
- ❖ Even after defeating Jalaluddin, Changez khan turned his attention to the **Khwarizmi Empire**.
- ❖ Iltutmish refused a request for Jalaluddin asylum, by this act Iltutmish probably saved Delhi from Mongols.
- ❖ After the death of Changez khan (1227) mongol empire is divided among his sons
  - **Batu Khan (1227-1255):**
    - Tsar Batu was a Mongol ruler and founder of the Golden Horde, a division of the Mongol Empire.
    - His ulus were the chief state of the Golden Horde, which ruled Russia, Volga Bulgaria, Cumania, and the Caucasus for around 250 years, after also destroying the armies of Poland and Hungary.
  - **Kublai Khan (1260-1294)**
    - He founded the **Yuan Dynasty** in China as a conquest dynasty in 1271, and ruled as the first Yuan emperor until his death in 1294.

### Balban's Policy towards Mongols:

- ❖ By asserting the power of the monarchy, Balban strengthened the Delhi Sultanate. But even he could not fully defend northern India against the attacks of the Mongols.
- ❖ The Mongol invasion was frequent on the border and it was a constant headache to Sultan Balban.
- ❖ In the western border, Lahore was then under the sphere of Mongol influence and **Sind and Multan** were always exposed to their invasion.
- ❖ Sultan Balban, therefore, adopted a number of measures for the safeguard of the western borders.
- ❖ He built a line of forts along the frontier and garrisoned them with able-bodied Afghan soldiers
- ❖ He adopted a policy of both force and diplomacy.
- ❖ He repaired the forts of Tabarhindha, Sunam, and Samana and posted a strong force there.
- ❖ He **sent diplomatic feelers** and agreed to leave a major portion of the Punjab under the Mongol control.



- ❖ The **strategic and diplomatic arrangements** made by him continued to serve the Delhi sultanate even in Khilji period.
- ❖ He **appointed Sher Khan**, a distinguished warrior as the commander of the army at the border. Sher Khan was successful against the Mongols on a number of occasions. But due to the unfortunate death of Sher Khan in the year 1270, the Mongols started their plundering raids without any fear.
- ❖ Balban appointed experienced Amirs in charge of frontiers, but they failed to check the Mongols.
- ❖ He divided the frontier region into two parts:
  - One part which consisted of Sind, Multan and Lahore was kept under the charge of his **eldest son, Prince Muhammad Khan**.
  - The second part which consisted of the province of sunam and Samana was given to his second son **Bughra Khan**.
- ❖ Prince Muhammad though successfully repelled the Mongol invasion twice in 1279 and 1285, but he died in the third encounter with them in 1286 and this was the greatest shock to Balban.
- ❖ Though he re-occupied Lahore from the Mongols, he could not recover himself from the shocks of his son's death. Prince Muhammad was his most favorite son.

### After Balban's death:

- ❖ After his death in 1287 AD, the nobles raised his **grandson Kaiquabad** to the throne.
- ❖ He was soon replaced by his son, Kaimurs, who remained on the throne for a little over three months.
- ❖ During Balban's reign, Firoz had been the warden of the marches in the north-west and had fought many successful battles against the Mongols. He was called to Delhi as Ariz-i-Mumalik (Minister of War).
- ❖ In 1290 A.D. Firoz took a bold step by murdering Kaimurs and seized the throne. A group of Khalji nobles led by him established the Khalji dynasty.
- ❖ Some historians prefer to call this event the 'dynastic revolution' of AD 1290. It brought to an end the so-called slave dynasty and Firoz ascended the throne under the title of Jalaluddin Khalji.
- ❖ Balban was undoubtedly one of the main architects of the sultanate of Delhi.
- ❖ He excluded non-turks from positions of power and authority and based the government on a very narrow racial group.
- ❖ This led to fresh disturbance and troubles after his death.



PW Mobile APP: <https://physicswala.page.link/?type=contact-us&data=open>

For PW Website: <https://www.physicswallah.live/contact-us>

# **DAILY CLASS NOTES**

---

## **MEDIEVAL HISTORY**

**Lecture - 10**  
**Delhi Sultanate II**



## Delhi Sultanate II

### Who were the Khiljis?

- ❖ After the death of Balban of the Slave Dynasty, the nobles were divided into two groups:
  - One group was the **Khilji Party** headed by its leader Jalaluddin Firoz.
    - Firoz was warden of the marches in the north-west and had fought many successful battles against the Mongols.
    - He was called to Delhi as Ariz-i-Mumalik (Minister of War).
  - The other one was a group of Turkish nobles called **Turkish Party**.
- ❖ There was a **bitter quarrel** and rivalry between the two groups for power and supremacy.
- ❖ The Turkish nobles raised his grandson Kaiquabad to the throne.
- ❖ He got a paralytic stroke and was soon replaced by his son, Kaimur. Kaimur - 3 years old - remained on the throne for three months.
- ❖ At last the **Khilji Party came out victorious** and its leader Jalal-ud-din is said to have killed many Turkish nobles.
- ❖ He also **killed the Sultan Kaiquabad** and his infant son Kayumars and declared himself as the Sultan of Delhi in 1290 (Dynastic Revolution).
- ❖ Sultan Kaiquabad only ruled for three years and after his death the Balban dynasty came to an end.
- ❖ With the **accession of Jalal-ud-din Firoz Khilji** to the throne of Delhi, there began the rule of Khilji dynasty.

### Jalaluddin Khilji (1290 - 1296 AD):

- ❖ He laid the foundation of the Khalji dynasty.
- ❖ He ascended the throne at the age of 70 years.
- ❖ Jalal-ud-din, by his own merit, rose to the position of **sar-i-jandar, that is, the head of the royal bodyguard** in the reign of **Mamluk Dynasty**.
- ❖ Afterwards, he was appointed **Governor of Samana (Punjab)** where he successfully fought many battles against the Mongols.
- ❖ The rise of Khaljis to power ended the monopoly of nobility of slaves to high offices.
- ❖ Jalal-ud-din **avoided making any radical changes** to the administrative set-up, and retained the old Turkic nobles in the offices that they held during Balban's reign. He tried to mitigate some of the harsh aspects of Balban's rule though.
- ❖ He was the first ruler of the Delhi Sultanate to clearly put forward the view that the state should be based on the willing support of the governed, and that since the large majority of the people in India were Hindus, the state in India could not be a truly Islamic state.
- ❖ At the same time, Jalal-ud-din appointed his relatives and associates to important offices. He appointed his **brother Yaghrash Khan as the head of the army ministry (ariz-i-mamalik)**, and his nephew **Ahmad Chap as Naib-i-Barbek**.
- ❖ He gave his **eldest son Mahmud the title Khan-i-Khan**; the next two sons were given the titles **Arkali Khan and Qadr Khan**.

- ❖ Jalaluddin tried to win the goodwill of the nobility by a **Policy of Tolerance**.
- ❖ He avoided harsh punishments, even to those who revolted against him. He not only forgave them but at times even rewarded them to win their support.
- ❖ Jalal-ud-din did not behave nor had ambitions worthy of a Sultan. When nearly after a year he went to the red fort of Balban he got down from his horse, wept before the throne of Balban and refused to sit on it.
- ❖ Like a religious minded old Muslim, he did not desire anything except to pass his old age in peace and acts of benevolence.
- ❖ Jalal-ud-din was not related to the previous royal family. Therefore, the people of Delhi, who regarded only Ilbari-Turks as worthy of rule, regarded him as an usurper and did not accept his claim to the throne.
- ❖ The Turkish nobles, who **regarded Khaljis as non-Turks**, felt humiliated under his rule. Some among them revolted or plotted against him.
- ❖ The young Khalji - nobles also felt dissatisfied with him as they found that there was no scope of fulfillment of their ambitions under the new monarch

### **Jalaluddin's policy towards Mongols:**

- ❖ Many Mongol invasions took place during Jalaluddin's reign.
- ❖ The frontier provinces of Dipalpur, Multan, and Samana were, during the Mongol attacks, governed by Jalal-ud-din's son Arkali Khan.
- ❖ Jalal-ud-din personally led an army to repulse the invaders. The two armies faced each other at a place named Bar-ram, and their vanguards engaged in some skirmishes.
- ❖ The skirmishes ended with advantage for the Delhi forces, and the **Mongols agreed to retreat**. Jalal-ud-din called Abdullah his son after exchanging friendly greetings.
- ❖ A **group of Mongols, led by Ulghu**, decided to embrace Islam, and sought Jalal-ud-din's permission to settle in India.
- ❖ In the Delhi Sultanate, the Mongols were regarded as hardened criminals, who had been involved in murders and highway robbery. Despite this, Jalal-ud-din accepted their regrets, and allowed them to settle in the lower Ganges plain, on the **Lakhnauti (Bengal)** frontier of his kingdom.
- ❖ He also provided the new settlers with accommodation, allowances and social ranks. These Mongols came to be known as "**New Muslims**".
- ❖ Married his daughter to **Ulugh Khan (descendent of Chenghiz)** to win their goodwill.
- ❖ In August 1290 A.D., Malik Chhajju revolted.
- ❖ He assumed the title of **Sultan Mughis-ud-din**, issued coins and Khutba was read in his name. Amir Ali Hatim Khan, Governor of Oudh and certain other nobles of eastern provinces also joined the revolt.
- ❖ He proceeded towards Delhi via Badaun. Jalal-ud-din himself proceeded against him. Arkali Khan, son of the Sultan, marched ahead and defeated Chhajju near Badaun. Chhajju fled away but was captured afterwards.
- ❖ Chhajju was produced before the Sultan in chains and dirty clothes.
- ❖ The Sultan wept at his disgraceful condition, released him and invited him to a feast where he praised him and his supporters because of being loyal to the previous dynasty. Afterwards, Chhajju was handed over to Arkali Khan and his supporters were released.



- ❖ Ala-ud-din and Ahmad Chap protested against this behavior of the Sultan but were silenced by him by saying that he was not prepared to shed the blood of the Muslims for the sake of the throne. Alauddin was now appointed governor of Kara and Manikpur.
- ❖ 1294 - Devagiri invaded by Alauddin Khalji (Ali Gurshap)

### Assassination of Jalaluddin Khilji:

- ❖ He was assassinated by a conspiracy hatched by none other than his nephew Alauddin Khilji.
- ❖ After the death of Jalaluddin, Alauddin Khilji ascended to the throne.
- ❖ Jalaluddin policy was reversed by Alauddin Khalji who awarded drastic punishments to all those who dared to oppose him.

### Alauddin Khilji (1296 - 1316):

- ❖ He was born in Delhi in 1266 CE and lived his entire life in the Indian subcontinent.
- ❖ He was the nephew and son-in-law of Jalal-ud-din Khilji.
- ❖ He was one of the most outstanding rulers of Delhi Sultanate.
- ❖ He was appointed as **Amir-i-Tuzuk (Master of Ceremonies)**.
- ❖ He had two victorious expeditions during the reign of Jalaluddin.
  - **1292 AD:** He led the expedition of Bhilsa (Vidisa), he was given the iqta of Awadh, in addition to that of Kara and appointed as **Arizi-i-Mumalik (Minister of War)**.
  - **1294 AD:** He led the first Turkish expedition to southern India and **plundered Devagiri**.
- ❖ Alauddin was an able military commander and efficient organizer.
- ❖ Jalal-ud-din was very much impressed by his military talent and gave his daughter in marriage to him. Jalaluddin was the greatest benefactor of him on earth and also desired him to succeed him after his death.
- ❖ But Ala-ud-din on the other hand was very ambitious and was impatient for the throne.
- ❖ He was also tempted by some of his followers to capture power.
- ❖ Alauddin was dissatisfied with his personal life as he was not in good terms with his proud wife and mother-in-law.
- ❖ The conditions for him, even after murdering the Sultan Jallulidin, were not very conducive.
- ❖ There were even moments when he thought to give up on his dreams and ambitions of ruling over the entire subcontinent and retire to Bengal. Following difficulties were in front of him when he came to become the Sultan of Delhi:
  - Firstly, the widow queen, Malak-i-Jahan, on getting the death news of her husband, immediately raised her second son **Qadr Khan** to the throne of Delhi under the title of Rukn-ud-din Ibrahim.
  - Secondly, he was hated by the people as an **ungrateful usurper** as he had treacherously murdered the man who was his greatest benefactor and well-wisher.
  - Thirdly, **Jalali Nobles** who were the followers of the deceased Sultan were determined to take revenge of their master.
  - Fourthly, the **Hindu Kings** had asserted their independence taking advantage of the situation.
  - Lastly there was a constant danger of **Mongol raids of Delhi**.
- ❖ Soon after his accession, Alauddin wanted to make his throne safe and secure.



- ❖ He lavishly distributed wealth among his subjects so that they soon forgot his cruel deed of murdering his uncle and benefactor, Jalal-ud-din. However, he faced few rebellions in succession during the early years of his rule.
- ❖ **Alauddin felt that there were four reasons for these rebellions:**
  - The inefficiency of the spy system.
  - The general practice of the use of wine.
  - Social intercourse among the nobles and inter marriage between them (Barani - Tarikh i Firuz Shahi).
  - The excess of wealth in the possession of certain nobles.
- ❖ In order to prevent the recurrence of these rebellions, Alauddin formulated certain regulations and implemented them:
  - Families that had been enjoying free land to support themselves should pay land tax for their holdings. This curbed the excess of wealth owned by some people and surplus properties to be confiscated.
  - He assassinated New Muslims, Balbani and Jalali Nobles.
  - The Sultan reorganized the spy system and took measures to make it more effective.
  - The use of liquor and intoxicants was prohibited.
  - The nobles were ordered not to have social gatherings or inter-marriages without his permission.
  - He introduced the **Chehra & Dagh System**, where Chehra was a detailed description of each soldier and Dagh was associated with branding of horses. These measures were to ensure maximum efficiency, a strict review of the army from time to time was carried out.
- ❖ Alauddin established a **huge permanent, standing army** to satisfy his ambition of conquest and to protect the country from Mongol invasion.

### Expansion of Delhi Sultanate by Alauddin:

- ❖ Under Alauddin Khalji the **territorial expansion of the Delhi Sultanate**, beyond North India, was the most important achievement.

### Gujarat:

- ❖ Alauddin first began his territorial conquest with a campaign against **Gujarat (Vaghella ruler Rai Karan)**. Alauddin was motivated by his desire to establish a vast empire and obtain the wealth of Gujarat.
- ❖ The riches of Gujarat were to pay for his future conquests and her sea port was to ensure a regular supply of Arab horses for his army.
- ❖ In **AD 1299**, an army under two of Alauddin's noted generals **Ulugh Khan and Nusrat Khan** marched against Gujarat. Rai Karan the ruler of Gujarat fled, the temple of Somnath was captured.
- ❖ An enormous wealth was collected. Even the wealthy Muslim merchants were not spared. Many slaves were also captured who later served the Sultan as human resource. Acquired Malik Kafur and married Kamla Bai (Queen).

### Rajasthan:

- ❖ After the annexation of Gujarat, he turned his attention towards Rajasthan.
- ❖ **Ranthambore** was the first target. Ranthambore was reputed to be the strongest fort of Rajasthan and had earlier defied Jalaluddin Khalji.
- ❖ The capture of Ranthambore was necessary to break the power and morale of the Rajputs.

- ❖ The immediate cause of attack was that the ruler of Ranthambore - Hamirdeva gave shelter to two rebellious Mongol soldiers and refused to hand over them to the Khalji ruler. Hence, an offensive was launched against Ranthambore.
- ❖ Finally, Alauddin himself had to come on the battlefield. In 1301 AD, the fort fell to Alauddin. Women performed Jauhar.
- ❖ In AD 1303, Alauddin **besieged Chittor**, another powerful state of Rajputana. According to some scholars, Alauddin attacked Chittor because he coveted Padmini, the beautiful queen of Raja Ratan Singh.
  - However, many scholars do not agree with this legend as this is first mentioned by **Malik Muhammad Jayasi in his book Padmavat** more than two hundred years later.
  - According to **Amir Khusrau**, the Sultan ordered a general massacre of the civil population. Chittor was renamed Khizrabad after the name of Sultan's son Khizr Khan.
- ❖ Alauddin however returned back quickly to Delhi as the Mongol army was advancing towards Delhi.
  - **1305:** Khilji army under Ain-ul-Mulk captured Malwa.
  - Other states such as Ujjain, Mandu, Dhar and Chanderi were also captured.
  - After the conquest of Malwa, Alauddin sent Malik Kafur to the South and himself attacked Siwana.
  - **1311:** Raja Shital Deva of Siwana was ultimately defeated.
  - The Rajput kingdom Jalor was also captured.
- ❖ Thus, by AD 1311, Alauddin had completed the conquest of large parts of Rajputana and became the master of North India.

### Expansion of Delhi Sultanate in peninsular India by Alauddin Khilji:

- ❖ The imperialist ambitions of Alauddin were not satisfied with the conquest of the north. He was determined to conquer the south as well.
- ❖ The wealth of the southern kingdoms attracted him. The expeditions to the south were sent under **Malik Kafur**, a trusted commander of Alauddin who held the office of the Naib.
- ❖ The first expedition was against **Pratap Rudradeva of Warangal** in the Telangana area. This siege lasted for many months and came to an end when Rai agreed to part with his treasures and pay tribute to Sultan.
- ❖ The second campaign was against **Dwar Samudra and Ma'bar (modern Karnataka and Tamil Nadu)**. The ruler of Dwar Samudra, Vir Ballala III realized that defeating Malik Kafur would not be an easy task, hence he agreed to pay tribute to Sultan without any resistance.
- ❖ **Malik Kafur's Expedition:**
  - Malik Kafur's first target was **Rai Kiran** of Gujarat.
  - **Rai Ram Chandra** was a ruler of Devagiri and made an ally for the southern campaign.



- Malik Kafur launched his campaign against **Pratap Rudradeva** the ruler of Warangal in Telengana and defeated him.
- **Vir Ballala III**, the Hoysala ruler, was defeated by Malik Kafur in his next expedition.
- **Vir Pandya** of Pandyas fled the capital Madurai and Malik Kafur plundered and reached Rameshwaram and built a mosque; he then returned with 512 elephants, 700 horses.
- The Sultan honored Malik Kafur and appointed him as **Naib Malik** of the empire.
- ❖ Alauddin took the title of **Sikander-e-Azam**.
- ❖ Alauddin included non-turks in his service.
- ❖ He declared that "**Kingship knows no Kinship**" and had a secular theory of kinship.
- ❖ He refuted the suzerainty of Caliph and as per Barani he wanted to change religion.
- ❖ He patronized **Amir Khusrau** and gave him the title '**Tuti-i-hind**'. He also patronized Mir Hasan Dahlvi.
- ❖ He also **built a famous gateway** known as Alai Darwaza, Hauz Khas, Mahal Hazaar Satoon, Jamait Khana Mosque, Alai Minar, and constructed a new capital at Siri.

### **Military Reforms:**

- ❖ He was the first Sultan to have a **large Standing Army** and paid in cash from the Royal Treasury.
- ❖ He imported horses and as per Ferishta, he recruited 475k cavalrymen.
- ❖ He **introduced the Dagh & Chehra System** to ensure maximum efficiency, a strict review of the army from time to time was carried out.

### **Reforms by Alauddin Khilji:**

- ❖ Among a wide range of reforms, economic reforms by Alauddin Khilji were the most notable. Alauddin's aim of the revenue system was to **fund the royal treasury** and to save poor villagers from the hands of middle earners.
- ❖ Probably he was the first king to make a **survey of land** to determine land revenue. Khut, Mukaddam, Chowdhury, etc. were made powerless and taxes began to be collected directly from the subjects.
- ❖ Other than land revenue, he introduced tax for cattle grazing, taxes for buildings, etc. The rate of revenue was 50% of the crops produced.

### **Alauddin's Economic Policies:**

- ❖ Economic policies of Alauddin can be divided into two:
  1. Agrarian Reforms
  2. Market Policy
- ❖ Alauddin Khilji's agrarian and market reforms should be seen both in the context of the efforts at the internal restructuring of the Sultanate, as also the need to create a large army to meet the threat of the external Mongol invasion.
- ❖ He received daily reports from **Barids (Intelligence affairs) & Munshiyans (Secret spies)**.

### **Agrarian Reforms:**

- ❖ First ruler to fix land revenue in cash.



### ❖ Types of Taxes:

- The essence of Alauddin's agrarian reforms was to bring the villages in closer association with the government in the area extending from Dipalpur and Lahore to Kara near modern Allahabad.
- In this region, the villages were to be brought under **Khalisa**, i.e., land not assigned to any of the nobles as Iqta. Lands assigned in charitable grants were also confiscated and brought under Khalisa.
- Further, the land revenue in this area was fixed at half of the produce and assessed on the basis of measurement.
- Apart from Khalisa, no extra cesses were to be levied, except a **grazing tax on cattle (charai)** and **house tax (ghari)**. Both these taxes had been levied earlier and were traditional.
- The land revenue was calculated in kind, but demanded in cash. For this purpose, the cultivators had either to sell the produce to the banjaras, or take it for sale to the local market.

### How were these taxes Enforced?

#### ❖ To Upper Class:

- The enforcement of these taxes over a large area of land was a significant contribution of Alauddin.
- When the Turkish Sultanate consolidated their rule in India, the earlier intermediaries (small chiefs) such as the rai, ranas, etc. disappeared.
- In place of them, a **new set of intermediaries** whom Barani called **khuts** appeared. The privileges of these khuts (also muqaddams and chaudhuris) were curbed by Alauddin through these taxes.
- Earlier these intermediaries were very wealthy and they rode Arabian and Iraqi horses, wore fine clothes, etc. they often passed on the burden of their share of the land revenue on to the shoulders of the weak.
- But after Alauddin came to the throne, he not only forced the khuts, muqaddams and chaudhuri's to pay the grazing and house taxes but they were also deprived of collecting land revenue.

#### ❖ To the Lower Class or Cultivators:

- The cultivators benefitted from these taxes as their burden was also shifted to the upper class. But since Alauddin's market policy was very harsh, the cultivators could hardly see the benefits.
- The fear of the government was such that the cultivators would sell even their family and cattle to pay land-revenue.
  - **Biswa** was a unit of measurement
  - State demand – **1/5th of produce**
  - **Kismat-i-Khuti** was a Headmen's cess abolished.

### Was the Agrarian Reforms Successful?

- ❖ While reforming the agrarian system, Alauddin tried to ensure the **efficient and honest working** of the machinery of revenue administration. This was not easy since with the extension of the Khalisa, a large number of **accountants (mutsarrif), collectors (amils)** and agents had to be appointed.
- ❖ Alauddin desired that the accounts of all these officials should be audited strictly by the **Naib Wazir and Sharaf Qais**. Any mistakes made by them were severely punished.
- ❖ Alauddin was prepared to give them sufficient wages to lead a decent life, but took a serious action of bribery and corruption.

- ❖ None of the amils and mutsarrifs could take bribes, and had long been reduced to such a position by hardships, imprisonment for long period or torture for small outstanding dues that people considered these posts to be worse and were not prepared to marry their daughters to those who hold these posts.
- ❖ A significant and lasting effect of Alauddin's agrarian reforms was the furthering of the growth of market economy in the villages and bringing about a more integrated relationship between the town and the country.

### Market Reforms or Policies:

- ❖ Alauddin Khilji's market reforms were oriented towards administrative and military necessities. But the reforms also helped in many ways, whose effectiveness was a cause of wonder to the contemporaries.
- ❖ Few rulers of the Islamic world were able to control market prices effectively as Alauddin Khilji. He was in fact the first ruler who looked at the problem of price control in a systematic manner, and was able to maintain stable prices for a considerable period.
- ❖ Alauddin wanted to institute the market reforms because of two reasons:
  - First, it was due to the **Mongol Threat**. He wanted to recruit a large army to protect against the Mongol invasion. To give them a reasonable salary, he controlled the market prices by letting the prices fall.
  - Second, it was to impoverish the **non-islamists** so that they would cease to harbor thoughts of rebellion.

### Price Policy:

- ❖ The price control policy of Alauddin is remarked as one of the wonders of that time. This policy comprised of different steps which are as under:
  1. **Fixation of price of commodities:** The other rulers of Delhi used to fix the prices of only the most important commodities of life to the maximum but neglected the other items. But Alauddin, though illiterate, had made such a thoughtful policy that he **fixed prices of all the commodities** of life to maximum. Similarly, prices of all other articles such as vegetables, fruits, and clothes were fixed. Even prices of horses, cattle, goats and slaves were fixed as per their categories.
  2. **Royal Granaries:** He had made large **royal godowns** in which the grains were stored and from there, they were distributed to the dealers in the market, thus making sure that everything was **available to common man** and there was **no black marketing**. No merchant, farmer or dealer was allowed to hoard grain or to sell it at a higher rate. All traders and merchants had to register their sales in a state register and they would bring all the goods for sale to the market called Sara-i-Adl situated inside the Badaun gate.
  3. **Strong Espionage System:** Alauddin had a very strong espionage system, which kept him aware of all the conditions of the market. He took special interest in this espionage system.
  4. **Strict Action on Complaints:** A strict and quick action was taken on complaints of the general public.
  5. **Strict Action on Hoarders:** The hoarders were **dealt with iron hand** and were **punished severely**. The Sultan not only controlled the price and hoarding but also supply/transport of various articles. Traders, who carried goods from one place to other, were registered and every type of facility was provided to them in transportation of goods. He also instituted a **rationing system**. Grain of lower quality was not allowed to be sold. The principal dealers, who were supplied grains from government granaries, were not allowed to sell more than half a mound to any individual.



6. **Establishment of "Diwan-e-Riyasat"**: The head was Naib-e-Riyasat. Allauddin had established a **price control department** named "Diwane Riyasat" whose head was Malik Ulugh Khan and the head of markets was Yaqoob Khan. Thus, a new government market was established under the Badaun gate and was named "Sarae Adl", which was under control of Diwane Riyasat. He established **Sahna-i-mandi**, who was the Superintendent, to control each market.

❖ **Alauddin set up 4 types of markets in Delhi:**

1. **The food-grains Market:** Alauddin tried to control the **supply of food-grains** from the villages, its **transportation** to other cities by the **grain merchants (banjaras/ karmanis)** and its proper distribution to the citizens. These undoubtedly were the three most important aspects in controlling food prices.

2. **The cloth, sugar, ghee, oil, dry fruits, etc. market:**

- Alauddin ordered that all cloth brought by the merchants from different parts of the country including foreign lands was to be **stored and sold only in this market at governmental rates**.
- If any commodity was sold even at a jital higher than the official price, **it would be confiscated and the seller punished**.
- All the merchants whether Hindu or Muslim, were registered and a deed was taken from them, so that they would bring the same quantities of commodities to the sarai-adl every year, and sell them at government rates. The rich Multani merchants were given advance money for their trade from the royal treasury.
- They were also **given the power and responsibility** for obeying these orders.
- In order to ensure that costly clothes were not sold outside Delhi for double/triple prices by the merchants, an official was appointed by the king in order to give permission to the amir or maliks of Delhi to buy the stuff.

3. **The horses, slaves and cattle market:**

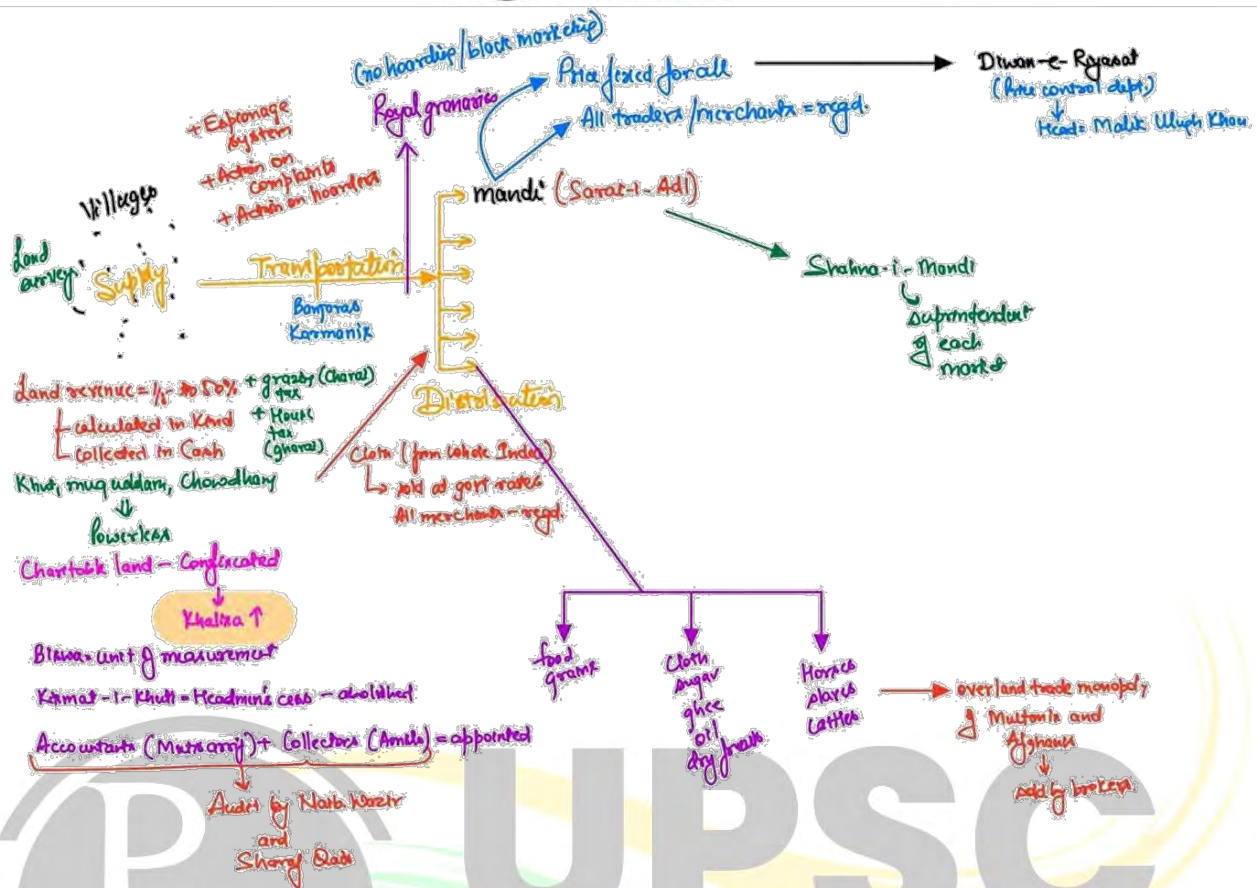
- The third market dealt with horses, cattle and slaves. The **supply of horses** of good quality at fair prices was important both for the military department and the soldier.
- In horse trade, the overland trade was being monopolized by Multanis and Afghans, but they were sold in the market by **middlemen or dallals**.
- The rich dallals were as powerful as the officials of the market and were shameless in their dealings, resorting to bribery and other corrupt practices.
- They were always on the lookout for raising the prices of horses.

4. **The market for miscellaneous commodities.**

❖ Sale of liquor/intoxicants was prohibited and gambling was banned.

**Alauddin Khilji and Mongol Invasions:**

- ❖ During Khilji's rule, the **Mongols of the Chaghatai Khanate under Duwa Khan** repeatedly tried to invade the Indian subcontinent.
- ❖ The attacks that occurred during the reign of Alauddin Khilji were not the first time that the Mongols had invaded India.



- ❖ But it also remains a fact that all those were minor invasions as compared with those that occurred in the time of Alauddin; and it was the good fortune of India that the most tremendous assaults were delivered to this country when a strong monarch like Alauddin was the ruler.
- ❖ Khilji, by his military brilliance, managed to defeat the Mongols five times, and avoided defeat a sixth time even when taken by surprise, as the Mongols attacked with massive forces.
  1. **First Invasion:** The first invasion attempt was carried out in **1298 CE**.
  2. **Second Invasion:** In **1299 CE**, the Mongols invaded again, this time in **Sindh**, and occupied the fort of Sivastan. Alauddin dispatched Zafar Khan to defeat them and recapture the fort, which he did, even without the need for siege machines.
  3. **Third Invasion:** This humiliating defeat prompted Mongols to attempt another full-scale assault on India in **1299 CE**. Khwaza (invader) came up to Delhi but was prevented.
  4. **Fourth Invasion:** In **1303 CE**, again sent a huge force of 120,000 horsemen to attack Delhi, under General Taraghai.
  5. **Fifth Invasion:** In **1305 CE**, seeking to avenge their previous defeats, the Mongols invaded again, under the leadership of Taraghai, Ali Beg, and Tartaq, with a force of 50,000 horsemen.
  6. **Sixth Invasion:** The last attempt to invade the Delhi Sultanate was made by **Duwa Khan in 1306 CE**, just before his death, when he sent the generals **Kubak and Iqbalmand** with an army of 50,000 to



60,000 horsemen. **Ghiyath al-din Tughlaq (Ghazi Malik)** was appointed as warden of marches to protect the Northern Frontiers.

- ❖ Thus, Alauddin Khilji achieved what no other ruler in the world, east or west, had achieved. He repeatedly repulsed and defeated large-scale invasions by the Mongols, who had been an unstoppable force wherever they had gone — Russia, China, Persia, Iraq, Syria, Europe.

### Death of Alauddin Khilji:

- ❖ During the last years of his life, Alauddin **suffered from an illness**, and became very distrustful of his officers. He started concentrating all the power in the hands of his family and his slaves.
- ❖ He became infatuated with his slave-general Malik Kafur, who was promoted to the rank of viceroy (Naib), and became the de facto ruler of the Sultanate.
- ❖ Alauddin died on the night of 4 January 1316. Towards the end of the night, Kafur brought the body of Alauddin from the Siri Place and had it buried in Alauddin's mausoleum (which had already been built before Alauddin's death).
- ❖ Alauddin's tomb and the madrasa dedicated to him exist at the back of Qutb complex, Mehrauli, in Delhi.

### After the death of Alauddin Khilji:

- ❖ Following the death of Alauddin in AD 1316, the Delhi Sultanate was plunged into confusion.
- ❖ **Malik Kafur** sat on the throne for a few days, only to be deposed by **Qutubuddin Mubarak Shah**. Declared himself Caliph and took the title of Al Wasiq Billah.
- ❖ During this period, rebellions broke out in Deogir but were harshly suppressed.
- ❖ Qutubuddin Mubarak Shah was soon murdered and **Nasiruddin Khusrau Shah** ascended the throne (only Hindu converts to sit on the throne).
- ❖ However, he too did not last long as some dissatisfied officers, led by **Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq (Dipalpur Governor)**, defeated and killed him in a battle.
- ❖ Thus, only four years after the death of Alauddin, the Khalji Dynasty came to an end and power passed into the hands of the **Tughlaqs**.
- ❖ **Tughlaq** rulers were of **Turkish origin** and the family religion was Muslim. (Qauranah Turks)
- ❖ Tughluq was the personal name of the dynasty's founder **Ghiyath al-Din**, and not an ancestral designation.
- ❖ Tughlaq rule started in 1320 in Delhi when Ghazi Malik assumed the throne under the title of **Ghiyath al-Din Tughluq**. **Ghazi Malik** was the founder of Tughlaq rule in India.
  - **1321–1325:** Ghiyath al-Din Tughluq
  - **1325–1351:** Muhammad bin Tughluq
  - **1351–1388:** Firuz Shah Tughlaq



PW Mobile APP: <https://physicswala.page.link/?type=contact-us&data=open>

For PW Website: <https://www.physicswallah.live/contact-us>

# **DAILY CLASS NOTES**

## **Medieval History**

**Lecture - 11**

**Delhi Sultanate III**



## Delhi Sultanate III

### In News:

#### The marvels of Marco Polo saw in India:

“The nobles and great folks have their beds made of very light canework, and when they have got in and are going to sleep, they are drawn up by cords nearly to the ceiling and fixed there for night.”

- ❖ Less clothes "...never a tailor to cut or stitch...everybody goes naked! -rich, poor and king himself - only loins he has a piece of fine cloth.."
- ❖ Monarchs wore necklaces entirely of precious stones of rubies, sapphires, emeralds, etc. Also, fine silk thread strung with 104 large pearls and rubies golden bracelets thickly set with pearls of great value, similarly anklets, rings on his toes.
- ❖ **Paan and Duels:** Leaf called Tembul (paan) - chewing and spitting which was prepared with camphor, spices, quicklime, considered good for the health and duel if insulted via spitting.
- ❖ Bath twice, eating - right hand only, never used left hand, own drinking vessel - do not put the vessel to the lips for strangers - pour into hands.
- ❖ **Jain Monks:** Not kill an animal/a fly, or a flea - eat no vegetable in green state, only dry. Sleep on the ground naked.
- ❖ **Nobles and Great Folks:** Canework beds drawn up by cords nearly to the ceiling and fixed there for the night - Less wealthy they sleep on the streets.

#### Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq (1320 - 25 AD):

- ❖ He pursued a **policy of reconciliation** with the nobles and the people who were severely restricted under Alauddin.
- ❖ He was the first sultan to take the title of “**Ghazi**” which means ‘**Slayer of Infidels**’.
- ❖ He succeeded in getting the support of the Turkish nobles on the basis of his race.
- ❖ He resumed the grants that were revoked and allowed them to enjoy their privileges. Ghiyas-ud-din succeeded in getting the support of the nobles and the people through these measures.
- ❖ He also made successful defense against the **Mongols** which made him an **able ruler and the founder of a dynasty** in India.
- ❖ He also attempted to improve the finances of the state and pursued a policy to encourage agriculture.
- ❖ His **twin objective** was to **increase land under cultivation** and **improve the economic condition of the cultivators**.
- ❖ The state demand of revenue was fixed between one-fifth and one-third of the produce.
- ❖ He ordered the revenue to be increased only gradually and in no case could increase beyond one-eleventh to one-tenth.

- ❖ The privileges of the previous Hindu rulers were **restored**.
- ❖ The practice of measurement and survey of land was abandoned.
- ❖ The measures of Ghiyas-ud-din succeeded and the area under cultivation increased and the condition of the farmers improved.
- ❖ He was **supported by the** Turks and Hindu rulers.
- ❖ He sent his **son Jauna Khan**:
  - For the **policy of annexation in Warangal** - which was ruled by Pratap Rudra.
  - Warrangal was renamed as **Sultanpur**. Also, annexed Telangana and brought it into the territories of Delhi Sultanate.
  - Jauna Khan reestablished authority in **Madurai and Warangal**.
- ❖ Ghiyas-ud-din Tughlaq had a troublesome relationship with Nizamuddin Aulia.
- ❖ Built a strong fort near Delhi and named it **Tughlakabad**.
- ❖ **Agricultural Expansion**:
  - Rent reduced to 20%-66% and set to be increased gradually.
  - He started irrigation work (I sultan).
- ❖ As per Ibn Batuta he died due to the collapse of a wooden structure which was planned by his son Jauna Khan.



### Policy of Annexation:

- ❖ In 1321 A.D. he annexed Warangal. Prataprudra Deva was the ruler of Warangal. The name of Warangal was changed to Sultanpur. Telangana was also annexed into the territories of Delhi Sultanate.
- ❖ **Jauna Khan**, the prince in the court of Ghiyas Ud din Tughlaq next attacked Orissa (Jajnagar). Bhanudeva II was the ruler of Jajnagar in Orissa who had supported the ruler of Warangal and offended Sultans.
- ❖ East and south Bengal were also annexed to the Sultanate after defeating the ruler of Bengal and Bihar.
- ❖ Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq ordered the construction of Tughlakabad, a city near Delhi with a fort to protect Delhi Sultanate from Mongol attacks.



Tughlaqabad Fort

### Muhammad Bin Tughlaq (1325-1351 A.D.):

- ❖ **Jauna Khan**, who assumed the title of Muhammad bin Tughlaq, succeeded his father in 1325 A.D.
- ❖ He was an expert in Philosophy, astronomy, logic, and Maths. He was a good Calligrapher
- ❖ He was a well-learned man and proficient in many branches of learning (knew Arabic, and Persian).
- ❖ His first administrative measure was to enhance land tax in the doab that led to widespread discontent as it was introduced at a time when the entire region was in the grip of a severe famine due to failure of rains.
- ❖ Therefore, the peasants instead of paying the taxes abandoned their lands and adopted highway robbery.
- ❖ The tax collectors continued to collect taxes by oppression. It resulted in extensive revolts. The Sultan suppressed the revolts severely.
- ❖ He showed **tolerance to religious matters**.
- ❖ He had diplomatic relations with Egypt, China.
- ❖ Muhammad Bin Tughlaq also **shifted the capital** to Devagiri that was renamed Daulatabad. He did so in order to have better control over the south. Soon he discovered the unsuitability of the new capital.
- ❖ He ordered the people to shift back to Delhi once more. Daulatabad was abandoned largely because he soon found that he could not control north India from Daulatabad.

- ❖ He also introduced the **token currency** of bronze coins in 1329-30 AD. He was inspired by a similar system prevailing in Iran and China.
- ❖ He also made these **token coins legal tenders** and kept their value at par with the gold and silver coins. The Sultan issued tanka (rupee) of silver and copper coins.
- ❖ During Muhammad Bin Tughlaq's reign, lots of **counterfeits of bronze tokens** were manufactured.
- ❖ As a result, bad money was driven out by good money. Trade came to a standstill and business was paralyzed.
- ❖ Finally, Muhammed Tughlaq decided to withdraw the token currency. The Sultan readily gave gold and silver coins in exchange for bronze coins. The loss to the exchequer was immense. As a result, the treasury became empty.



**Bronze Coins of MBT**

- ❖ **Ibn Battuta** arrived in India through the mountains of Afghanistan, in 1334, at the height of Tughlaq dynasty geographic extent (author of **Safarnama Rehla**). Acted as Qazi at Delhi for 8 years
- ❖ Muhammad Tughlaq took many measures for improvement of the **Administration of Revenue**:
  - He ordered preparation of a register in which income and expenditure of all provinces were recorded. All provincial governors were asked to submit the reports of income and expenditure to the center.
  - Tughlaq also established a separate department of agriculture called **Diwan-i-Kohi**. A special scheme was extended to improve cultivation in the doab. In 1333-34 A.D., loans were provided to peasants.
  - He also laid the foundation for the construction of Jahanpanah, the fourth city of Delhi.



**Jahan Panah built by  
Mohammad Tughlaq**

### Ibn Battuta:

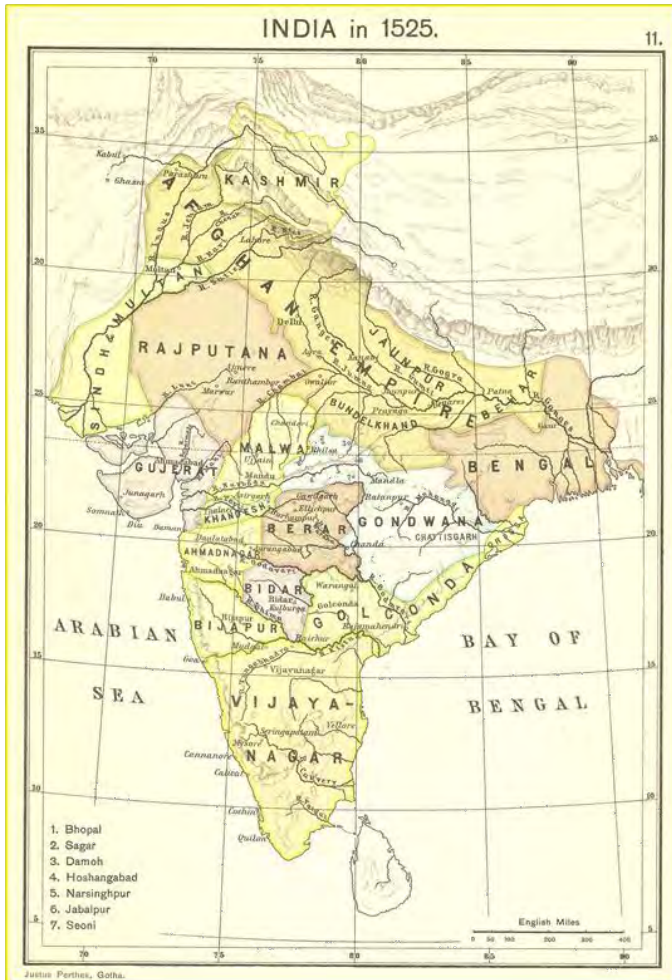
- ❖ A native of **Morocco**, came to India during the reign of Sultan Muhammad-bin-Tughluq in 1334 AD and stayed till 1345 AD
- ❖ He was appointed the **Qazi of Delhi** by the Sultan.
- ❖ Wrote a travelog named '**Kitab-i-Rehala**'.
- ❖ This book provides information about the reign of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq, and the geographical, economic and social conditions of India.
- ❖ Also visited Vijayanagar empire during the reign of **king Harihara I**.



### Zia-ud-din Barani:

- ❖ Zia-ud-din Barani mentions five experiments/campaigns of Muhammad Bin Tughlaq:
  1. Transfer Capital from Delhi to Devagiri.
  2. After repulsing the Mongols, planned to occupy Khorasan and Iraq and for this, he organized a huge army.
    - But conditions improved in Iraq.
    - Plan abandoned.
    - Army disbanded.
  3. Land revenue increased in Doab region at the time of Famine and Plague.
  4. Introduced Token Currency.
  5. Qarachil Expedition (Kumaon hills) met with several setbacks.
- ❖ He had to face as many as 16 rebellions till his death in 1351.
- ❖ During his last days, the whole of India became independent and three major independent states were founded:
  - **The Empire of Vijaynagar,**
  - **The Bahmani kingdom and**
  - **The Sultanate of Madurai.**

- ❖ However, the revolt of **Amiran-i-sada** (the foreign nobles in the imperial service in Malwa, Gujarat) sealed the fate of the sultanate in the south.
- ❖ **Hasan Gangu**, the most accomplished leader of the rebels, established the Bahmani kingdom in 1347.
- ❖ On his way to Thatta in Sindh to punish Taghi, the rebel, Muhammad bin Tughluq died on March 20, 1351.



### **Firuz Shah Tughlaq (1351-1388 A.D.):**

- ❖ After the death of Muhammad Tughlaq his **first cousin, Firuz Tughlaq** became the Sultan in 1351 A.D. He overtook the administration in a chaotic condition.
- ❖ Firuz Tughlaq primarily paid attention to domestic affairs.
- ❖ He started his reign with liberal ideas.
- ❖ He tried to please the nobles and set out to ameliorate the distress caused to the people during the long and troubled reign of Muhammad.
- ❖ Firuz Tughlaq **abolished many irksome taxes** keeping only those allowed by Quranic law.
- ❖ He looked after the interests of the cultivator, provided irrigation facilities by constructing **five canals** and **advanced loans to the needy**.
- ❖ Appointed Khan-i-Jahan Maqbal a Telugu Brahmin converted as Wazir.



- ❖ He also created a **Department of Charity** called **Diwan-i-Khairat**.
- ❖ He worked towards winning over the confidence of the **ulema**.
- ❖ Firuz increased the salaries of his officers and gave them **jagirs**.
- ❖ Firuz is known to have established several towns: Fatehabad, Hissar, Firozpur, Jaunpur and Firuzabad. The favorite city of Firuz now popularly known as **Kotla Firuz Shah**, the fifth city of Delhi.
- ❖ He **revived the jagirs system** abolished by Alauddin and reorganized the army on a feudal basis.
- ❖ He tried twice to capture Bengal in 1353 and in 1359 AD but failed on both the occasions. While returning from Bengal, Firuz Tughlaq attacked Jajnapur in Orissa. Rich booty from Puri etc.
- ❖ 1300 Sanskrit Manuscripts from Jwalamukhi temple library and got them translated into Persian by Arizuddin Khan called **Dalail-i-Firuz Shahi**.
- ❖ Great regard for the Caliph and received robes from him twice.
- ❖ In 1365 AD, he started on a campaign to Thatta to avenge the wrongs done there to his predecessor but ended up granting pension to its ruler whose brother was reinstated in Sindh.
- ❖ When Firuz Tughlaq died in 1388 AD, a civil war broke out among his successors.

#### **Administrative changes brought by Firuz Tughlaq:**

- ❖ He declared that whenever a noble died, his son/son-in-law should be allowed to take up his position including iqta.
- ❖ He abolished the practice of torturing nobles if any balance is found against them at the time of auditing the accounts of their iqta.
- ❖ These steps pleased the nobles and helped in avoiding rebellions.
- ❖ Firuz extended the principle of heredity to the army as well. Old soldiers were allowed to rest in peace and in place send their son/son-in-law/slaves.
- ❖ The soldiers were not paid in cash but by **assignment of land revenue** of villages.

#### **Too much importance given to Theologians:**

- ❖ In order to win over the Theologians, Firuz proclaimed that he was a true muslim king and the state under him was truly islamic. In order to please them, Firuz tried to ban the practices which orthodox theologians considered un islamic.
- ❖ He banned the practice of muslim women going out for worship on the graves of saints. He even persecuted a number of muslim sects which were considered heretical by the theologians.
- ❖ It was only during Firuz that **Jizyah became a separate tax**. Earlier it was a part of land revenue.

#### **Progressive steps taken by Firuz Tughlaq:**

- ❖ He was the first ruler to take steps to have **Hindu religious texts translated from Sanskrit to Persian**. This also included books on Music, Medicine, Mathematics, etc.
- ❖ Among humanitarian measures he banned inhuman punishments such as cutting of hands, feet etc. of thieves.

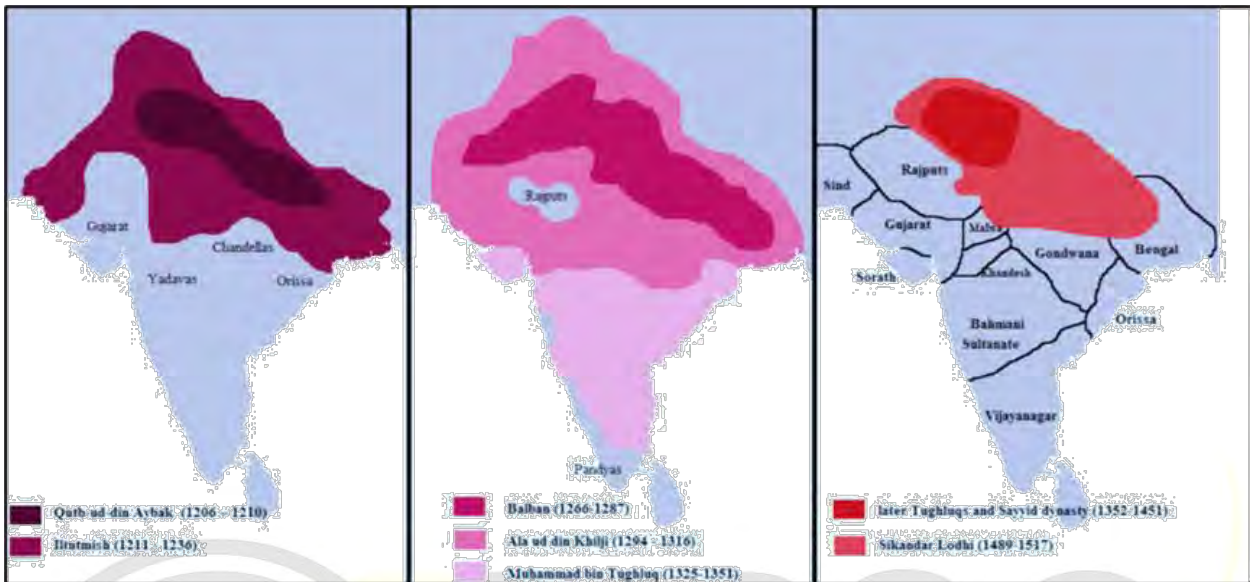


- ❖ He started **free medical services** for the poor, ordered Kotwals to make a list of unemployed persons, and provided dowries for the daughters of the poor.
- ❖ Most importantly Firuz emphasized that the state was not just the institute for awarding punishments and collecting taxes, but was a benevolent institution as well. The assertion of the principle of benevolence was a valuable one during that time.
- ❖ **Economic Measures:** He set up large departments of public works to look after his building programmes. He also **built a number of canals**, the longest one was 200 km long from river Sutlej to Hansi (longest - 200km), Sirsa to Hansi and Yamuna to Hissar.
  - During his reign, 1200 fruit gardens in and around Delhi gave good amount of revenue or tax
  - **Kharaj** - 10% of produce
  - **Zakat** - alms for Muslims
  - **Khams** - 20% spoils of war
- ❖ Introduced 2 new coins - **Adha (50%) and bitch (23%)**.
- ❖ Established royal factories called **Karkhanas** and employed slaves in it.
- ❖ He established the **Department of Slaves** called **Diwan-i-Bandagan** and the **Head** of the department was **Wakil-i-dar**.
- ❖ He built 300 new towns.
- ❖ He brought Ashokan pillars from Topara and Meerut to Delhi.
- ❖ He established **Diwan-i-khairat** which was the **Department of Charity** to take care of orphans and widows.
- ❖ Marriage bureaus and free hospitals like **Dar-ul-Shafa** were also established for poor Muslims.
- ❖ **He patronized scholars:**
  - **Barani**, a historian who wrote Tarikh-i-Firuzshahi and Fatwa-i-Jahandari.
  - **Khwaja Abdul Malik Islami**, who wrote Futah-us-Salatin.
- ❖ He himself wrote Futuhat-i-Firuzshahi.
- ❖ He was the first sultan to impose an **irrigation tax called Sharb**.
- ❖ Separate Department of Public Works was also established by him.

### **Later Tughlaqs:**

- ❖ Firuz Tughlaq was succeeded by one of his grandsons, Tughlaq Shah, who assumed the title of **Ghiasuddin Tughluq II (1388-89 A.D.)**.
- ❖ Within a year of his accession, he fell victim to court intrigue and was beheaded. During the next five years, three Sultans - Abu Bakr, Muhammad Shah and Humayun titled Alauddin Sikander Shah, ascended the throne.
- ❖ The last Tughlaq ruler, **Nasiruddin Mahmud Shah (1394-1412 A.D.)** **faced the invasion of Timur**, the great Mongol leader of Central Asia in 1398. After plundering Delhi, Timur returned to Samarquand via Meerut, Hardwar, Kangra and Jammu.
- ❖ After the departure of Timur, Nasiruddin Mahmud Shah returned to Delhi in 1401, but he was expelled from Delhi by Mallu Iqbal, the de facto ruler.

- ❖ After Mallu Iqbal's death in 1405, he returned to Delhi from Kannauj, only to be under the influence of the new de facto ruler Daulat Khan.
- ❖ Nasiruddin Mahmud died in 1412. **Daulat Khan** ruled for one and half years as the de facto ruler and was **defeated by Khizr Khan** in 1414 which laid the foundation of the **Sayyid Dynasty**.



### Sayyid Dynasty (1414 to 1451):

- ❖ They claimed to belong to the family of Sayyids or the descendants of the Prophet Muhammad through his daughter Fatima and son-in-law and cousin Ali.
- ❖ Founder - **Khizr Khan** - governor of Multan and Timur's deputy in India.
- ❖ Khizr Khan took Delhi from Daulat Khan Lodi on May 28, 1414 and founded the Sayyid Dynasty.
- ❖ But he did not take up the title of sultan and nominally, continued to be a **Rayat-i-Ala (vassal)** of the Timurids.
- ❖ Khizr Khan was succeeded by his **son Sayyid Mubarrak Khan** after his death on May 20, 1421, who styled himself as Muizz-ud-Din Mubarak Shah in his coins. A detailed account of his reign is available in the **Tarikh-i-Mubarak Shahi** written by **Yahya-bin-Ahmad Sirhindi**.
- ❖ After the death of Mubarak Shah, his nephew Sayyid Muhammad Khan ascended the throne and styled himself as Sultan Muhammad Shah. Just before his death, he called his son Sayyid Ala-ud-Din from Badaun and nominated him as his successor.
- ❖ The last ruler of this dynasty, Sayyid Ala-ud-Din Alam Shah voluntarily abdicated the throne of the Delhi sultanate in favor of Bahlul Khan Lodi on April 19, 1451, and left for Badaun. He continued to live there till his death in 1478.

### Khizr Khan (1414-1421):

- ❖ Neither politically nor culturally it made any significant contribution to the history of medieval India.
- ❖ Khizr Khan, the founder of this dynasty was **once the governor of Multan** appointed by Firoz Tughlaq. He sided with Timur when the latter attacked India. Before leaving India, Timur appointed him the governor of Multan, Lahore and Dipalpur. After Timur's return, there was no strong power in Delhi for about 14 years.
- ❖ The seven years of his reign were spent in suppressing revolts in various parts of India. However, he was successful in protecting the Delhi Sultanate from the rulers of Gujarat, Malwa and Jaunpur who aspired to conquer Delhi.
- ❖ As a mark of recognition of the suzerainty of the Mongols, the name of the Mongol ruler (Shah Rukh) was recited in the khutba but as an interesting innovation, the name of Khizr Khan was also attached to it.
- ❖ But strangely enough the name of the Mongol ruler was not inscribed on the coins and the name of old Tughlaq sultan continued on the currency. No coins are known in the name of Khizr Khan.



Billon Tanka of Khizr Khan in name of Firoz Shah Tughlaq

### Mubarak Shah (1421-1434):

- ❖ The reign of Mubarak Shah was a period of disquiet and rebellions, so his entire reign was spent in suppressing these.
- ❖ One feature of his reign is remarkable. In the history of the Sultanate, for the first time there were two Hindu Amirs in his reign.
- ❖ Mubarak Shah built a city on the banks of river Jamuna and named it Mubarkabad.
- ❖ He was assassinated in a plot.
- ❖ He was a man of great vision, but the nobles were against him and kept revolting.
- ❖ Styled himself as **Muizz-ud-Din Mubarak Shah** in his coins. A detailed account of his reign is available in the Tarikh-i-Mubarak Shahi written by Yahya-bin-Ahmad Sirhindi.



Double falus of Mubarak Shah

### **Muhammad Shah (r. 1434–1445):**

- ❖ Muhammad Shah (r. 1434–1445) was the third monarch of the Sayyid dynasty which ruled the Delhi Sultanate.
- ❖ He succeeded his uncle, Mubarak Shah to the throne.
- ❖ Muhammad Shah's tomb is a notable monument within the Lodi Gardens of New Delhi.

### **Alam Shah (1445–1451):**

- ❖ Alam Shah (r. 1445–1451) was the **fourth and last ruler of the Sayyid Dynasty** which ruled the Delhi Sultanate.
- ❖ Both Muhammad Shah and his son, Alam Shah who succeeded him, were incapable rulers.
- ❖ Alam Shah was an incapable ruler who abandoned his charge in 1448 and retired to Budaun. His **Wazir Hamid Khan called Bahlol Lodhi** later.
- ❖ Three years later, Bahlul Lodi, who had made two prior attempts at capturing Delhi, took control of the capital to mark the beginning of the Lodi dynasty.

### **Bahlul Lodhi (1451–89):**

- ❖ He belonged to the **Pashtun tribe** hailing from the **Multan region**.
- ❖ He was the nephew and son-in-law of Malik Sultan Shah Lodi, the governor of Delhi Sultanate in Sirhind, Punjab, and succeeded him as the governor of Sirhind during the reign of Sayyid dynasty ruler Muhammad Shah (Muhammad-bin-Farid).
- ❖ Muhammad Shah raised him to the status of emir. He was the most powerful of the Punjab chiefs and a vigorous leader, holding together a loose confederacy of Pashtun and Turkic chiefs with his strong personality.
- ❖ He considered himself as a peer of nobles and not a king.
- ❖ Bahlul Lodhi reduced the turbulent chiefs of the provinces to submission and infused some vigor into the government.
- ❖ He **suppressed revolts** in Mewat and doab region.
- ❖ The most important event of his reign was the conquest of Jaunpur. Bahlul spent most of his time **fighting against the Sharqi Dynasty** and ultimately annexed it.
- ❖ He placed his eldest surviving son Barbak on the throne of Jaunpur in 1486
- ❖ He introduced Bahlol copper coins.
- ❖ He brought Kalpi and Dholpur under his rule.
- ❖ He failed to recapture Bengal Gujarat and deccan.

### **Sikandar Lodi (r.1489–1517):**

- ❖ Sikandar Lodi born as Nizam Khan to a **Hindu Mother**.
- ❖ He succeeded him after his death in 1489 and took up the title **Sikandar Shah**.
- ❖ He founded Agra in 1504 and constructed mosques, shifting the capital from Delhi to Agra.
- ❖ He patronized **trade and commerce**.
- ❖ He was a poet of repute, composing under the pen-name **Gulruk**.
- ❖ He was also a patron of learning and ordered Sanskrit works of medicine to be translated into Persian.
- ❖ He curbed the individualistic tendencies of his Afghan nobles and compelled them to submit their accounts to state audit.
- ❖ He was thus able to infuse vigor and discipline into the administration.
- ❖ His greatest achievement was the **conquest and annexation of Bihar**.
- ❖ He **built roads and good irrigation facilities** for the benefit of the peasantry.
- ❖ He emphasized the **justice system**.
- ❖ During his reign the commodity prices were low.
- ❖ He introduced a new measurement yardstick called **Gazz-i-sikandari** and system of auditing of accounts.
- ❖ He was also a bigot and had little tolerance towards non-muslims.
- ❖ He destroyed many Hindu temples and **re-imposed Jizya**.
- ❖ He believed in the superior position of Sultan vis-à-vis Nobles.
- ❖ He initiated the expansion over Bihar and Rajputs and made a treaty with Bengal and also extended his empire from Punjab to Bihar.

### **Sultan Ibrahim Khan Lodi (1517–1526):**

- ❖ Sultan Ibrahim Khan Lodi (1517–1526) was the **youngest son of Sikandar Lodhi**.
- ❖ He was defeated and killed at the **Battle of Panipat** by Babur's invading army in 1526.
- ❖ He faced a number of rebellions. The Mewar ruler **Rana Sangram Singh** extended his empire right up to western Uttar Pradesh and threatened to attack Agra.
- ❖ There was rebellion in the East also. Ibrahim Lodi also displeased the nobility when he replaced old and senior commanders by younger ones who were loyal to him.
- ❖ His Afghan nobility (Daulat Khan Lodhi - Governor of Punjab) eventually invited Babur to invade India.
- ❖ In 1526, the Mughal forces of Babur, the king of Kabulistan, defeated Ibrahim's much larger army in the Battle of Panipat.
- ❖ Ibrahim was killed during the battle. It is estimated that Babur's forces numbered around 25,000–30,000 men and had between 20 and 24 pieces of field artillery. Ibrahim Lodi had around 30,000–40,000 men along with at least 100 elephants.
- ❖ Sultan Ibrahim had the qualities of an excellent warrior, but he was rash and impolitic in his decisions and actions.

- ❖ His attempt at royal absolutism was premature and his policy of sheer repression unaccompanied by measures to strengthen the administration and increase the military resources was sure to prove a failure.
- ❖ **Sultan Ibrahim (r.1517–26)** faced numerous rebellions and kept out the opposition for almost a decade. He was engaged in warfare with the Afghans and the Mughals for most of his reign and died trying to keep the Lodi Dynasty from annihilation.
- ❖ **Lodhi dynasty reign ended under Ibrahim Lodi**, his defeats against Rana Sanga of Rajputana, made him lose much of his land and influence in north-west India and his defeat and death in the First Battle of Panipat allowed the Mughal empire to establish itself in Northern India.

### **Decline of the Lodhi Dynasty:**

- ❖ By the time Ibrahim ascended the throne, the political structure in the Lodhi Dynasty had dissolved due to abandoned trade routes and the depleted treasury.
- ❖ The Deccan was a coastal trade route, but in the late fifteenth century the supply lines had collapsed. The decline and eventual failure of this specific trade route resulted in cutting off supplies from the coast to the interior, where the Lodi empire resided.
- ❖ The Lodi Dynasty was **not able to protect itself if warfare were to break out** on the trade route roads; therefore, they didn't use those trade routes, thus their trade declined and so did their treasury leaving them vulnerable to internal political problems.
- ❖ In order to take revenge for the insults done by Ibrahim, the governor of Lahore, Daulat Khan Lodi asked the ruler of Kabul, Babur to invade his kingdom. Ibrahim Lodi was thus killed in a battle with Babur.

### **Political life under Delhi Sultanate:**

#### ❖ **Sultan:**

- The Sultan's office was the most important in the Sultanate and **supreme political, military authority and legal authority** was vested in him.
- He was responsible for the **safety and security of the state**, for administration and acted as commander-in-chief of the Army as well.

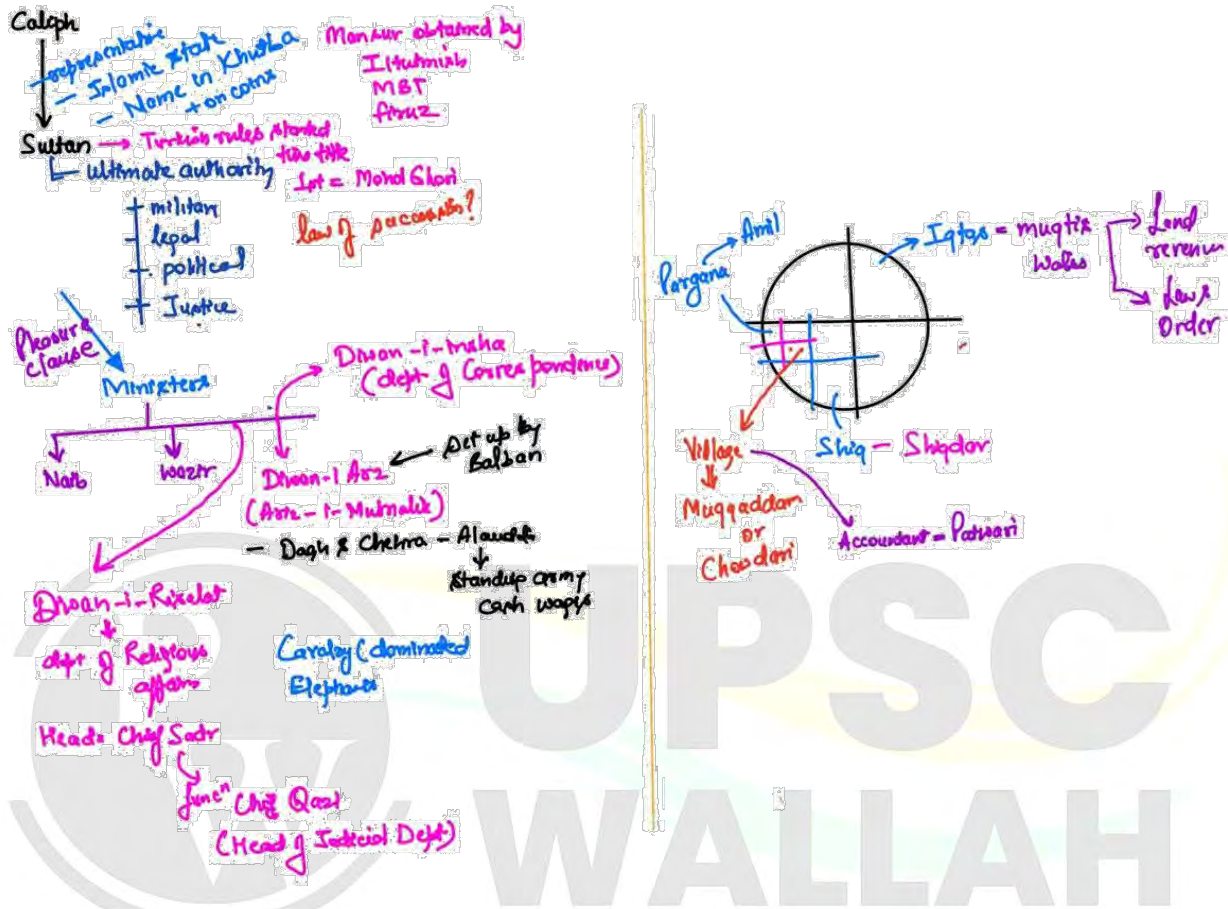
#### ❖ **Justice:**

- He was also responsible for the **maintenance of law and justice**, thus appointed judges.
- Sultan acted as a court of appeal from the Judges.
- **Note:** Dispersion of justice was considered as a very important function of any ruler. Balban dispersed Justice not even sparing the relations of high officers of state. **Muhammad Tughlaq** applied this even to the **religious classes (ulama)** who were earlier exempted from harsh punishment.

#### ❖ **Succession to the throne:**

- No dear law of succession developed among the Muslim rulers. However, all the sons of the ruler were considered to have an equal claim to the throne.
- The idea of primogeniture was neither fully acceptable to Muslims and nor to Hindus.
- Iltutmish even nominated his **daughter as Sultan (Raziya)**.

- There was no safeguard against the usurpation of the throne by a successful military leader. Thus, military strength was the main factor in succession to the throne.
- Also, public opinion could not be ignored. For the fear of public opinion, the Khaljis could not enter Delhi for long after deposing the successors of Balban, but built a new town Siri.



### Central Administration:

- ❖ Sultan was assisted by a number of Ministers who were chosen by him and remained in his office under his pleasure.
  - **Wazir:**
    - ✓ He was the **key figure in administration**. Initially he acted as a military leader but in the 14th century, they were experts in **revenue affairs** and presided over large departments with both income and expenditure. Muhammad Tughlaq wazir Khwaja Jahan even remained the in-charge of the capital when Tughlaq was out to suppress rebellion.
    - ✓ Separate auditor general for scrutinizing expenditure and accountant general for inspecting income worked under the Wazir.
    - ✓ **Khan-i-Jahan the wazir of Firuz Tughlaq** enjoyed considerable influence in the revenue department. His spell of 18 years is considered a high water mark of the wazir's influence.
  - **Diwan-i-Arz : Military Department**

- ✓ It was the next important office after wazir.
- ✓ Head of the dept was called **ariz-i-mamalik**.
- ✓ **Note:** Ariz was not the commander in chief as sultan himself commanded the army. The responsibility of the ariz was to recruit, pay and equip the army. Balban was the first to set up the Ariz department.
- **Maintenance of the Army:**
  - ✓ Before Alauddin the Turkish soldiers were assigned a number of villages in doab for the payment of the taxes.
  - ✓ Alauddin was the first sultan who **paid his soldiers fully in cash**. He paid 238 tankas to a trooper and 78 tankas more to one who maintained two horses.
  - ✓ The Turks also maintained a **large number of elephants for war purposes**.
  - ✓ A corps of sappers and miners were also attached to the army for clearing roads and removing obstacles for the maintenance of the army.
  - ✓ The Turks and Afghans predominated in the cavalry which was considered superior. The Hindus were employed largely in infantry.
- **Diwan-i-Risalat:**
  - ✓ It was a department dealing with **religious purposes**, foundations, Stipends to Scholars, and men of piety.
  - ✓ It was presided over by **chief Sadar** who was generally a leading qazi.
  - ✓ The Qazis dispensed Civil law based on **Sharia**. Hindu's laws were dispensed by the Panchayats in villages and by leaders of various castes in cities.
- **Diwan-i-insha:**
  - ✓ It dealt with the **state correspondence**.
  - ✓ All the correspondence, formal or confidential, between Sultan and the other state and with his subordinate officials was dealt with by this department.
- **Ruler's Household:**
  - ✓ It looked after the **personal comfort of the sultan** and took care of the needs of a large number of women in royal households.
  - ✓ Firuz Tughlaq had a separate department for slaves, many of whom were employed in royal workshops. The officer incharge of these activities was **wakil-i-dar**.
- **Barids:**
  - ✓ They were **Intelligence Agents** posted by Sultan in different parts of the empire.

### Local Administration:

- ❖ Turks divided the country **into a number of Iqtas** which they parceled out among leading Turkish Nobles. Later these tracts became **subas**.
- ❖ Holders of these offices were called **Muqtis or Walis**.
- ❖ Muqtis were totally independent at first. They were expected to **maintain law and order, collect revenue** and out of this revenue they were expected to meet the salaries of soldiers and keep the balance for themselves.
- ❖ As the central government became strong it began to **control the Muqtis**.
- ❖ It fixed the salaries of soldiers and started **paying the Mukti in cash**. Thus, muqtis were now required to remit their balance income to the center which they earlier used to keep for themselves.
- ❖ Below the provinces were the **Shiqs** and below them **Pargana** (group of 100 or 84 Villages).
- ❖ **Pargana was headed by Amil**.
- ❖ Most important people in the villages were **Khuts (Landowners) and Muqaddams (headman)**.

### Trade and Commerce during Delhi Sultanate:

- ❖ The consolidation of Delhi Sultanate, improvement in communication and establishment of a **sound currency system** based on **silver tankas and copper dirham**, gave a boost to trade and commerce during this period.
- ❖ This in turn led to the emergence of towns and cities. Ibn Battuta calls Delhi the largest city in the eastern part of the Islamic World.
- ❖ Other important cities that gained prominence during that period were - Lahore, Multan, Kara, Lakhnauti, Anhilwara (Patan) and Cambay.
- ❖ Bengal and Gujrat during that time were famous for their fine quality fabrics.
- ❖ Cambay was famous for textiles and gold and silver works. Sonargaon in Bengal was famous for raw silk and fine cotton cloth (Muslin).
- ❖ Indian textile had already established their position in the trade to countries on the **Red Sea and the Persian Gulf**.
- ❖ During this period the fine Indian textile was introduced in China as well where it was valued more than silk.
- ❖ India imported high grade textiles (Satin), glassware and horses from West Asia. From China it imported Raw Silk and Porcelain.
- ❖ In those days travel was always risky due to robbers and dacoits. However, the Royal roads were kept in good shape. There were many **Sarais** on the way for the comfort and safety of the travelers.
- ❖ In addition to the **Royal Road from Peshawar to Sonargaon (Bengal)**, Muhammad Tughlaq built a road from Delhi to Daulatabad.

## Decline of Delhi Sultanate:

### ❖ Internal Rebellion:

- During the latter half of Muhammad Tughlaq's reign, there were repeated rebellions in different parts of the empire.
- One after the other rebellions took place in Bengal, Mabar (T.N), Warangal, Awadh, and Gujrat.
- The rebellion in south India was one of the most serious. The Sultan rushed to the South to suppress the rebellion. During this the plague broke out and 2/3rd of the army perished. This was a blow from which Tughlaq could never recover.
- Soon after this, there was another **rebellion by two brothers Harihara and Bukka**. They set up the principality which gradually expanded, ultimately embracing the **Vijaynagar Empire**. In Deccan, some foreign nobles **set up a principality near Daulatabad** which ultimately expanded into the **Bahamani Kingdom**.
- Apart from this **Muhammad Tughlaq's policy** created deep discontent among nobles as well as the army. He also came into conflict with **Muslim theologians and Sufi saints** who were very influential.

### ❖ Firuz Tughlaq's Policy:

- He adopted the policy of trying to appease the nobles, the army and the theologians.
- Also, he asserted his authority to only such areas which could easily be administered by the Centre. Thus, **no attempt was made to reassert authority** over south and deccan.
- He led two campaigns to Bengal but remained unsuccessful. Thus, Bengal was thus lost to the Sultanate.
- His campaign in Gujrat led to his army losing its way in Rann of Kutch thus suffering severe losses.
- After Firuz the governors of the provinces became independent and the Sultan of Delhi was confined virtually to a small surrounding area of Delhi. As a wit said, "The dominion of the lord of the universe extends from Delhi to Palam".
- The weakness of the Delhi sultanate was made even worse by **Timur's invasion**. It resulted in the Drain of Wealth from India in the form of Gold, silver, jewelry, etc.

## Important Terminologies:

Concept/Term	Meaning/Purpose
a) Majlis-i-Khalwat	Council of friends and trusted officers who advised the Sultan, though their advice was not binding.
b) Amirs/Chahalgani	Nobles/Group of Forty
c) Diwan-i-Wizarat	Finance department headed by Wazir
d) Mustaufi-i-Mammali	Auditor general, responsible for state expenditure. In charge of accounts and receipts.
e) Khazin	Treasurer
f) Bar-i-Khas	The space where the Sultan received all his courtiers including Khans, Maliks

g) Bar-i-Aam	The place where the Sultan tried cases, received petitions, and complaints from people
h) Amir-i-Behr	Controller of boats
i) Muhtasib	Officer who kept strict watch over conduct of people
j) Diwan-iIshtihlqaq	Department of charity and mint.
k) Amir-i Haqib/Barbek	Master of ceremonies.
l) Wakil-i-Dar	Managed royal household.
m) Zawabit	State laws
n) Jahandari	Laws made by Sultans
o) Khet Batai	Without separating anything, land revenue on the basis of standing crop.
p) Lank Batai	Without separating grain from chaff.
q) Ras Batai	After separating grain from chaff.
r) Masahat	On the basis of measurement of land
s) Umara	Plural of amirs, amir means nobles or ruling groups in Delhi Sultanate.
t) Ulema	Muslims of religious learning
u) Jaziya	Personal and yearly tax on non-Muslims
v) Mameluks	Slave officers
w) Malik	One of the highest grade officers.
x) Fawazil	Excess amount paid to the exchequer by the iqtadars

○○○○



**PW Mobile APP:** <https://physicswala.page.link/?type=contact-us&data=open>

**For PW Website:** <https://www.physicswallah.live/contact-us>

# **DAILY CLASS NOTES**

---

## **MEDIEVAL HISTORY**

**Lecture - 12**

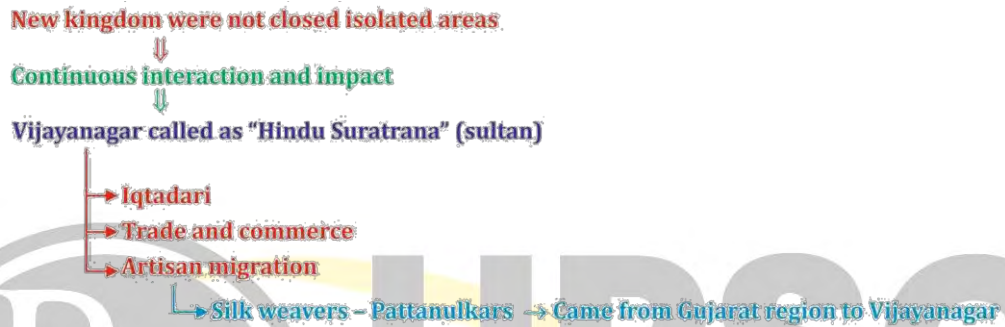
**Regional Kingdoms**



## Regional Kingdoms

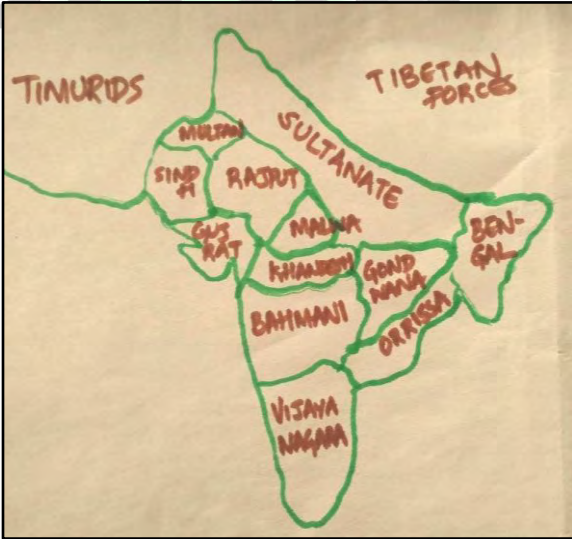
**Reasons for the Growth of Regional Kingdom:**

- ❖ After the 13<sup>th</sup> Century during the reign of Firuz Shah Tughlaq due to internal weaknesses, the process of **disintegration of the Delhi Sultanate** started and eventually declined.
- ❖ This period witnessed the **emergence of regional states** as some of the provincial rulers declared their independence from the rule of the Sultanate.
- ❖ During this time, agriculture expanded and began to produce significant **surpluses** that could be sold and used to **create wealth** in addition to feeding the population.
- ❖ As a result, the social groups that controlled the agricultural surplus grew stronger and **aspired** to form a kingdom and ruled it.



**At the end of the Tughlaq Era:**

- ❖ Provincial governors and autonomous principalities declared independence.
  - Bengal, Multan, Sindh were first
  - Gujarat, Malwa and Jaunpur.
- ❖ **Checks and Balance:**
  - **In West:** Gujarat, Malwa and Mewar balanced and checked the power of each other.
  - **In East:** Bengal was checked by the Gajapathi ruler of Orissa and Sharqis ruler of Jaunpur.
  - **In Delhi:** Tussle between the Sharqis ruler and Lodi came to an end after it was absorbed by Lodi.
  - Turned towards other independent states in the west (Malwa, Mewar, Gujarat) and got victory. Rana Sanga (1508-1528), he invited Babur to India and hoped that destruction of the Lodi would leave Mewar as the strongest power in the field.
    - Mewar or Mewad includes the present-day districts of Bhilwara, Chittorgarh, Rajsamand, Udaipur, Pirawa Tehsil of Jhalawar District of Rajasthan, Neemuch and Mandsaur of Madhya Pradesh and some parts of Gujarat.



- **In the South there were two kingdoms** viz Vijayanagara kingdom and Bahamani kingdom were the main rivals and the struggle between them continued for almost four decades over the lush, fertile lands known as the **Raichur Doab**.
- By 1377 CE, the Sultanate of Madurai had been destroyed, and the Vijayanagara empire had taken over the entirety of south India up to Rameshwaram, including the Cheras and Tamil nations (Kerala). Whilst in the north they had continuous hostility with the Bahmani Sultanate.



### Colonel Colin Mackenzie (1799):

- ❖ He was a **Scottish army officer** in the East India Company and later became the first Surveyor General of India.
- ❖ He was a collector of antiquities and an orientalist.
- ❖ He surveyed southern India, making use of local interpreters and scholars to study religion, oral histories, inscriptions etc.
- ❖ He ordered to survey of the Mysore region shortly after the British victory over Tipu Sultan in 1799:
  - He produced the first maps of the region.
  - He provided water-coloured monuments pictures.
  - His collections consist of thousands of manuscripts, inscriptions, translations, coins and paintings, which can be considered an important source of this time period.

### Robert Sewell (1845 – 1925):

- ❖ He was a **collector and magistrate in Madras Presidency** in colonial India. Like many civil servants turned Indologists of those times, he was a scholar in history. Also, in charge of the then-archaeology department.
- ❖ His aptly titled book, **A Forgotten Empire Vijayanagar: A Contribution to the History of India** published in 1900 is still considered a seminal work on this South Indian empire that was left buried in the otherwise overwhelming history of India.
- ❖ Somebody introduced him to a Sanskrit book **Vidyaranya Sikka** that explained the foundation of Vijayanagar Empire.

### Vijayanagara Empire:

#### Sources:

- ❖ **Amuktamalyada** was written by Krishnadevaraya.
- ❖ **Madhura Vijayam** was written by Gangadevi.
- ❖ **Manucharitra** was written by Allasani Peddana.

❖ Foreign Accounts:

- Ibn Battuta (Moroccan)
- Nicholas Conti (Venetian)
- Abdul Razak (Persian)
- Domingo Paes (Portuguese)

❖ Other Sources were:

- Copper plate Inscription of Devaraya II at Srirangam
- Ruins of Hampi
- Coins

❖ The Vijayanagara empire was founded by the sons of Sangama in the south of Tungabhadra in A.D. 1336. From then onwards the kingdom was ruled by the kings of four dynasties for a period of more than three hundred years which is an epoch-making event in the annals of medieval South India.

❖ The dynasties that ruled here include (Mnemonic – SSTA):

1. Sangama Dynasty (A.D 1336-1485)
2. Saluva Dynasty (A.D. 1485-1505)
3. Tuluva Dynasty (A.D 1505-1570)
4. Aravidu Dynasty (A.D.1570-1652)

❖ Vijayanagara is in Bellary District of northern Karnataka. It is the name of the now ruined capital city of the historic Vijayanagar Kingdom which extended over the southern part of India that included the territories of Mysore, Trichinopoly, Kanara, Pondicherry, Chingalpet and Kanchivaram.

❖ Vijayanagar Empire consolidated under Harihara I and began to expand and prosper under Bukka Raya. It is said that a sage Madhav Vidyaranya and his brother Sayana were the inspirational source for this empire.

❖ The rulers were strict worshipers of the Hindu Gods and Goddess, but also tolerant towards the other religions.

❖ They were the Great Patrons of art and culture, which also influenced development in the streams of music, literature and architecture.

- Many temples built in the territories of the south represent the style of Vijayanagar kingdom. Different temple building traditions in South and Central India came together in the Vijayanagara Architecture style. This synthesis inspired architectural innovation in Hindu temple construction.





➤ The empire's patronage enabled fine arts and literature to reach new heights in **Kannada, Telugu, Tamil, and Sanskrit** while **Carnatic music** evolved into its current form.

❖ The economy of the region flourished and several coins were introduced during the reign of the rulers of the Vijayanagar Empire.

**Sangama Dynasty:**

- ❖ Harihara I: 1336–1356
- ❖ Bukka Raya I: 1356–1377
- ❖ Harihara Raya II: 1377–1404
- ❖ Virupaksha Raya: 1404–1405
- ❖ Bukka Raya II: 1405–1406
- ❖ Deva Raya I: 1406–1422
- ❖ Ramachandra Raya: 1422
- ❖ Vira Vijaya Bukka Raya: 1422–1424
- ❖ Deva Raya II: 1424–1446
- ❖ Mallikarjuna Raya: 1446–1465
- ❖ Virupaksha Raya II: 1465–1485
- ❖ Praudha Raya: 1485

Vijaynagar	Bahmani	
1335 Harihara coronation		1485
1340		1490
1345	Allaudiin Hasan	1498 Portugese entry
1350		1500
1355 Bukka		1505
1360		1509 Krishna Dev Raya
1365		1515 Paes
1370		1520
1377 Madurai Sultan wiped out/Harihara II		1525
1380		1530
1385		1535
1390		1543 Sadashiva Raya
1397	Firuz Shah Bahmani	1545
1400		1550
1404 Devraya I		1555
1410		1565 Bannhatti battle (Tallikota)
1420 nicoloconti		1567
1422		1570
1425 Dev Raya II		1575
1430		1580
1435 Abdur Razzaq		1585
1440		1590
1446		1595
1450		1600
1455		1605
1460		1610
1465		1615
1470		1620
1475		1625
1480		1630

Split in 5



# **DAILY CLASS NOTES**

---

## **MEDIEVAL HISTORY**

**Lecture - 13**  
**Regional Kingdom II**





## Regional Kingdom II

### Sangama Dynasty Rulers:

- ❖ Harihara I: 1336–1356
- ❖ Bukka Raya I: 1356–1377
- ❖ Harihara Raya II: 1377–1404
- ❖ Virupaksha Raya: 1404–1405
- ❖ Bukka Raya II: 1405–1406
- ❖ Deva Raya I: 1406–1422
- ❖ Ramachandra Raya: 1422
- ❖ Vira Vijaya Bukka Raya: 1422–1424
- ❖ Deva Raya II: 1424–1446
- ❖ Mallikarjuna Raya: 1446–1465
- ❖ Virupaksha Raya II: 1465–1485
- ❖ Praudha Raya: 1485

Vijaynagar	Bahmani	
1335 Harihara coronation		1485
1340		1490
1345	Allaudiin Hasan	1498 Portugese entry
1350		1500
1355 Bukka		1505
1360		1509 Krishna Dev Raya
1365		1515 Paes
1370		1520
1377 Madurai Sultan wiped out/Harihara II		1525
1380		1530
1385		1535
1390		1543 Sadashiva Raya
1397	Firuz Shah Bahmani	1545
1400		1550
1404 Devraya I		1555
1410 nicoloconti		1565 Bannhatti battle (Tallikota)
1422		1567
1425 Dev Raya II		1570
1430		1575
1435 Abdur Razzaq		1580
1440		1585
1446		1590
1450		1595
1455		1600
1460		1605
1465		1610
1470		1615
1475		1620
1480		1625
		1630

### Sangama Dynasty (1336-1385):

- ❖ Harihara and Bukka were the founders of **Vidyanagar**, which was later **renamed as Vijayangar by Bukka**.
- ❖ Harihar II
- ❖ Deva Raya:
  - He built a dam across Tungabhadra river/irrigation works
  - Nicolo de conti visited during his reign.
- ❖ Deva Raya II:
  - He employed muslims in the army.

### Harihara and Bukka (1336-56):

- ❖ Harihar and his brother - Bukka founded the Vijayanagara Empire. They had been feudatories of the **Kakatiyas of Warangal**.
- ❖ They were captured by Muhammad bin Tughlaq for giving refuge to a Muslim rebel sent to Delhi as a prisoner and converted to Islam.
- ❖ Then they went to Kampili where they were imprisoned and converted to Islam. Later, they returned to the Hindu fold at the initiative of the **saint Vidyananya**. They proclaimed their independence and founded a new city on the south bank of the Tungabhadra River. It was called Vijayanagar meaning '**City of Victory**'.



- ❖ The **decline of the Hoysala kingdom** enabled Harihara and Bukka to expand their newly founded kingdom.
- ❖ By 1346, they brought the whole of the Hoysala kingdom under their control. The struggle between Vijayanagar and the Sultanate of Madurai lasted for about four decades and was finally eliminated.
- ❖ Meanwhile the Bahmani Kingdom came into existence in the Deccan.
- ❖ In the conflicts between the **Bahmanis and Vijayanagar, Harihara-I lost some territory.**
- ❖ After his death in AD 1355, his brother **Bukkaraya succeeded him.**
- ❖ On account of frequent wars with Bahmanis, Bukka could not do anything in the initial period, however, he **conquered Madurai** and extended his territory to the south up to Rameswaram.

### **Harihara II (AD 1377 - 1404):**

- ❖ Harihara II (AD 1377–1404), who ascended the throne after Bukkaraya, consolidated and its frontiers further extended.
- ❖ During this time coastal Andhra lying between Nellore and Kalinga was under the **Reddis of Kondaveedu.**
- ❖ Harihara II carried on a campaign, for gaining control over the territory, against the Reddis and wrested Addanki and Srisailam areas from the Reddis.
- ❖ This led to clashes with the **Velamas of Rachakonda in Telangana.** To counter attack, Rachakonda sought help from Brahmanis and this checkmate Harihara II from proceeding further into Telangana.
- ❖ The extension of Vijayanagar territory towards northwest gave its control over the ports of **Goa, Chaul, and Dabhol** and led to an expansion of commerce and ensuing prosperity.

### **Deva Raya I (c.1406–1422 CE):**

- ❖ In the dispute between sons, after the death of Harihara II, **Devaraya I (AD 1406 – 1422) emerged victorious** and ascended the throne only to wage wars against the Bahmanis, the Velamas of Telangana and the Reddis of Kondaveedu.
- ❖ His reign also saw the commencement of hostilities between the Gajapatis of Kalinga and the Rayas of Vijayanagar.
- ❖ He modernized the army by improving cavalry:
  - He employed Turkic archers in the army.
  - Imported horses from Arabia and Persia.
- ❖ He supported irrigation work and also built dams across Tungabhadra and Haridra River.
- ❖ He had a secular attitude in administrative matters.
  - He employed 10,000 muslims in the army and also built a mosque and a slaughterhouse for their convenience.
- ❖ **Foreign Travelers visited during his reign:**
  - **Nicolo Conti** an Italian traveler visited Vijayanagar during his reign in 1420 and he commented on Vijayanagara and Devraya by stating that, “in this city there are 90 k men fit to bear arms .... Their king is more powerful than all kings of India.”
  - Russian merchant **Nikitin** also visited during his reign and he wrote ‘**Voyage to India**’.
- ❖ Deva Raya patronized Kannada literature and Architecture.
- ❖ There was a **Pearl Hall** where he honored eminent men.

- ❖ Madhura (Jain Poet) lived in his court; he wrote Dharmanatha Purana (life of 15th Jain Tirthankara in Kannada) and a poem in eulogy of Gomateshwar (tribute).
- ❖ **Hazara Rama Temple** was constructed during his rule and it was the finest example of Deccan architecture.
- ❖ He made Vijayanagar one of the biggest cities of the 15th century.
- ❖ **Devaraya I died in AD 1422.**
  - After the death of Devaraya I, his sons, Ramachandra Raya and Vijayaraya I, who ruled one after the other, did not do anything significant.
  - The next ruler, Devaraya II (AD 1426-1446), son of Vijayaraya, was a great monarch. He affected the conquest of Kondaveedu and carried his arms into Kerala, subjugating the ruler of Quilon and other chieftains.

### Nicolo Conti:

- ❖ He was an Italian traveler who visited court of king Devaraya I of Vijayanagar in 1420 AD - 1421 AD.
- ❖ **Nicolo Conti's References:**
- ❖ The great city of Vijayanagar was situated near the very steep mountains, having a circumference of 60 miles.
- ❖ There were 90,000 men in Vijayanagar city who could bear arms.
- ❖ Their king was more powerful than other kings of India.
- ❖ The festival of **Maha Navami** was celebrated with great enthusiasm in this city.

### Deva Raya II (c.1426–46 CE):

- ❖ He was an able administrator, an ambitious warrior, and a man of letters.
- ❖ He authored well-known works in the **Kannada language** (Sobagina Sone and Amaruka) and in the **Sanskrit language** (Mahanataka Sudhanidhi). He also wrote a commentary on the Brahmasutra.
- ❖ **He patronized noted poets such as:**
  - Chamarasa and Kumara Vyasa: Kannada poets.
  - Gunda Dimdima: Sanskrit poet.
  - Kavisarvabhauma: Telugu poet.
  - Srinatha, author of Haravilasam, was also present at his court.
- ❖ **Secular Literature:** The noted South Indian mathematician, Parameshvara, from the Kerala school of astronomy and mathematics lived in his kingdom.
- ❖ He acquired the title of **Gajabetegara**, which literally means “**Hunter of Elephants**”.
- ❖ Italian traveler Nicolo Conti mentioned that the king levied tribute on **Ceylon, Quilon, Pegu, Pulicat**.
- ❖ But the kings who succeeded Devaraya II were quite incompetent and allowed the empire to disintegrate. In addition, there was pressure from Bahmani Sultans.

### Abdur Razzaq Samarkandi:

- ❖ He was the ambassador of the Timurid ruler Mirza Shah Rukh of Iran (Persia), sent to the **Samoothiri (Zamorin) of Calicut**.
- ❖ Abdur Razzak chronicled his Indian mission in his book titled '**Matla-us-Sadain wa Majma-ul-Bahrain**'.
- ❖ Visited Vijayanagar during the reign of king Devaraya II after reaching India in 1443 AD-1444 AD.



## Abdur Razzak's References:

### Calicut:

- ❖ They were black and they went about with nearly naked bodies, wearing only pieces of cloth, extending from navels to above their knees, called langots.
- ❖ In one hand they bore a dagger and in the other a leather shield.
- ❖ Both king and beggar look alike, but the Muslims wore rich luxurious costumes like the Arabs.
- ❖ Calicut is perfectly a safe harbor, and like Hormuz it attracts merchants from every part of the world and such security and justice was financed from the custom duty which was a one-fortieth of the product.
- ❖ Mostly inhabited by Hindus but a considerable number of Muslims also resided.
- ❖ Precious articles were brought from maritime countries such as Abyssinia (Ethiopia, Northeast Africa), Zirbad (Indonesia, Southeast Asia) and Zanzibar (East Africa).
- ❖ According to his observation it was a **Marumakkathayam or Matrilineal Society**.
- ❖ The Hindus were divided into many groups such as Brahmins, Yogis and others.
- ❖ Although they all share the same polytheism and idolatry, every group had a different system.
- ❖ He mentioned that there was one group who practiced the polyandry system i.e., women have multiple husbands.
- ❖ They divided the day and night, and each one went to their quarters at a specified time.
- ❖ There were between 2000 and 3000 Hindus when Abdur Razzak met with the Samoothiri; chief Musalmans were also present.
- ❖ However, the Samoothiri did not treat the embassy with any respect, so Abdur Razzak departed the court and went back to his lodgings.
- ❖ It was at this time that Abdur Razzak was invited to Vijayanagar by Deva Raya II.
- ❖ Ships were frequently sailing from Calicut to Mecca, **carrying largely pepper**.
- ❖ The people of Calicut were daring sailors and are referred to as "**Sons of China**".
- ❖ The ships of Calicut were not harassed by sea pirates.
- ❖ Nobody was allowed to kill a **cow** because they consider it to be so **sacred** that they rub the ashes of its dung upon their forehead.

### Vijayanagar:

- ❖ Abdur Razzak set out from Calicut by sea, and reached Mangalore from there he continued his journey by land.
- ❖ He passed a **magnificent bronze temple** en route and as per his observation that 'has not its equal in the universe'.
- ❖ It was an equilateral square made of cast bronze, and a massive human figure made of gold was sitting atop it. The statue appears to be staring at you because of the placement of its two red rubies that represent its eyes.
- ❖ He noticed another grand temple with beautiful sculpture at Belur, which was most likely the **Chennakeshava Temple**.
- ❖ In addition to sending a procession to welcome him, the Raya also gave him a beautiful house.



- ❖ All the inhabitants of Vijayanagar wore jewels and gold ornaments.
- ❖ The city of Vijayanagar had **7 concentric fortified walls**. The city resembled the city of Herat (Afghanistan).
- ❖ Between the first, second and third walls, there were cultivated fields, gardens and houses.
- ❖ From the third to the seventh fortress, there can be seen crowded shops and bazaars.
- ❖ Four bazaars were located opposite one another at the gate to the king's palace, where the rose merchants expose their sweet smelling and fresh-looking roses for sale.
- ❖ People could not live without roses, and they look upon them as essential as food.
- ❖ The tradesmen of different craft had their shops close to one another.
- ❖ **Two types of writing method:**
  1. They wrote letters with a kalam of iron upon a coconut leaf.
  2. They blacken a white surface, and write letters with a soft stone, which lasts for a long time.
- ❖ **Different types of Coins:** Money made of **gold coins** mixed with alloy: Varaha, Pratapa and Panam (Fanam) and **silver coins are called Tar and copper coins Jital**.
- ❖ **Elephants:** Even though the king has a sizable number of elephants in his realm, the biggest ones are kept close to the palace. He owned a large white elephant with scattered gray spots. The elephants of the palace are fed upon Khichdi.
- ❖ **Meeting with the Kings:**
  - In the forty-pillared hall where the king was seated in high splendor, a large group of Brahmans and other people were positioned to his right and left.
  - The king was dressed in a green satin robe, and around his neck was a collar set with beautiful gems and pearls.
  - He mentioned King's Harem, where the king had a large seraglio containing as many as 700 princesses and concubines.
- ❖ Razzak received two packets of betel, a purse with 500 Panam, and 20 miskals of camphor before he left.
- ❖ The writings of Abdul Razzak bear testimony to the supremacy of the king over many parts of south India.
- ❖ According to him, the dominions of Devaraya II extended from Ceylon to Gulbarga and from Orissa to Malabar.
- ❖ The relations between the Vijayanagar and Bahmani kingdoms continued to be hostile during the reign of Devaraya II also.
- ❖ Extensive **commerce and revenues** from various sources contributed to the prosperity of the Vijayanagar kingdom under him.

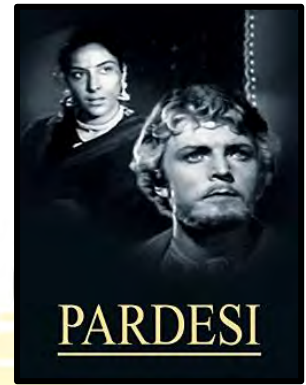
### **Athanasius Nikitin:**

- ❖ He was from **Tver (Russia)** and reached the west coast of India in 1469, and landed at the port of Cambay (Khambhat) in present-day Gujarat.
- ❖ He described his trip in a narrative known as '**The Journey Beyond Three Seas**'.
- ❖ Russian horse merchant who visited India during 1470-1474 AD.
- ❖ He visited the Hindu sanctuary of Perwattum, which he called "**The Jerusalem of the Hindus**".
- ❖ Reached Chaul in Maharashtra.

- ❖ He **resided at Bidar** for a long time:
  - It was a gated city.
  - Official for record keeping
  - It has decorated elephants
  - Mentions of **Eid celebration** where Sultan spends for pomp and show were also found in his account.
- ❖ He spent some years in the Deccan region and traveled to the Bahmani kingdom.
- ❖ Mahmud Gawan called him **Tuzzar**.
- ❖ He left behind a detailed account of the court, army and condition of people under Bahmani rule.
- ❖ He mentioned the conflict between Vijayanagar and Bahamani.
- ❖ According to him **Bicheneger (Vijaynagar)** was a city surrounded by 3 forts near a river.
- ❖ He called the king as Hindu Sultan.
- ❖ He also mentioned loss of contact with Christianity.

### Nikitin honored in Popular Culture:

- ❖ In 1957, during the high time of Indo-Russian amity, an Indo-Soviet movie was co-produced between the state-owned "Mosfilm Studio", and Khwaja Ahmad Abbas, "Naya Sansar International" production house.
- ❖ It was titled **Pardesi** in Hindi and **Хождение за три моря (Khozhdenie za tri morya)** in Russian.
- ❖ The film was in **SovColor** (the "Soviet Color" equivalent to Technicolor), though no colour print of the Hindi version is known to survive in India. Only a black and white copy of the Hindi film survives.
- ❖ **Source:** <https://rttl.me/2020/06/08/the-first-russian-in-india/>



### Conflict between Vijayanagar and Bahamani Empire:

- ❖ The conflict between Vijayanagar Empire and the Bahmani kingdom lasted for many years.
- ❖ The dispute over **Raichur Doab**, the region between the **rivers Krishna and Tungabhadra** and also over the **fertile areas of Krishna-Godavari delta** led to this long-drawn conflict.
- ❖ The greatest ruler of the Sangama dynasty was Deva Raya II. But he could not win any clear victory over the Bahmani Sultans.
- ❖ After the death of Deva Raya II, the Sangama dynasty became weak.
- ❖ The next dynasty, **Saluva dynasty founded by Saluva Narasimha**, reigned only for a brief period (1486-1509).

### Saluva Dynasty (1486-1505):

#### Important Rulers of Saluva Dynasty:

- ❖ Saluva Narasimha Deva Raya: 1485–1491
- ❖ Thimma Bhupala: 1491
- ❖ Narasimha Raya II: 1491–1505

#### Saluva Narasimha:

- ❖ He was the **founder** of the Saluva Dynasty.
- ❖ He was succeeded by two minors Tirumal and Immadi Narasimha

- ❖ Regency of Narasa Nayaka
- ❖ **Vasco da gama** landed at Calicut 1498 during this period.
- ❖ The Vijayanagar minister, Saluva Narasimha, who usurped the throne in AD 1485 could successfully counter these forces. Thus, the Saluva line of kings came to rule Vijayanagar. However, he had to spend a good deal of his time and energy putting down many rebel chieftains.

### Tuluva Dynasty (1505-1570):

- ❖ Saluva Narasimha died in AD 1490 leaving his two sons to the care of Narasanayaka of the Tuluva family, a trusted general.

### Narasanayaka:

- ❖ Narasanayaka assumed the power as a regent in AD 1492 keeping the real rule under tutelage.
- ❖ Narasanayaka died in AD 1503 and by that time he had established his authority effectively over the whole of his extensive dominion.
- ❖ His **son, Vira Narasimha**, succeeded him as the regent and proclaimed himself as a ruler in AD 1506, thus inaugurating the third dynasty.
- ❖ He died in AD 1509 and his brother, Krishnadevaraya, succeeded him.

### Ludovico Di Varthema:

- ❖ He was an Italian traveler who visited India during 1502 AD-1508 AD.
- ❖ He was a soldier by profession and was honored by the Portuguese Government.
- ❖ **He left a detailed account about Vijayanagar:**
  - Large strong walled city.
  - He mentioned King's ornamentation.
  - He also documented the empire's large army with 40,000 horsemen and 400 elephants.



### Important Ruler of Tuluva Dynasty:

- ❖ Tuluva Narasa Nayaka: 1491–1503
- ❖ Vira Narasimha Raya: 1503–1509
- ❖ Krishna Deva Raya: 1509–1529
- ❖ Achyuta Deva Raya: 1529–1542
- ❖ Venkata I: 1542
- ❖ Sadasiva Raya: 1542–1570

### Vir Narsimha (1503–1509):

- ❖ He was the son of Narasa nayaka.
- ❖ He killed Immadi Narasimha.

### Krishnadevaraya (1509-1529):

- ❖ He was the brother of Vir Narsimha.
- ❖ Saluva Timma placed him on throne
- ❖ He was the chief minister of Vira Narasimha.
- ❖ He maintained a friendly relationship with Albuquerque (Portuguese).
- ❖ His famous writings were **Amuktamalyada and Jambavati Kalyanam.**
- ❖ He laid the foundation of Vijayamahala, Hazara Rama Temple and Vithalswami Temple.
- ❖ The Portuguese travelers **Domingo Paes and Barbosa** came to India during his reign.

Vijaynagar	Bahmani	
1335 Harihara coronation		1485
1340		1490
1345	Allaudiin Hasan	1498 Portugese entry
1350		1500
1355 Bukka		1505
1360		1509 Krishna Dev Raya
1365		1515 Paes
1370		1520
1377 Madurai Sultan wiped out/Harihara II		1525
1380		1530
1385		1535
1390		1543 Sadashiva Raya
1397	Firuz Shah Bahmani	1545
1400		1550
1404 Devraya I		1555
1410 nicoloconti		1565 Bannhatti battle (Tallikota)
1420		1567
1422		1570
1425 Dev Raya II		1575
1430		1580
1435 Abdur Razzaq		1585
1440		1590
1446		1595
1450		1600
1455		1605
1460		1610
1465		1615
1470		1620
1475		1625
1480		1630

Split in 5

### Vijayanagara Empire during Krishnadevaraya:

- ❖ The period of Krishnadevaraya was considered as the **golden age of Vijayanagar history.** He was a great warrior, statesman, administrator and a patron of arts.
- ❖ His first task was to repulse the Bahmanis. By that time the Bahmani kingdom was replaced by Deccan Sultanates.
- ❖ The Deccan Sultanate armies were decisively defeated in the **Battle of Diwani by Krishna Deva Raya.** He then invaded Raichur Doab which had resulted in the confrontation with the Sultan of Bijapur, Ismail Adil Shah.



- ❖ But Krishna Deva Raya defeated him and captured the city of Raichur in 1520. From there he marched to Bidar and was captured.
- ❖ He extended his dominion in the east and north-east by defeating the Gajapatis of Orissa in AD 1518.
- ❖ Krishna Deva Raya's Orissa campaign was also successful. He **defeated the Gajapathi ruler Prataparudra** and conquered the whole of Telangana.
- ❖ He maintained **friendly relations with the Portuguese**. **Albuquerque sent his ambassadors** to Krishna Deva Raya.
- ❖ Krishnadevaraya was a **Vaishnavite** but he respected all religions.
- ❖ He was a great patron of literature and art and he was known as **Andhra Bhoja**. **Andhra Pitama**, **Abhinava Bhoja**. Eight eminent scholars known as **Ashtadiggajas** were at his royal court.
- ❖ **Allasani Peddanna** was the greatest and he was called **Andhrakavita Pitamaga**.
  - His important works include Manucharitam and Harikathasaram.
- ❖ **Other important scholars of this time:**
  - **Tenali Ramakrishna**, author of Panduranga Mahamatyam.
  - **Pingali Suranna**, author of Garuda Puranam, Prabhavatee Pradyumnamu, Raghava Pandaveeyam and Kalapurnodayamu.
  - **Nandi Thimmana** wrote Parijathapaharanam Madayyagari Mallana wrote Rajasekhara Charitram
  - **Dhurjati** wrote Kalahasti Mahatyamu.
  - **Ayyalaraju Ramabhadru** wrote Sakalakatha Sangraha.
  - **Ramaabhyudayamu Battumurthy or Ramarajabhushanudu** wrote Kavyalankarasangrahamu, Vasucharitra, Narasabhupaliyam and Harischandranalopakhyanamu
- ❖ **Krishnadevaraya himself authored:**
  - Telugu work, Amuktamalyada and
  - Sanskrit works, Jambavati Kalyanam and Ushaparinayam.
- ❖ He repaired most of the temples of south India.
- ❖ He built the famous **Vittalaswami and Hazara Ramaswamy temples** at Vijayanagar.
  - The Vittala Temple in Hampi has **56 Musical Pillars** also known as the SaReGaMa Pillars.
  - Sa, Re, Ga, Ma, are the four of the seven musical notes.
  - The pillars produce musical tones when struck with a thumb. It sounds like bells ringing.
- ❖ He also built a new city called **Nagalapuram** in memory of his mother queen Nagala Devi.
- ❖ Besides, he built a large number of **Rajagopuram**.
- ❖ Krishna Devaraya died in AD 1529.
- ❖ After his death, Vijayanagar kingdom started declining gradually.



**Vittalaswami temple**

### **Duarte Barbosa:**

- ❖ He was a native of Portugal, who visited India as Portuguese official in 1500 AD - 1516 AD.
- ❖ He worked as the administrator of Cranganore (now Kodungallur in Kerala) in 1502 AD.

- ❖ Later on, he acted as a translator of the Portuguese governor Albuquerque & also visited Vijayanagar in 1516 AD during the reign of **king Krishnadeva Raya**.
- ❖ **Barbosa's References:**
  - Vijayanagar was a very big and highly populous city.
  - Sati was prevalent in Vijayanagar.
  - Export from Bhatkal.
  - Import via Goa because of the cartaze system.

### Domingo Paes:

- ❖ He was a native of Portugal who visited Vijayanagar during the reign of **Krishnadeva Raya** in 1520 AD - 1522 AD.
- ❖ He went there as part of a group of traders from the then colony of Goa.
- ❖ Paes wrote a descriptive glory of Vijayanagar empire in his book titled '**Narrative of Domingo Paes**'.
- ❖ **Paes' References:**
  - Animal sacrifice was practiced in Vijayanagar.
  - The height of the king of Vijayanagar was medium and his complexion was fair.
  - Foreigners were honored in Vijayanagar.
  - There were temples in every street.

### Achyuta Deva Rai (1529-1542):

- ❖ He was nominated by Krishna Deva.
- ❖ **Fernao Nuniz** came in his time
- ❖ **He patronized:**
  - Kannada poet Chatu Vittalanatha
  - Purandaradasa (father of Carnatic Music)/great singer and composer
  - Rajnath Dindima II (sanskrit scholar)
- ❖ **Tiruvengalanatha temple** later called Achyuta Raya temple was built during his reign.
- ❖ After death of Achyuta Deva -Raya Venkata I (son of KDR) - Weak and killed in 6 months

### Sadasiva Raya:

- ❖ Sadasiva Raya was the son of Krishna Deva Raya
- ❖ He was the last ruler of the Tuluva Dynasty.
- ❖ The real power was with **Aravidu Aliya Ramaraya** (Aliya means the son in law in Kannada).
- ❖ He removed the old nobility and replaced it with those loyal to him.
- ❖ He divided Bahamani Splinters.
- ❖ He tried to balance the Deccan powers by playing one against the other.



**Tiruvengalanatha temple**



### Fernao Nuniz:

- ❖ A native of Portugal, a horse trader who visited Vijayanagar in 1535 AD-1537 AD during the reign of Achyuta Raya.
- ❖ He wrote a book titled 'The Chronicle of Fernao Nuniz'.
- ❖ **Nuniz References:**
  - Nuniz noted the presence of women soothsayers, astrologers and wrestlers in Vijayanagar.
  - A common practice noted among the rich was polygamy, with men marrying more than one wife. Child marriage was common. Big dowries were demanded at the time of marriage.
  - Brahmins were honest and good at accountancy.
  - Sati was a common practice.

### Aravidu Dynasty (1570 – 1650):

- ❖ The Aravidu Dynasty ruled from **Penukonda and later from Chandragiri (near Tirupati)** for about another century. Thirumala, Sri Ranga, and Venkata II were the important rulers of this dynasty.
- ❖ **Sri Ranga III** (c.1642–1646 CE) was the last ruler of the Vijayanagar Empire.



# DAILY CLASS NOTES

## MEDIEVAL HISTORY

Lecture - 14  
**Regional Kingdom III**



## Regional Kingdom III

### Battle of Talikota - 1565 (Rakshasa Tangdi/Bannihatti):

- ❖ The **Deccan States** (Bijapur, Ahmadnagar, Golkonda and Bidar, except Berar) formed a confederacy and inflicted a crushing blow on the Vijayanagar armies at Bannihatti in the Battle of Talikota in c.1565 CE.
- ❖ During the **reign of Rama Raya**, the combined forces of Bijapur, Ahmadnagar, Golkonda and Bidar defeated him at the Battle of Talikota in 1565. This battle is also known as **Raksasa Thangadi**.
- ❖ Rama Raya was imprisoned and executed by Hussain Nizam Shah. The city of Vijayanagar was destroyed.
- ❖ This battle was generally considered to mark the end of the Vijayanagar Empire.
- ❖ However, the Vijayanagar kingdom existed under the Aravidu Dynasty for about another century. Thirumala, Sri Ranga and Venkata II were the important rulers of this dynasty.

**Caesar Fredrick:**

- He was a traveler from Venice, Italy, who visited India in 1567 AD-1568 AD after the Battle of Talikota (1565 AD).
- He wrote about the massive destruction and havoc faced by Vijayanagar due to this battle.

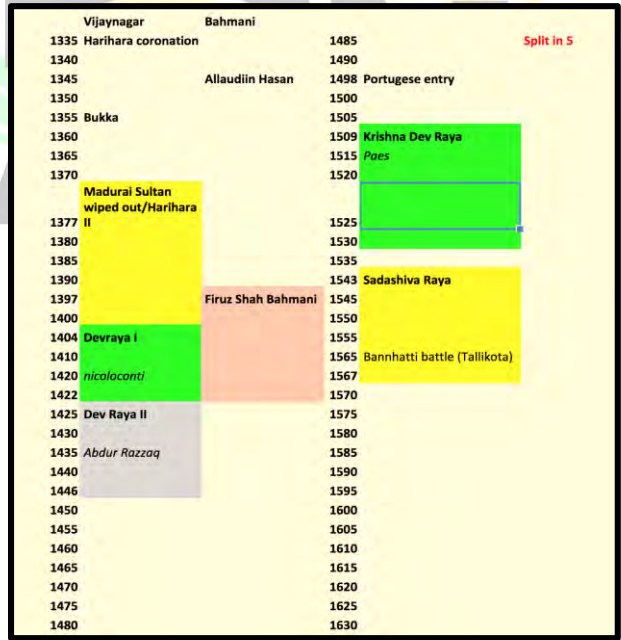
### Aravidu Dynasty (1570-1650)

#### Important Rulers of Aravidu Dynasty:

- ❖ **Aliya Rama Raya:** 1542–1565
- ❖ **Tirumala Deva Raya:** 1565–1572
- ❖ **Sriranga I:** 1572–1586
- ❖ **Venkata II:** 1586–1614
- ❖ **Sriranga II:** 1614
- ❖ **Rama Deva Raya:** 1617–1632
- ❖ **Venkata III:** 1632–1642
- ❖ **Sriranga III:** 1642–1646

#### Tirumala Raya (1565–1572):

- ❖ He was the brother of Ramaraja.
- ❖ He ruled under the name of Sadashiva Raya.

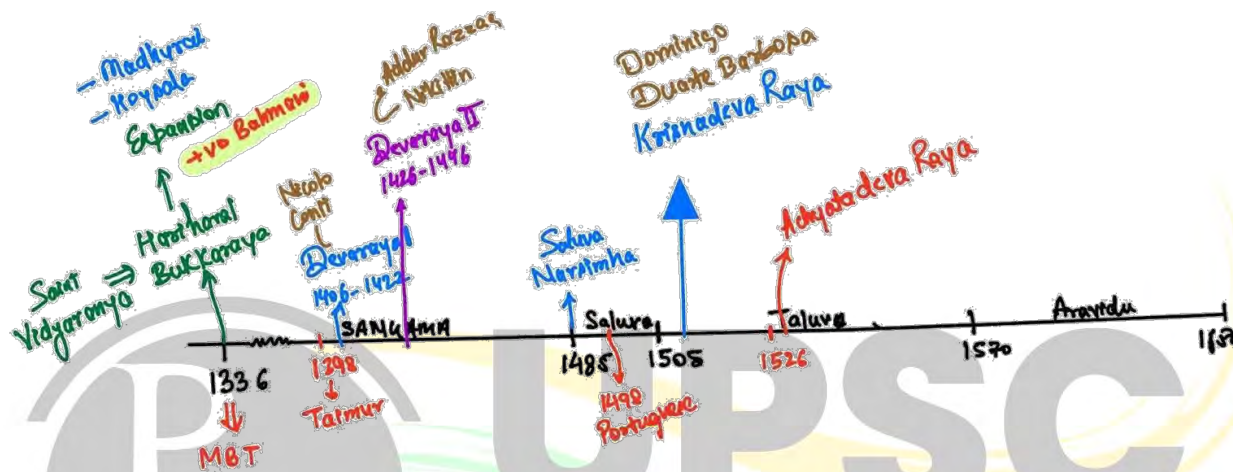


**Society:**

- ❖ It was the only empire in India which **employed women** in the services even in the battle.
- ❖ This dynasty promoted widow remarriage.

**Architecture:**

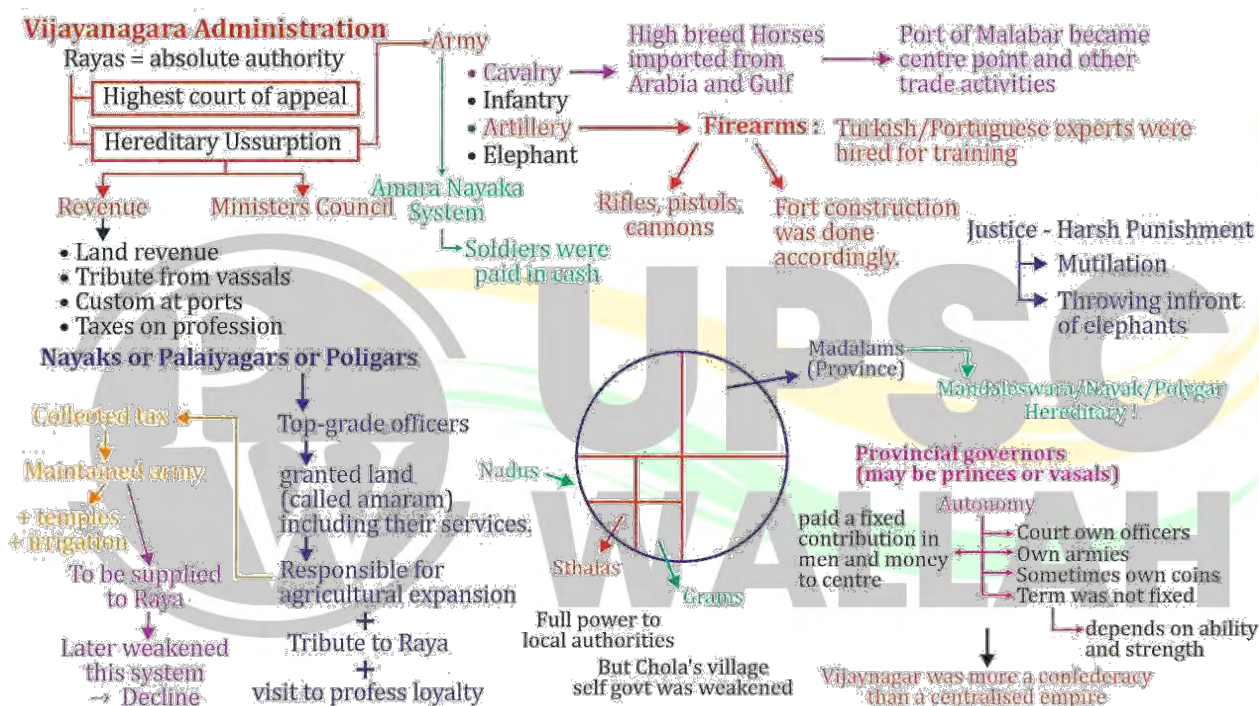
- ❖ **Provida Style** of architecture was evident.
- ❖ It had pillars and piers (rectangular pillars) and a mandapa (open pavilion).



**Administration During Vijayanagar Empire:**

- ❖ The administration under the Vijayanagar Empire was **well organized**.
- ❖ The king enjoyed:
  - **Absolute authority** in executive, judicial and legislative matters.
  - He was the **highest court of appeal**. The succession to the throne was on the principle of hereditary status.
  - Sometimes usurpation to the throne took place as Saluva Narasimha came to power by ending the Sangama dynasty.
- ❖ The king was assisted by a **Council of Ministers** in his day-to-day administration. The Empire was divided into different administrative units called **Mandalams, Nadus, Sthalas** and finally into **grams**.
- ❖ The governor of Mandalam was called **Mandaleswara or Nayak**.
- ❖ Vijayanagar rulers gave full powers to the local authorities in the administration.
- ❖ Besides land revenue, tributes and gifts from vassals and feudal chiefs, customs collected at the ports, taxes on various professions were other sources of income to the government.
- ❖ **Land revenue** was fixed generally **one sixth** of the produce.

- ❖ The expenditure of the government includes personal expenses of the king and the charities given by him and military expenditure.
- ❖ In the matter of justice, harsh punishments such as mutilation and throwing to elephants were followed.
- ❖ The Vijayanagar **army was well-organized and efficient.**
- ❖ It consisted of the cavalry, infantry, artillery and elephants. High-breed horses were procured from foreign traders.
- ❖ The **top-grade officers** of the army were known as **Nayaks or Poligars.**
- ❖ They were granted land in lieu of their services. These lands were called **amaram.**
- ❖ Soldiers were usually paid in cash.



**Vijayanagara Society:**

- ❖ Allasani Peddanna in his Manucharitam refers to the existence of four castes viz, **Brahmins, Kshatriyas, Vaishyas, and Sudras** (BKVS) in the Vijayanagar society.
- ❖ Silk and cotton clothes were common and used mainly for dress.
- ❖ Some of the popular kinds of amusement included dancing, singing, wrestling, gambling, and cockfighting.
- ❖ Foreign travelers left vivid accounts on the splendor of buildings and luxurious social life.
- ❖ Paes makes reference to the beautiful houses of the rich and the large number of their household servants.
- ❖ Nicolo Conti refers to the prevalence of slavery.

## Religion:

- ❖ Kings were mainly **Shaivites** and Virupaksha was their family deity.
- ❖ Ramanuja's Shrivaisnavism was popular.
- ❖ Tolerant towards other religions.
- ❖ **As per Barbosa:**
  - There was **religious freedom** for everyone Christian, Jew, Moor, heathen.
  - Muslims were employed in army mosques.
  - Deva Ray II allotted them Jagirs.
  - Temple buildings were rich and participated in trade.

## Position of Women:

- ❖ The position was not much improved.
- ❖ Some were learned such as **Gangadevi, wife of Kumara Kampana** and she authored **Madura Vijayam**.
- ❖ According to **Ferano Nuniz:**
  - Women were employed as dancers, domestic servants
  - Palanquin bearers
  - Astrologer, soothsayer
  - Wrestler
- ❖ **Shahgaman (Sati)** was honored
- ❖ The practice of **Devdasi** was prevalent.
- ❖ Paes referred to the polygamy prevalent among royal families.

## Economy:

- ❖ Chief occupation was **agriculture**.
- ❖ The Vijayanagar rulers encouraged further growth by providing **irrigation facilities**.
- ❖ **New tanks were built and dams** were constructed across the rivers like Tungabhadra. Nuniz refers to the excavation of canals.
- ❖ There were numerous industries and they were organized into guilds.
- ❖ During this time, metal workers and other artisans saw great success.
- ❖ There were **diamond mines** in the Kurnool and Anantapur districts.
- ❖ The chief **gold coin** was the **varaha** but weights and measures varied from place to place.
- ❖ Inland, coastal, and overseas trade led to general prosperity.
- ❖ **Import items were:** Horses, Pearls, Copper-corals, Coral, Mercury, China silk, Velvet, etc.
- ❖ **Export items were:** Cotton, Silk, Spices, Rice, Iron, Salt paper, Sugar, etc.
- ❖ Various sea ports such as **Malabar and Cannanore (Chief port)**.

- ❖ The Vijayanagar empire had relations with Arabia, Persia, South Africa, Portugal, Burma, Malay Peninsula, China, etc.

### Vijayanagar Art and Architecture:

- ❖ Vijayanagar era architecture can be broadly classified into **religious, courtly, and civic architecture**.
- ❖ Its style is a **harmonious combination** of the Chalukya, Hoysala, Pandya, and Chola styles that evolved in earlier centuries and represents a return to the simplicity and serenity of the past.
- ❖ Preferred for its durability, local hard granite was the building material of choice, as it had been for the Badami Chalukyas; however, soapstone, which was soft and easily carved, was also used for reliefs and sculptures.

### Temples Architecture

- ❖ Vijayanagar temples are surrounded by strong enclosures and characterized by ornate pillared **kalyana mandapam** (marriage halls) **tall Raya Gopurams** (carved monumental towers at the entrance of the temple) built of wood, brick, and stucco in the Chola style; and adorned with life-sized figures of gods and goddesses.
- ❖ This **Dravida Style** became popular during the reign of Krishnadevaraya and is seen in South Indian temples constructed over the next two centuries.
- ❖ Vijayanagar temples are also known for their **carved pillars**, which depict charging horses, figures from Hindu mythology, and yali (hippogriffs).
- ❖ Some of the larger temples are dedicated to a male deity, with a separate shrine intended for the worship of his female counterpart.
- ❖ Some famous temples exemplifying the Vijayanagar style include the Virupaksha Temple at Hampi and the **Hazara Rama temple of Deva Raya I**.

### Palaces and Courtly Architecture:

- ❖ No royal palace structures from the Vijayanagara period have survived intact, and most of what is known about them has been drawn from archaeological excavations at Hampi.
- ❖ Most of the palaces faced east or north and stood within compounds surrounded by high, tapering stone and earth walls.
- ❖ They were built on raised granite platforms with multiple tiers of moldings decorated with carved friezes.
- ❖ Palaces usually spanned multiple levels and had tall flights of stairs flanked on either side by balustrades carved with yali and elephants.
- ❖ Pillars and beams were made of wood and the roofs of brick and lime concrete.
- ❖ The courtly architecture of Vijayanagar was generally made of mortar mixed with stone rubble and often shows **secular styles** with Islamic-influenced arches, domes, and vaults.



Virupaksha temple at Hampi



Hazara Rama temple at Hampi

### Sculpture in the Vijayanagar Empire:

- ❖ Vijayanagar sculpture can most commonly be seen in the **reliefs, pillars, and monolithic statues of temples.**
- ❖ The Vijayanagara Empire’s patronage enabled its fine arts and literature to rise to new heights.
- ❖ Its legacy of sculpture, painting, and architecture influenced the development of the arts in South India long after the empire came to an end.
- ❖ The mingling of South Indian styles resulted in a richness not seen in earlier centuries, including a focus on reliefs in addition to sculpture that surpassed that seen previously in India.
- ❖ **Sculpture Material:**
  - Preferred for its **durability, local hard granite** was the building material of choice for architecture; however, soapstone, which was soft and easily carved, was commonly used for reliefs and sculptures.
  - While the use of granite reduced the density of sculptured works, granite was a more durable material for the temple structure.
  - Because granite is prone to flaking, few pieces of individual sculptures reached the high levels of quality seen in previous centuries.
  - In order to cover the unevenness of the stone used in sculptures, artists employed **brightly painted plaster** to smooth over and finish rough surfaces.
- ❖ Sculpture was integrally linked with architecture in the creation of Vijayanagar temples.
- ❖ Large life-size figures of men, women, gods, and goddesses adorn the gopuram of many Vijayanagara temples.
- ❖ Temple pillars often have **engravings** of charging horses or hippogryphs (yali)—horses standing on hind legs with their forelegs lifted and riders on their backs.
- ❖ The horses on some pillars stand seven to eight feet tall.
- ❖ On the other side of the pillar are often carvings from **Hindu mythology.**
- ❖ Another element of the Vijayanagar style is the carving and consecration of large **monolithic statues**, such as:



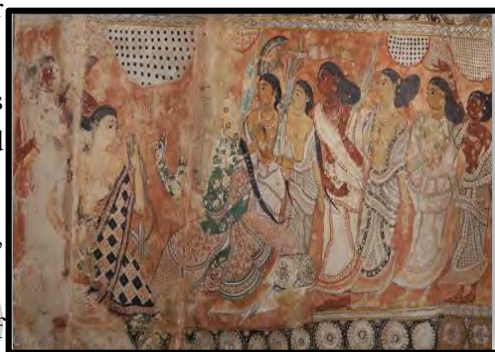
- The Sasivekalu Ganesha and Kadalekalu Ganesha at Hampi;
- The Gommateshvara (Bahubali) monoliths in Karkala and Venur;
- The Nandi bull in Lepakshi
- ❖ Examples of this style can also be seen in the Vijayanagara temples of Kolar, Kanakagiri, Shringeri and other towns of Karnataka; the temples of Tadpatri, Lepakshi, Ahobilam, Tirumala Venkateswara, and Srikalahasti in Andhra Pradesh; and the temples of Vellore, Kumbakonam, Kanchi, and Srirangam in Tamil Nadu.

### Painting in the Vijayanagar Empire:

- ❖ Painting in the Vijayanagar Empire, which evolved into the Mysore style of painting, is best illustrated in the elaborate wall paintings of temples.

### ❖ The Vijayanagar School and Mysore Painting:

- In addition to architecture and sculpture, the Vijayanagar emperors were enthusiastic patrons of painting.
- The Vijayanagar school of painting was renowned for its **frescoes** of Hindu mythological themes on temple walls and ceilings.
- The rulers of Vijayanagar encouraged literature, art, architecture, religious, and philosophical discussions.
- With the fall of the Vijayanagar empire after the Battle of Talikota in 1565 CE, the artists who were under royal patronage migrated to various other places such as Mysore, Tanjore, and Surpur.
- Absorbing the local artistic traditions and customs, the Vijayanagar school of painting gradually evolved into many styles of painting in South India, including the **Mysore and Tanjore schools of painting**.
- Mysore painting, an important form of South Indian classical painting, developed out of Vijayanagar painting and originated in the southern town of Mysore, in Karnataka, during the reign of the Vijayanagar emperors.



### Characteristics of Vijayanagar Painting:

- ❖ Mysore paintings are known for their elegance, muted colors, and attention to detail. Popular themes include **Hindu gods and goddesses** and scenes from Hindu mythology.
- ❖ The paintings are characterized by delicate lines, intricate brush strokes, graceful delineation of figures, and the discreet use of bright vegetable colors and lustrous gold leaf.
- ❖ More than mere decorative pieces, the paintings are designed to inspire feelings of devotion and humility in the viewer.

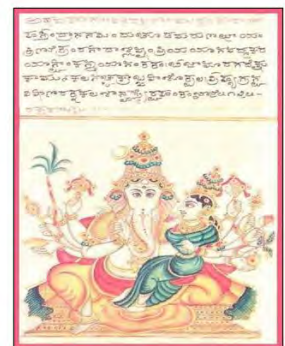


**Dashavatar Painting at Virupaksha Temple, Hampi**

- ❖ The painter's individual skill in giving expression to various emotions is therefore of paramount importance to this style of painting.
- ❖ The painters in Mysore prepared their own materials. The colors were from natural sources of vegetable, mineral, leaves, stones, and flowers. Brushes were made with squirrel hairs for delicate work, and for superfine lines, a brush made of pointed blades of a special variety of grass was used.
- ❖ Due to the long-lasting quality of the earth and vegetable colors used, the original Mysore paintings still retain their freshness and luster even today.
- ❖ **Wall Paintings:**
  - Vijayanagar art includes wall paintings such as the **Dashavatara** (the Ten Avatars of Vishnu) and the **Girija Kalyana** (the marriage of Parvati, Shiva's consort) in the Virupaksha Temple at Hampi; the Shiva Purana murals (the Tales of Shiva) at the Virabhadra temple at Lepakshi; and Kamaakshi and Varadaraja temples at Kanchi.

### Manuscripts in Vijayanagar Empire:

- ❖ The most famous of the manuscripts detailing the various nuances of the Mysore school is the Sritattvanidhi, a voluminous work of 1500 pages prepared under the **patronage of Mummadi Krishnaraja Wodeyar**.
  - This pictorial digest is a compendium of illustrations of gods, goddesses, and mythological figures with instructions to painters on an incredible range of topics concerning composition placement, color choice, individual attributes, and mood.
  - The seasons, eco-happenings, animals, and plant world are also effectively depicted in these paintings as co-themes or contexts.
  - Other Sanskrit literary sources such as the **Vishnudharmottara Purana**, **Abhilasarthacintamani**, and **Sivatatvaratnakara** also highlight the objectives and principles of painting, methods of preparing pigments, brushes, qualifications of the chitrakar (the traditional community of painters), and the technique to be followed.



**Sritattvanidhi**  
The manuscript of  
Vijayanagar

### Religion, Language and Literature under Vijayanagara Empire:

- ❖ The Rayas of Vijayanagar regarded all sects of Hinduism alike, built temples of **Shiva and Vishnu** and patronized them by lavish grants. They patronized even Jains and Muslims.
- ❖ Telugu language and literature was given a preferential treatment and **Telugu was treated as the official language** of the empire. Simultaneously, Sanskrit and other languages were encouraged by the Vijayanagar rulers.
- ❖ The renowned **Telugu poet Srinatha** was honored with **Kanakabhishekam** by **Proudhadevaraya** of the first dynasty of the rulers.

- ❖ Particularly, the reign of Krishnadevaraya marked a new era in the literary history of south India. He was himself a scholar and authored **Amuktamalyada**, a celebrated Telugu work.
- ❖ His court known as **Bhuvanavijayam**, was adorned by such **eminent poets** like Allasani Peddana, Nandi Timmana, Dhurjati, Tenali Ramakrishna, Mallana, Ramarajabhushana, Pingali Surana and Rudra, known as **Ashtadiggajas**.
- ❖ The greatest of them was **Allasani Peddana** whose famous work Manucharitra heralded the eminence of the native genius of Telugus.

### Assignment/Self-study:

#### Decline of Vijayanagar Empire:

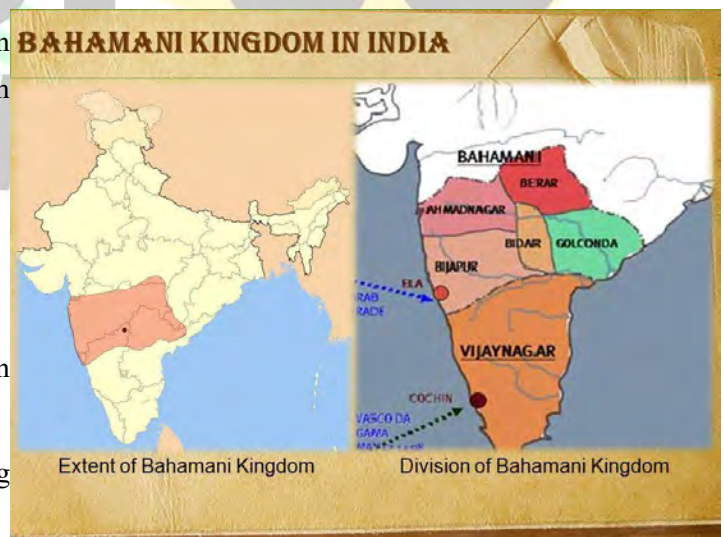
- ❖ The local **Muhammadan Dynasties of Southern India** preserved their independence until the firm establishment of the Mughal Empire in the north.
- ❖ For a time, they had to struggle against Vijayanagar. But in 1565 they combined against that power, and, aided by a rebellion within its own borders, they **overthrew it at Talikota in 1565**.
- ❖ In a decisive battle fought on the 23rd January, 1565 on the south bank of the Krishna near the village of Rakkasi Tangadi, Vijayanagar was defeated and Ramaraya, who led the Vijayanagar armies, was killed.
- ❖ **Tirumala Raya**, the younger brother of Ramaraya, along with his puppet ruler, Sadasiva Raya fled to Penukonda in Anantapur district with all the treasure.
- ❖ The victorious armies of Deccan then marched towards Vijayanagar. Uninhibited looting of the city by them as well as the ruthless robbers went on for days together.
- ❖ The **Battle of Talikota** marks the final downfall of Vijayanagar but its local Chiefs or Nayaks kept hold of their respective fiefs, and the Muhammadan kings of the south were only able to annex a part of its dominions.
- ❖ From the Nayaks are descended the well - known **Palegars of the Madras Presidency, and the Maharaja of Mysore**.
- ❖ One of the blood-royals of Vijayanagar fled to Chandragiri, and founded a line which exercised a prerogative of its former sovereignty, by granting the site of Madras to the English in 1639.
- ❖ Tirumala Raya after reaching Penukonda ruled for some time and tried his best to rebuild the empire but failed.
- ❖ The last ruler of Vijayanagar dynasty was Sriranga III.

### Important Terminologies:

Key Term/Concept:	Meaning:
(a) Pradhani	Prime Minister
(b) Raysani	Recorded oral order of king
(c) Karnikam	Accountant
(d) Kadamal, Irai, Vrai	Kinds of Taxes
(e) Athavane	Land Revenue Department
(f) Mahanayakachara	Acted as linkage between kings & villages.
(g) Padikaval	Selling of Policing Rights
(h) Talara	Watchman

### Bahmani Sultanate:

- ❖ Bahmani Sultanate/Empire was a **Muslim state of the Deccan** and was one of the great medieval Indian kingdoms. It was in the North Deccan region to the river Krishna.
- ❖ The kingdom was **founded by Alauddin Hasan in 1347** after he revolted against the Sultan of Delhi, Muhammad bin Tughluq.
- ❖ He assumed the title of Alauddin Hasan Bahman Shah (1347-58), it is from this title that the kingdom was called the Bahmani kingdom.
- ❖ He established his capital at:
  - Gulbarga till 1424,
  - Later shifted to Bidar by Ahmad Shah.
- ❖ The Bahmani contested the control of the Deccan with the Hindu Vijayanagara Empire to the south.
- ❖ The sultanate reached the peak of its power during the **Vizierate (1466–1481) of Mahmud Gawan**.
- ❖ About eighteen kings ruled during the nearly 200 years of the reign.
- ❖ The kingdom got divided into four smaller ones like:
  - Baridshahi (Bidar)
  - Qutub Shahi (of Golkonda),



- Adamshahi (of Ahmadnagar), and
- Adilshahi (of Bijapur), known collectively as the Deccan sultanates.
- ❖ Outcome of the failed policies of Muhammad Tughlaq. The weakening his hold over the distant areas of his empire also contributed to the cause of establishment of the Bahmani Kingdom.

### **Muhammad Qasim Hindu Shah Astarabadi (1560 – 1620):**

- ❖ He was also known as **Firishta**.
- ❖ He was a Persian historian, who later settled in India and served the Deccan Sultans as their court historian.
- ❖ His father was brought to Ahmednagar, India, to teach Persian to the prince Miran Husain Nizam Shah.
- ❖ In 1589, Firishta left for Bijapur to enter the service of King Ibrahim Adil II.
- ❖ He wrote **Tarikh-i Firishta and the Gulshan-i Ibrahimi**.

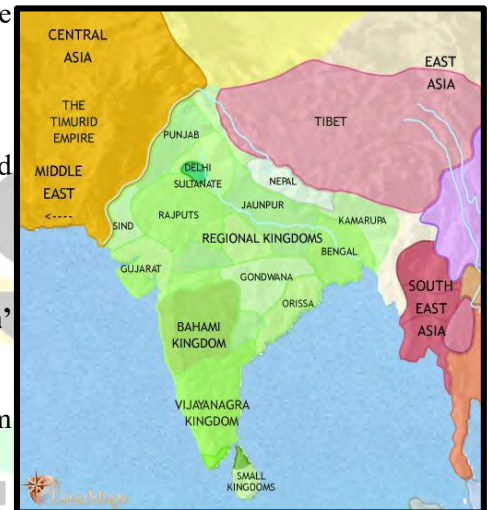
#### **Tarikh-i Firishta includes:**

1. The Kings of Ghazni and Lahore
2. The Kings of Delhi
3. The Kings of Dakhin - divided into 6 chapters:
  - Gulbarga
  - Bijapur
  - Ahmadnagar
  - Tilanga
  - Birar
  - Bidar
4. The Kings of Gujarat
5. The Kings of Malwa
6. The Kings of Khandesh
7. The Kings of Bengal and Bihar
8. The Kings of Multan
9. The Rulers of Sindh
10. The Kings of Kashmir
11. An account of Malabar
12. An account of Saints of India
13. Conclusion - An account of the climate and geography of India.

### Alauddin Hasan Bahman Shah (1347-58):

- ❖ His earlier name was **Zafar Khan**. (Afghan officer of Muhammad Bin Tughlaq)
- ❖ Taking advantage of the weak rule of Muhammad Bin Tughlaq he revolted and founded the Bahmani dynasty in 1347 A.D. with the capital at Gulbarga.
- ❖ As per Ferishta, he was also called **Hasan Gangu**.
- ❖ Along with Bahmani, Vijayanagara Kingdom also came into being in 1336.
- ❖ He along with several Afghan Amirs had been deployed by Muhammad Tughlaq to exercise control in the Deccan.
- ❖ The Bahmani empire under Hasan extended from Daulatabad in the west to Bhongir in Telangana in the east and from the Warangal River to the north of Krishna in the South.
- ❖ **Debhal** was an important sea port.
- ❖ For administrative purposes, he divided his empire into four parts and appointed a governor for each part.
- ❖ He was very generous and followed a policy of goodwill.
- ❖ Also, he was the first Muslim ruler of India who ordered that '**Jaziya**' should not be levied on the Hindus.
- ❖ Hasan allowed all agricultural produce to be imported in his Kingdom without any duties.
- ❖ He renamed:
  - Daulatabad to Fatahab
  - Gulbarga as Ahsanabad and made it the capital of Deccan.
- ❖ The King died at 67.

Vijayanagar	Bahmani	Year	Event
1335		1485	Harihara coronation
1340		1490	
1345		1498	Allauddin Hasan
1350		1500	Portugese entry
1355		1505	Bukka
1360		1509	Krishna Dev Raya
1365		1515	Pisces
1370		1520	
1377		1525	Madurai Sultan wiped out/Harihara II
1380		1530	
1385		1535	
1390		1543	Sadashiva Raya
1397		1545	Firuz Shah Bahmani
1400		1550	
1404		1555	Devraya I
1410		1565	Bannhatti battle (Talikota)
1420		1567	nicolocenti
1422		1570	
1425		1575	Dev Raya II
1430		1580	
1435		1585	Abdur Razaq
1440		1590	
1445		1595	
1450		1600	
1455		1605	
1460		1610	
1465		1615	
1470		1620	
1475		1625	
1480		1630	



### Muhammed Shah I (1358 – 1377):

- ❖ He ascended the throne in **1358**.
- ❖ He was better known as an organizer of the Bahmani Kingdom and founder of its institutions.
- ❖ His Silver throne from his father was replaced by the magnificent '**Takht-e-Firoza**' (Turquoise Throne) presented to him by **Raya of Telangana**.
- ❖ He constructed '**Jama Masjid**' in Gulbarga Fort and **Shah Bazaar Masjid** in Gulbarga town.



'Jama Masjid' in Gulbarga Fort



- ❖ Like his father Alauddin Bahman Shah, he fought against Vijayanagar and also fought a war with Warangal.
- ❖ Sultan invaded Telangana, Kanya Nayak offered Huns, elephants and horses along with Golkonda Town.
- ❖ Sultan died from drinking too much.
- ❖ During his reign the coins were struck in the name of Muhammad Shah I in silver and a Gold coin is also known.

### Tajuddin Firuz Shah (1397-1422):

- ❖ He fought against Vijayanagar & Berar.
- ❖ He **invaded Vijayanagar** with victories in c.1398 CE and c.1408 CE, however, faced a defeat in c.1420 CE at the hands of Deva Raya I.
- ❖ He expanded the Bahmani kingdom towards **Berar by defeating the Gond Raja Narsing Rai** of Kherla.
- ❖ A huge tribute was paid to Firuz and a daughter of Rai was married to him.
- ❖ He was well acquainted with the religious sciences such as commentaries on the **Quran, jurisprudence and natural sciences** too (such as botany, geometry, logic, etc).
- ❖ He was a calligraphist, poet and also had interests in astronomy.
- ❖ He built an observatory near Daulatabad.
- ❖ He was also well versed in **Persian, Arabic, Turkish, Telugu, Kannada & Marathi.**
- ❖ He was determined to make Deccan the cultural center of India.
- ❖ He inducted Hindus in administration.
- ❖ Chaul and Dabhol were the two famous ports of his time.
- ❖ He was forced to abdicate in favor of his brother Ahmad Shah I, Ahmad Shah was called a saint (wali) on account of his association with the famous **Sufi Saint Gesu Daraz.**
- ❖ Ahmad Shah shifted the capital from Gulbarga to Bidar.

### List of Bahmani Sultans:

<b>Gulbarga Period (75 years)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ Aladdin Hassan Bahman Shah (1347-58)</li> <li>❖ Muhammed Shah I (1358-1375)</li> <li>❖ Aladdin Mujahid Shah (1375 - 1378)</li> <li>❖ Da'ud Shah (1378 - 1378)</li> <li>❖ Muhammad Shah II (1378 - 1397 AD)</li> <li>❖ Ghiyath ud-Din (1397 - 1397 AD)</li> <li>❖ Shams-ud-Din (1397 AD -1397 AD)</li> <li>❖ Taj ud-Din Firuz Shah (1397 - 1422 AD)</li> </ul>
-----------------------------------	--

<b>Bidar Period (116 years)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ Ahmad Shah I Wali (1422 – 1436)</li> <li>❖ Aladdin Ahmad Shah II (1436 - 58 AD)</li> <li>❖ Aladdin Humayun Zalim Shah (1458 - 61 AD) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Appointed Mahmud Gawan (Persian merchant) and given the title '<b>Malik-e-tujjar</b>' i.e., chief of Merchants.</li> </ul> </li> <li>❖ Nizam Shah (1461 - 1463 AD) - Minor Prince</li> <li>❖ Mohammed Shah III Lashkari (1463 - 82 AD)</li> <li>❖ Mohammed Shah IV (1482 -1518 AD)</li> <li>❖ Ahmad Shah III (1518 - 1520)</li> <li>❖ Aladdin Shah (1520 -1523 AD)</li> <li>❖ Wali-Allah Shah (1523 - 1526 AD)</li> <li>❖ Kalim-Allah Shah (1526 - 1527 AD)</li> </ul>
---------------------------------	---

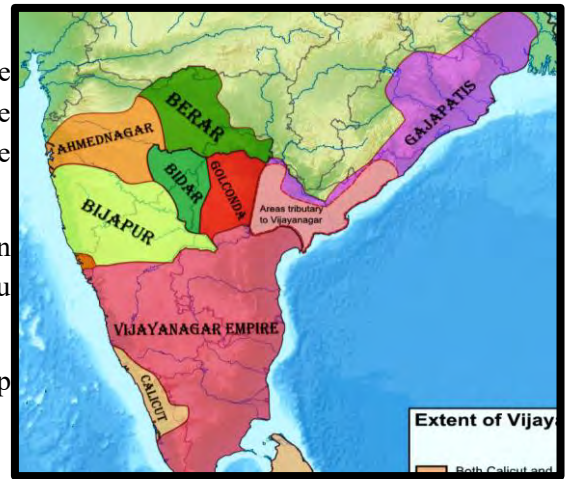
### Mahmud Gawan:

- ❖ His real name was **Khwaja Mahmud Gilani** (Persian), who was born in 1411 and died in 1481.
- ❖ He became a minister in the court of Muhammad III (1463-1482) with the **title khwaju-e-jahan**.
- ❖ He was a patron of Mathematician, Islamic theology, Writer, Poet, and Artist, etc.
- ❖ Guardian of minor prince Nizam Shah (1461-63).
- ❖ The Bahmani Kingdom reached the height of its power and territorial limits.
- ❖ He built a Madrasa college in the capital city of Bidar.
- ❖ Plundered Kanchi against Vijayanagar/used Gunpowder & for almost 20 years he dominated the affairs of the state.
- ❖ He overran the western coastal area including Goa and Dabhol from Vijayanagar.
- ❖ He expanded its trade to Iran, Iraq, etc.
- ❖ Berar was the area of contention between Malwa and Bahmani Sultan and with the help of the ruler of Gujarat, he acquired it.
- ❖ **Reforms:**
  - Divided kingdom into 8 **provinces (Tarafs)**
  - Each tarafs governed by a **tarafdar**
  - The salary would be paid in **cash or Jagir**
  - Measure the land and to fix the amount to be paid by the cultivator to the state.
- ❖ **Problems:**
  - The nobles were divided into two:

- The Old comers deccanis & Newcomers - afaqis (as a new comer Mahmud Gawan was hard put to win the confidence of nobles).
- He was killed by nobles at the age of 70 years.

### Fall of the Bahmani Kingdom:

- ❖ The Bahmani Kingdom lasted for about 180 years. Of the eighteen rulers of this kingdom, five were murdered, three were deposed, two died of excessive drinking and another two were blinded.
- ❖ Most of the rulers were tyrants and mostly remained busy in fighting among themselves and with the neighboring Hindu Kingdoms particularly Vijayanagara.
- ❖ The following five Kingdoms came into being after the break-up of the Bahmani Kingdom:



- **Imad Shahi Kingdom of Berar (1488):**
  - ✓ Founder - Fateh Ullah Imad Shah
  - ✓ Imad Shahi Dynasty.
- **Adil Shahi Kingdom of Bijapur (1489):**
  - ✓ Founder - Yusuf Adil Shah
- **Nizam Shahi Kingdom of Ahmednagar (1490):**
  - ✓ Founder by Malik Ahmad
- **Qutab Shahi Kingdom of Golkunda (1512):**
  - ✓ Founder - Qutab Shah
- **Barid Shahi Kingdom of Bidar (1526):**
  - ✓ Founder - Kasim Barid

#### 1. Berar (1488):

- It was founded by Fateh Ullah Imad Shah in 1488 called as Imad Shahi Dynasty.
- **Annexed by Nizam Shahi** rulers of Ahmednagar.

#### 2. Bijapur (1489):

- **Yusuf Adil Shah:**
  - ✓ He was the founder and named the dynasty as Adil Shahi Dynasty.
- **Muhammad Adil Shah:**
  - ✓ He hired the **African Prime Minister - Ikhlas Khan.**
  - ✓ He built Gol Gumbaz (world's second largest dome).
    - Whispering Gallery

### ➤ Ibrahim Adil Shah II:

- ✓ He was known for his **religious tolerance**. He was a **secular** leader and he got the title of **Jagadguru Badshah**.
- ✓ He believed in spreading **cultural harmony** through music.
- ✓ He himself played many musical instruments.
- ✓ He composed for Saraswati and Ganapati.
- ✓ He wrote **Kitab-e-Navras in Dakhani**.
- ✓ He had around 4000 musicians in his court and was called **Lashkar-e-Nauras** and they were paid by the government.
- ✓ He introduced Dakhni language in courts replacing Persian.

➤ Finally Annexed by Aurangzeb.

### 3. Ahmednagar (1490):

- The founder of Ahmednagar was Malik Ahmad Shah.
- Annexed by Shahjahan.

### 4. Golconda (1518):

- Founder was Quli Qutub Shah.
- Qutub Shahi Dynasty.
- Golconda Fort.
- Founded Hyderabad (Bhagyanagar)
  - ✓ Charminar

### 5. Bidar (1526):

- Founder was Amir Ali Barid.
- Barid Shahi Dynasty
- Annexed by Adilshahi of Bijapur

- ❖ These five Muslim states of South India fought against each other but their primary enemy remained Vijayanagara.
- ❖ In 1565, the four states barring Berar formed a confederacy and fought against Vijayanagara in the Battle of Talikota and gave a crushing defeat to it.
  - Ahmednagar conquered Berar in 1574
  - Bijapur annexed Bidar in 1618-1619.
  - Akbar occupied a part of Ahmednagar and the rest of it was occupied by Shah Jahan.
  - Bijapur and Golconda were finally annexed by Aurangzeb.

### Bahamani Administration

Tarafdar/Subedar  
↑  
Taraf (4,8 after Gawan)

Daulatabad  
Bidar  
Berar  
Gulbarga

**Khalisa (dedicated land)** set apart in the jurisdiction of Tarafdar for meeting all the expenses of king & royal household.

- Salary and obligation of nobles were fixed  
→ 500 horses = 10 L huns annually.
  - Either in cash or land grant (Jagir) for nobles.
- Use of firearms → employed Turkish & Portuguese for training.

Wazir-i-kul → Prime Minister  
Amir-i-kul → Finance Head  
Wazir ashraf → Foreign affairs and royal court  
Sadar-i-jahan → Head of judiciary and charities  
Tarafdar → Head of Provinces

• Deccani (old times)  
vs  
• Afaqis or Pardesis

Amirs provided military support

↳ Came from Central Asia, Iran & Iraq

### Important Terminologies:

Important Terms:	Meaning:
(a) Wazir-i-kul	Prime Minister
(b) Amir-i-kul	Finance Head
(c) Wazir ashraf	Foreign Affairs and Royal Court
(d) Sadar-i-jahan	Head of judiciary and charities
(e) Tarafdar	Head of Province

### Vijayanagar vs Bahamani:

- ❖ The rising power of the Bahmani Sultans in the north.
- ❖ Bahmani received the **support of the rulers of Warangal and Telangana** who were afraid of the rising power of Vijayanagar,
- ❖ Bahmani rulers acted as a kind of a balancing factor.
- ❖ **Harihara II** was able to maintain his position in the face of the Bahmani-Warangal combine.
- ❖ His greatest success was in Belgaum and Goa in the west of the Bahmani Kingdom.



- ❖ The interests of the Vijayanagar rulers and the Bahmani sultans clashed in three separate and distinct areas:
  - The Tungabhadra Doab,
  - The Krishna-Godavari Delta,
  - The Marathwada Country



### Society and Culture during Bahmani Kingdom:

- ❖ Rulers of the dynasty believed that they descended from Bahman, the mythological figure of Greater Iranian legend and lore.
- ❖ Bahamani Sultans were patrons of the **Persian language, culture and literature**, and some members of the dynasty became well-versed in that language and composed its literature in that language.
- ❖ The **craftspersons of Bidar** were so famed for their inlay work on copper and silver that it came to be known as **Bidri**.
- ❖ Although the sultanate practiced **Shia Islam**, the majority of the population adhered to **Hinduism**.
- ❖ The common people, who were mostly Hindus, had to adjust their religious practices to become more acceptable to their Muslim political masters.



Charminar at Hyderabad



Gombuj at Gulbarga

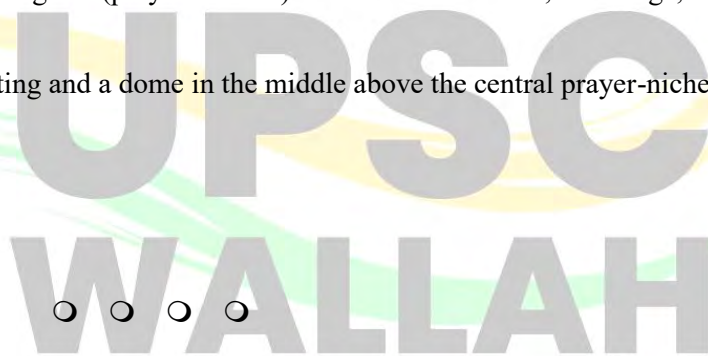
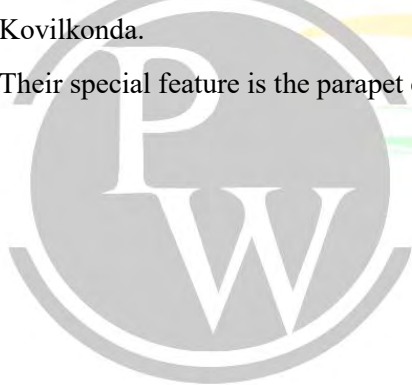
### Art and Architecture in Bahmani Kingdom:

- ❖ The Bahamani kingdom flourished in Architectural Monuments.
- ❖ In the field of architecture, the Bahamanis paved the way for the distinct style by inviting architects from Persia, Turkey, and Arabia and blended it with local styles.
- ❖ The culture that developed during this time was a **blend of both north and south styles** and also had its own distinct styles.

- ❖ **Gol Gumbaz** (the largest dome in India) and **Charminar** located at Hyderabad are the world-famous examples of Bahmani architecture.
- ❖ The Bahmanis of Deccan left an important heritage of Indo-Islamic art, language, and spread of Islamic tradition in South India.
- ❖ **Hazrat Banda Nawaz** (1321 - 1422 CE) the great Sufi saint was patronized by the Bahmani kings and his Dargah of Gulbarga is a place of pilgrimage for Hindus and Muslims alike.
- ❖ The **Persian scholar Mahmud Gawan** (Minister of Muhammad Shah III), built the well-known Madrasa in 1472 AD (building with three stories and has lecture halls, a library, a mosque and residential houses) which stands as a specimen of Bahmani architecture.
- ❖ The Bahmanis got many forts rebuilt and modified for their suitability in case of military requirements. These included the covered passages and bastions as an addition.
- ❖ Few **forts were built at strategic places**, keeping this structure in mind; some among these are the Gulbarga, Daulatabad, Gawilgarh, Narnala, Parenda, Raichur, etc.
- ❖ The architectural works also include idgahs (prayer houses) built at Daulatabad, Gulbarga, Bidar and Kovilkonda.
- ❖ Their special feature is the parapet cresting and a dome in the middle above the central prayer-niche.



**The Madrasa of Mahmud Gawan in Bidar**



PW Web/App: <https://smart.link/7wwosivoicgd4>

# DAILY CLASS NOTES

## Medieval History

Lecture - 15  
Regional Kingdom IV and Mughal Empire



## Regional Kingdom IV and Mughal

### North India - Kashmir:

- ❖ Kashmir valley was once a lake, according to **Kalhana's history of Kashmir** from the middle of the 12th century, **Rajatarangini**.
- ❖ As per Hindu mythology, sage Kashyapa, son of Marichi made a hole in the hills at Baramulla to drain the lake (Varaha-mula).
- ❖ Then asked Brahmins to reside there, which led to the earliest settlement of Kashmir valley by Hindus.
- ❖ For a very long time, all foreigners were barred from entering Kashmir.
- ❖ In his book **Al-Hind**, **Alberuni (Arab)** noted that even Hindus if not closely acquainted with the local nobility were not permitted admission into Kashmir.
- ❖ In the 11<sup>th</sup> Century, **Shaivism** was the dominant religion in Kashmir, even the **monarchs were also Shaivites**.
- ❖ **Lohara Dynasty's rule** (c. 1003-1320 CE) was very unpopular - onerous taxes, corruption, internal strife, and the rise of the Damaras (feudal lords) - which led to Foreign Invasions.
- ❖ Around 1320 CE - **Zulju (Dalucha), a Turkic-Mongol lord**, conducted a barbaric invasion on Kashmir and due to this threat Suhadeva, the last king of the Lohara dynasty, escaped the region.
- ❖ Zulju (Dalucha) massacred the civilians and did significant destruction in Kashmir.



### Shamsuddin Shah Mir (1339 – 1342):

- ❖ He was the founder of **Shah Miri Dynasty** as well as the **first Muslim ruler of Kashmir**.
- ❖ He overthrew the Shaiva king of Kashmir in around 1339 CE, and subsequently Islam began to have an impact on Kashmiri civilization.
- ❖ The Rishis, a group of Sufi saints, promoted a religion that merged elements of Islam and Hinduism.
  - For instance, Islamic preacher Sheikh Nooruddin Noorani (Nund Rishi for Hindus) merged aspects of **Kashmir Shaivism** and **Sufi mysticism** in his sermons.
  - So, under the guidance of Sufi saints like Noorani, Islam gradually took over as the main religion in Kashmir in the 14th century.

### Sikandar Shah (c.1389–1413 CE):

- ❖ In between 1354 - 1470 CE, all the sultans showed religious tolerance but Sikandar Shah was an iconoclast.
- ❖ He destroyed many temples including Martand sun temple, taxed non-Muslims, and forced them to convert to Islam. He was also known as But-Shikan for demolishing idols.

- ❖ He issued a decree ordering all Hindus, particularly the Brahmanas who lived in his realm, to convert to Islam or leave. (Minister, Suha Bhatt\*\*)
- ❖ His advisor was Sufi Mir Mohammad Hamdani (muslim scholar).
- ❖ He prohibited Hindu and Bhuddhist aesthetic activities such as dance, drama, music, and iconography.
- ❖ He forbade Hindus from applying Tilak to their brows. Blowing a conch shell was illegal, and those who did so faced harsh punishment.
- ❖ It was also a crime to ring a bell. Hindus and Buddhists had to pay a 4 tola silver tax to cremate their dead bodies.
- ❖ After his death, his son Ali Shah (c. 1413–1419 CE) succeeded him and later his brother Shah Khan and took the title Zainul Abidin.

### Sikander Shah - Art and Architecture:

- ❖ Sikandar built the Nowhatta and his royal palace.
- ❖ He also built the Jamia Masjid in Srinagar, which is considered the finest example of Indo-Saracenic architecture in Kashmir along with two other mosques in Bijbehara and Bavan.
- ❖ Sikandar also commissioned a new royal and elite burial ground, Mazar-i-Salatin, on the bank of the Jhelum
- ❖ A four-armed Brahma, the first stone sculpture in Kashmir and one of the finest in its history, was sculpted in 1409 by the son of a Buddhist Sangha Pati and dedicated to Sikandar.
- ❖ Sayyid Ahmad of Isfahan drafted a commentary on a Firazi text.
- ❖ Sayyid Muhammad Khawari wrote a commentary on Lum'at ul-'Itiqaad as well as another work (Khwar Nameh) of unknown genre.
- ❖ Muhammad Baihaqi composed poems eulogizing Sikandar.
- ❖ Zain-ul-Abidin (c. 1420–1470 CE):
- ❖ He was known as Akbar of Kashmir and Bud Shah (the Great Sultan).
- ❖ He was a kind, generous, and wise sultan.
- ❖ Sikandar Shah's unfavorable regulations were reversed by him.
- ❖ He welcomed back all of the exiled non-Muslims.
- ❖ He allowed the freedom to return back to Hinduism if anyone was forcefully converted.
- ❖ He even reinstated their freedoms, outlawed jaziya, and forbade the slaughter of cows.
- ❖ Kashmir possessed 150 majestic temples, as reported by Abul Fazal more than a century later, and it is most likely that they had to have been renovated under Zain-ul-Abidin.
- ❖ During his reign the Hindus held important positions in his administration.
- ❖ Sriya Bhatt was a court physician and justice minister.
- ❖ Also, the first two queens of Zainul, who were the daughters of the Raja of Jammu, were Hindus.
- ❖ He defeated the Mongol invasion of Ladakh, capturing the **Baltistan region (known as Tibbat-i-Khurd)**, and maintaining authority over Jammu, Rajauri, etc.



Jama Masjid, Srinagar

## Reforms and Development during Zain-ul-Abidin:

### ❖ Kashmir's Economic Development:

- He dispatched two people to Samarkand to study the **techniques of papermaking and bookbinding**.
- He also invited **artisans from Central Asia and Persia** to teach local artists in Kashmir.
- The art of wood carving, stone cutting and polishing, bottle making, gold beating, musket making, the art of producing fireworks, shawl and carpet weaving, and other crafts flourished throughout his reign.
- He introduced **currency reforms, market regulation, and fixed commodity prices**.

### ❖ Agricultural Development:

- He contributed to the agricultural development of Kashmir by building dams and canals and also initiated the upkeep of the agricultural records.
- The peasants received assistance in the form of loans, food, and fodder during the time of famine and other natural disasters.
- He also provided subsidies for the import of the state-scarce goods. He supported the traders in every manner he could, such as importing salt from Ladakh to make up for the lack of salt.

### ❖ Art and Architecture:

- He had Zaina Lanka, a man-made island in the Wular Lake, created, where he erected his castle and a mosque.
- He also built the settlements of Zaingir, Zainket, and Zainpur.
- The Jama Masjid in Kashmir, which Zain-ul-Abidin finished, is notable for its Persian-style architecture, which has turrets and similarities to Buddhist pagodas.
- He wrote poetry under the pen name "Qutb".
- He himself was a remarkable scholar of the Persian, Sanskrit, Tibetan, and Kashmiri languages.
- He supported scholars of Sanskrit and Persian, and as a result, many Persian and Arabic works were translated into Hindi, as well as the Mahabharata and Kalhana's Rajatarangini.
- He also maintained contact with powerful leaders not just in India but also in Asia.

### ❖ Literatures:

#### ➤ **Rajatarangini by Jonaraja:**

- During the reign of Zain-ul-Abidin, Jonaraja authored a sequel by the Rajatarangini also known as **Dvitiya Rajatarangini** ("second Rajatarangini").
- It gives an account of Kashmir from c. 1150 CE to 1459 CE.

#### ➤ **Zaina-Rajatarangini by Shrivara:**

- After Jonaraja's death in 1459, his disciple Shrivara Pandita continued his work.
- He titled his work Jaina-Rajatarangini, and it is also known as **Tritiya Rajatarangini** ("third Rajatarangini").
- It gives an account of Kashmir from 1459 CE to 1486 CE.

#### ➤ **Rajavalipataka by Prajyabhata:**

- Prajyabhata's Rajavalipataka gives an account of Kashmir from 1486 to 1512.

➤ **Chaturtha Rajatarangini by Suka:**

- Suka extended Prajyabhata's work, resulting in the Chaturtha Rajatarangini ("fourth Rajatarangini").
- Suka's book ends with the arrival of Asaf Khan to Kashmir. A later interpolation also covers the arrival of the Mughal emperor Akbar and subsequent events.

**Decline:**

- ❖ After him, Kashmir's crown was overthrown by feeble kings, and chaos reigned. A relative of Babur named Mirza Haider took advantage of this and took control of Kashmir.
- ❖ Akbar seized control of Kashmir in around 1586 CE and integrated it into the Mughal Empire.

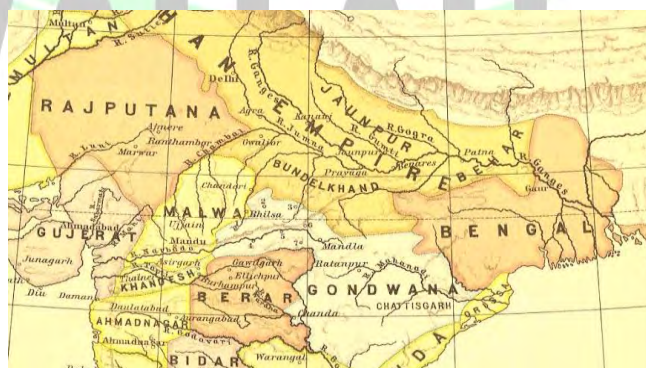
**Assignment/Self-Study - Rest of the Regional Kingdoms:**

**EASTERN INDIA JAUNPUR, BENGAL, ASSAM & ORISSA**

**Jaunpur:**

- ❖ Jaunpur was located (near modern Varanasi on the banks of river Gomati).
- ❖ Malik Sarwar during the reign of Firoz Shah Tughlaq, served as the governor of Jaunpur.
- ❖ Nasiruddin Mohammad Shah Tughlaq appointed him as a minister and awarded him the title of Sultanus Sharq in around 1394 CE (the master of the east), thereafter he was known as Malik Sarwar Sultanus Sharq.
- ❖ After the invasion of Timur and weakening of Delhi Sultanate, Malik Sarwar used the opportunity to seize control of Awadh and a sizable portion of the Ganga-Yamuna doab, including Kannauj, Kara, Sandeela, Dalmau, Bahraich, Bihar, and Tirhut and also declared himself independent.
- ❖ The Sharqi style of architecture developed in Jaunpur, is distinctive. Called as Shiraz of India
- ❖ The Atala Masjid, the Lal Darwaja Masjid, and the Jama Masjid are the most noteworthy examples of Sharqi style architecture in Jaunpur.

<b>Khwajah-i-Jahan</b>	<b>Malik Sarwar</b>	<b>1394 – 1399</b>
<b>Malik-us-Sharq</b>		
<b>Atabeg-i-Azam</b>		
<b>Mubarak Shah</b>	<b>Malik Qaranfal</b>	<b>1399 – 1402</b>
<b>Shams-ud-Din Ibrahim Shah</b>	<b>Ibrahim Khan</b>	<b>1402 – 1440</b>
<b>Nasir-ud-Din Mahmud Shah</b>	<b>Mahmud Khan</b>	<b>1440 – 1457</b>
<b>Muhammad Shah</b>	<b>Bhi Khan</b>	<b>1457 – 1458</b>
<b>Hussain Shah</b>	<b>Hussain Khan</b>	<b>1458 - 1479</b>



**Malik Sarwar (c.1394–1399 CE):**

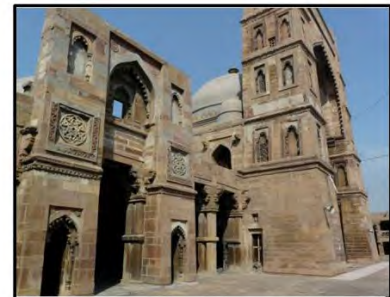
- ❖ He laid the Sharqi Dynasty's foundation.
- ❖ The Rai of Jajnagar and the king of Lakhnauti both acknowledged his authority.
- ❖ His adopted son Malik Qaranfal, who adopted the name Mubarak Shah, succeeded him after his death.

### Mubarak Shah (c.1399–1402 CE):

- ❖ He was the **first Sharqi dynasty emperor**.
- ❖ **Mallu Iqbal**, the influential minister of Mahmud Tughlaq, the puppet Sultan of Delhi, made several unsuccessful attempts to retake Jaunpur during his rule.

### Ibrahim (c.1402–1440 CE) Shams-ud-din Ibrahim Shah:

- ❖ He was Mubarak Shah's younger brother.
- ❖ He ruled as dynasty's finest leader and established Jaunpur as a significant centre of learning
- ❖ His empire reached Kannauj in the west and Bihar in the east.
- ❖ The ties between Delhi and Jaunpur deteriorated under his rule.
- ❖ He even oversaw an unsuccessful invasion against Delhi.
- ❖ He also made threats against Raja Ganesha's Bengal Sultanate.
- ❖ He **supported Islamic education** and founded several colleges. His reign saw the publication of numerous scholarly works on **Islamic theology and jurisprudence, such as:**
  - Hashiah-i-Hindi
  - Bahar-ul-Mawwaj
  - Fatwa-i-Ibrahim Shahi.
- ❖ **Atala Masjid** at Jaunpur built during his rule.
- ❖ Although Firoz Shah Tughlaq placed the Atala Masjid's foundation in around 1376 CE, it wasn't finished until Ibrahim Shah's reign in around 1408 CE.
- ❖ He constructed the Jhanjhiri Masjid around 1430.



Atala Masjid, Jaunpur

### Mahmud Shah (c.1440–1457 CE):

- ❖ Ibrahim's older son, who took control of **Chunar Fort** but failed to take control of Kalpi.
- ❖ He attempted to invade Delhi in around 1452 CE, but Bahlol Lodhi stopped him.
- ❖ Later, he **invaded Etawah** in an effort to seize Delhi once more. Finally, he consented to a treaty that recognised **Bahlol Lodhi's** authority over Shamsabad.
- ❖ However, the soldiers of Jaunpur resisted Bahlol when he attempted to seize Shamsabad. Mahmud Shah passed away at this period. His son Bhikhan, who adopted the name Muhammad Shah, succeeded him.
- ❖ The Construction of the **Lal Darwaja Masjid** began in 1450 CE, during his rule.

### Muhammad Shah (c.1457–1458 CE):

- ❖ When he came into power, about 1457 CE, he recognised Bahlol Lodhi's claim to Shamsabad and made peace with him.
- ❖ When he had his brother Hasan put to death in around 1458 CE, his other brother Hussain rebelled, called himself **Hussain Shah**, the Sultan of Jaunpur, and murdered Muhammad Shah.

### Hussain Shah Sharqi (c.1458– 1505 CE):

- ❖ He was the final emperor of the Sharqi Dynasty.
- ❖ He adopted the title of **Gandharva**.
- ❖ His notable contribution to the creation of the khayal, a subgenre of Hindustani classical music.

- ❖ He also created a number of new ragas (melodies) like Jaunpuri-basant, Jaunpuri-asavari, Hussaini- or Jaunpuri-syama, Gaur-syama, Bhopal-syama, and Malhar-syama.
- ❖ Around 1470 CE, the Jama Masjid was constructed during his rule, and a protracted conflict with Bahlol Lodhi also began.
- ❖ Finally, Jaunpur was annexed by **Sikandar Lodhi**, who succeeded Bahlol Lodhi.

### Bengal:

- ❖ Bengal was a significant regional kingdom in the 8th century under the Palas and Senas in the 12th century.
- ❖ It was Delhi Sultanate's furthest-eastern province.
- ❖ The Delhi Sultanate found it challenging to maintain authority over this region because of the great distance, unfavorable climate, and inadequate transportation and communication systems (since a large portion of its communications relied on waterways).
- ❖ Bengal repeatedly regained its independence.
- ❖ It was annexed by **Muhammad Bin Bakhtiyar Khilji** to the lands that Muhammad Ghori had conquered during the last decade of the 12th century CE.
- ❖ However, his successors announced their independence after his death with the help of the populace.
- ❖ Balban nominated his son Bughra Khan as Bengal's ruler and coerced Bengal to recognise Delhi's rule. However, he proclaimed his own independence following Balban's passing.
- ❖ **Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq** - By dividing Bengal into the autonomous administrative regions of **Lakhnauti, Satgaon, and Sonargaon**.
- ❖ Muhammad bin Tughlaq made an effort to keep Bengal under control, but Bengal severed its ties to Delhi in around 1338.
- ❖ In the 14th century, Bengal became a **sovereign regional state**.
  - Ilyas Shahi Dynasty 1342
  - Hussain Shahi Dynasty 1494
  - Sher Shah Suri
- ❖ In 1342, one of the nobles, **Haji Ilyas Khan**, unified Bengal and established himself as its monarch of the newly founded Ilyas Shah dynasty.
- ❖ He became one of the most important political, economic, and military forces in the subcontinent and ruled for around 125 years.
- ❖ He accepted **Indo-Aryanization** and assimilated into Bengali culture and society.
- ❖ It witnessed the growth of Bengali Muslim society and Bengal became the hub for immigrants from all over the Muslim world.
- ❖ Its capital was **Gaur and Pandua**.
- ❖ Bengali developed as a regional/local language, while Persian was the official language.
- ❖ The famous poet Maladhar Basu received the title of Gunaraja Khan. He wrote Sri-Krishna Vijaya.
- ❖ His son received the title of **Satyaraja Khan**.

### Haji Shams-ud-din Ilyas Khan (c.1342–1357 CE):

- ❖ He was the founder of the **Ilyas Shah's Dynasty**.
- ❖ His **unification of the Bengal** independent kingdom is his most significant legacy.

- ❖ He expanded his western dominions from Tirhut to Champaran, Gorakhpur, and ultimately Benaras.
- ❖ This put him at **odds with Firoz Shah Tughlaq**, who, in order to offset his growing power, captured Champaran and Gorakhpur, invaded the Bengali capital of Pandua, and compelled Ilyas to take refuge in the **fortified city of Ekdala**.
- ❖ So, Ilyas Shah and Firoz Shah Tughlaq were forced to sign a treaty. This agreement recognised the **Kosi River** as the dividing line between the two kingdoms. Now Ilyas expands over the Kamrupa kingdom (modern Assam).
- ❖ He also raided Orissa and Tirhut and forced them to pay tribute.
- ❖ He has been compared to **Bengal's version of Alexander or Napoleon** since his campaigns were viewed as "world conquering" in medieval Bengal.
- ❖ He established a diverse and inclusive government and was a well-liked ruler. **\*\*Firoz Shah Tughlaq** attempted to win over the city's residents to his cause when he was in Pandua by generously granting land to the city's aristocrats, clergy, and other deserving individuals. However, Firoz Shah was unable to do so due to Ilyas Shah's enormous popularity.
- ❖ Haji Ilyas passed away in roughly 1357 CE, his son Sikandar took the kingdom.
- ❖ Firoz Shah Tughlaq attempted to recapture Bengal but Sikandar adopted his father's strategy and withdrew to Ekdala.
- ❖ Once more failed, Firoz was forced to flee. Following this, Bengal was left alone for about 200 years before being invaded once more in 1538 CE, after the Mughals had taken control of Delhi.

#### **Ghiyasuddin Azam (c.1390–1411 CE):**

- ❖ He was renowned for his devotion to justice.
- ❖ It is stated that once he killed a son by mistake of a widow who complained to the qazi. When the Sultan was called before the court, he entered politely and paid the **fine** that the qazi had imposed. Azam informed the qazi that he would have had him executed if he had not performed his duty honestly after the trial.
- ❖ Azam was a knowledgeable man who was friendly with many of the notable scholars of his era, including the renowned Persian poet Hafiz of Shiraz.
- ❖ Additionally, he kept friendly **ties with China**, and Bengal and China enjoyed successful trade ties throughout his rule.
- ❖ A significant trading hub was the **port of Chittagong**.
- ❖ Azam also sent and welcomed Chinese envoys, and upon the monarch of China's request, he also dispatched Buddhist monks.

#### **Raja Ganesha:**

- ❖ He ruled from approximately 1414 to 1435 CE, briefly established Hindu hegemony, but Nasiruddin Mahmud Shah and his successors later reinstated the **Ilyas Shahi Dynasty** as the dominant power (c.1435–1487 CE).
- ❖ The Habshis did, however, come to control Bengal for a brief seven-year period (about 1487-1494 CE), before being deposed by Alauddin Hussain Shah.
- ❖ He later turned out to be one of Bengal's most amazing kings.

#### **Alauddin Hussain Shah (c.1494–1519 CE):**

- ❖ He was the **Hussain Shahi Dynasty's founder** (c.1494–1538 CE).
- ❖ He was the greatest of all Bengali sultans since, during his reign:

- The limits of Bengal were expanded and the Bengali language was greatly improved.
- He **expanded the sultanate** all the way to the port of Chittagong, when the first Portuguese traders arrived.
- He conquered Kamarupa, Kamata, Jajnapur, and Orissa.
- ❖ He was extremely effective, liberal, and granted Hindus high-level administration positions.
- ❖ He appointed the brilliant Hindus as his wazir, top physician, chief bodyguard, and mint master, for example.
- ❖ He also showed the **Vaishnavite saint Chaitanya** the utmost regard. Even his personal secretary Sanatan and his brother Rupa were renowned devoted Vaishnavas.
- ❖ He made peace with **Sikandar Lodhi** after getting into a fight with him.
- ❖ When he passed away in around 1518 CE, his son Nasib Khan succeeded him as Nasir-ud-din Nurrat Shah.

### **Nasiruddin Nasrat Shah (c.1518–1533 CE):**

- ❖ He wed the daughter of Ibrahim Lodi and provided the Afghan lords with safety.
- ❖ He maintained neutrality throughout the **Babur invasion** and made a pact with Babur to prevent a Mughal invasion of Bengal.
- ❖ Early in his rule, he maintained his father's expansionist ambitions by gaining more territory for his sultanate.
- ❖ However, as the Mughal ascendancy began around 1526 CE, he had to deal with it and also had a reverse at the hands of the **Ahom kingdom**.
- ❖ Succeeded by his son Alauddin Firuz Shah, but he was slain by his uncle Ghiyasuddin Mahmud Shah. During his rule, the Bengal army entered Assam and reached Kaliabor.

### **Ghiyasuddin Mahmud Shah (c.1533–1538 CE):**

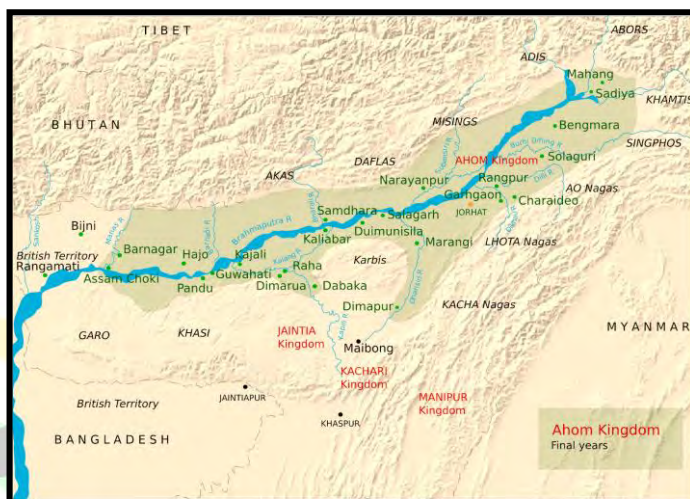
- ❖ He governed from **Sonargaon**.
- ❖ He was a feeble, hedonistic, and laid-back monarch who lacked both diplomatic acumen and a realistic strategy for dealing with the political issues that plagued Bengal during his time.
- ❖ His general and governor of the Chittagong region, Khuda Bakhsh Khan, as well as the governor of Hajipur, Makhdum Alam, both led rebellions during his rule.
- ❖ **Portuguese** who had previously landed in Chittagong were seized during his rule in around 1534 CE and brought to Gaur as prisoners on suspicion of misbehavior.
- ❖ However, he made peace with them and gave them permission to build industries in **Chittagong and Hugli**.
- ❖ Sher Shah Suri and his Afghans beat Ghiyasuddin and his Portuguese allies in around 1538 CE.
- ❖ His appeals to Humayun went unanswered.

### **Sher Shah Suri:**

- ❖ Sher Shah Suri, who founded the **Sur Kingdom**, acquired Bengal.
- ❖ In 1586 CE, Akbar overcame Bengal and turned it into a **Suba (Province)**.
- ❖ The expansion of agrarian settlements in the swampy and forested regions of south-eastern Bengal occurred at the same time the Mughals took control of the region.
- ❖ The indigenous communities of fishermen and peasants quickly occupied this area as rice farming spread around the region.
- ❖ Officials and bureaucrats were given land grants and relocated to Dhaka, the center of the eastern delta, where the Mughals constructed their capital.

**Assam:**

- ❖ The history of Assam is the history of the mingling of people from the **east, west, and north, as well as the Indo-Aryan, Indo-Burman (Sino-Tibetan), and Austroasiatic cultures.**
- ❖ It is interesting that despite being repeatedly attacked over the ages, it never served as a vassal or colony for an outside power until the Burmese did so in around 1821 CE and then the British did so in around 1826 CE following the infamous **Treaty of Yandaboo.**
- ❖ There are many different sources that make up Assamese history.
- ❖ While the historical account of Ancient Assam begins with the establishment of **Pushyavarman's Varman Dynasty** in the 4th century in the Kamarupa kingdom, which left behind a corpus of Kamarupa inscriptions on rock, copper plates, clay, royal grants, etc.,
- ❖ The proto-history has been reconstructed from folklore epics like the Mahabharata, and two medieval texts compiled in the Assam region:
  - The **Kalika Purana** and
  - In **Samudragupta's Allahabad pillar**, Kamarupa is also mentioned.
- ❖ The **Buranjis**, chronicles written by the Ahom rulers in the Assamese and Ahom languages throughout the medieval era, provide a wealth of information about Assam in medieval India.
- ❖ The Muslim rulers of Bengal had attempted to conquer the Brahmaputra valley in present-day Assam since the reign of Muhammad bin Bakhtiyar Khalji (c. 1207 CE as noted in the **Kanai- Boroxiboa Rock Inscription**), but they had to endure a series of disastrous defeats in this area that was little known to them.
- ❖ North Bengal and Assam was home to two rival kingdoms that were at war with one another: Kamata, also known as Kamrupa in the west, and the Ahom kingdom in the east.
- ❖ The **Ahoms were a Mongoloid tribe** from northern Burma that had been successful in building a significant empire in the 13th century and had over time adopted Hinduism. In fact, they are the source of the name Assam.
- ❖ **Ilyas Shah invaded Kamata** and made it as far as Gauhati, but he was unable to maintain the territory, and the **river Karatoya** came to be recognised as Bengal's northern border. Later, several lands on the eastern bank of the Karatoya were progressively reclaimed by the Kamata kings.
- ❖ They also engaged in battle with the Ahoms. The **Kamata monarchs** met their end when **Alauddin Hussain Shah** stormed Kamata and demolished the **capital of Kamatapur** (near present Cooch Bihar), annexed the kingdom to Bengal, and appointed one of his sons as the region's administrator. They had turned both of its neighbors into foes.
- ❖ Nusrat Shah, the son of Alauddin, later launched an attack, but it was thwarted with great cost to him.
- ❖ One of the finest Ahom emperors, Suhungmung (c. 1497–1539 CE), was in charge of the eastern Brahmaputra valley during this period. His adoption of the Hindu title Svarga Narayana as the first Ahom king indicated both a quick **Hinduization of the Ahoms** and a shift toward an inclusive polity.



- ❖ As a result, the Ahom kings were known as the **Svarga Dev (heaven-lord)**. Because he made **Bakata on the Dihing river his capital**, he is also known as the **Dihingia Raja**. He not only turned back the Muslim assault, but he also expanded his sphere of influence. **Shankardeva, a Vaishnavite reformer** from his day, propagated Vaishnavism in the region.

### Orissa/Odisha:

- ❖ The **Hindu Gajapati Dynasty**, which ruled over Kalinga (current-day Odisha), a sizable portion of Andhra Pradesh, West Bengal, and the eastern and central regions of Madhya Pradesh and Jharkhand between 1435 and 1541 CE, succeeded the Gangas of Orissa.
- ❖ Gajapati is an etymology term that refers to a king with an elephant army. **Kapilendra Deva founded the Gajapati Dynasty** in or around 1435 CE, following the overthrow of Bhanudeva IV, the final eastern Ganga ruler. It is also referred to as the **Suryavamsi Dynasty**.
- ❖ The popularity of the Bhakti movement under Sri Chaitanya, who entered the kingdom during the reign of King Prataparudra and resided at Puri for 18 long years, and the building of Jagannatha temples all over the empire helped define the Suryavamsi Gajapatis period in Odisha. The Gajapati kings played a significant role in extending their control into Karnataka in the south, which put them at odds with Vijayanagar, the Reddis, and the Bahmani Sultans.
- ❖ However, by the early 16th century, Vijayanagar and Golconda had gained control of significant areas of the Gajapatis' southern domain, and even the Gajapatis themselves had fallen to the **Bhoi dynasty**.

### Kapilendra Deva (c.1435–1466 CE):

- ❖ The Gajapati dynasty's first ruler. His dominion grew during his rule, reaching as far south as Bidar from Ganga in the north.
- ❖ He appointed **Hamvira Deva**, his eldest son, as the ruler of Rajamundry and Kondavidu about the year 1450 CE. He also gave Hamvira orders to annex Bahmani Sultanate and Vijayanagar.
- ❖ The **Vijayanagara capital, Hampi, was successfully taken by Hamvira**, who also forced the weak ruler Mallikarjuna Raya to pay yearly taxes. Tamavupala, a general under Hamvira Deva, overthrew the southern states of Udayagiri (Nellore district) and Chandragiri in around 1460 CE.
- ❖ According to the rock carvings at the **Srirangam temple close to Trichinapalli**, Hamvira Deva conquered as far south as Trichinapalli, Tanjore, and Arcot before assuming the name Dakshina Kapileswara in 1464 CE.
- ❖ **Kapilendra Deva supported Vaishnavism**, built the Shaivite temple of Kapileswar in Bhubaneswar, and enlarged the Jagannath temple in Puri.
- ❖ He was an avid **supporter of Vedic culture** and wrote the **Sanskrit play Parshuram Bijaya** himself.
- ❖ The **Odia Mahabharata**, written by renowned **Odia poet Sarala Das**, was first employed as an official administrative language under his rule.

### Purushottama Deva (c.1466–1497 CE):

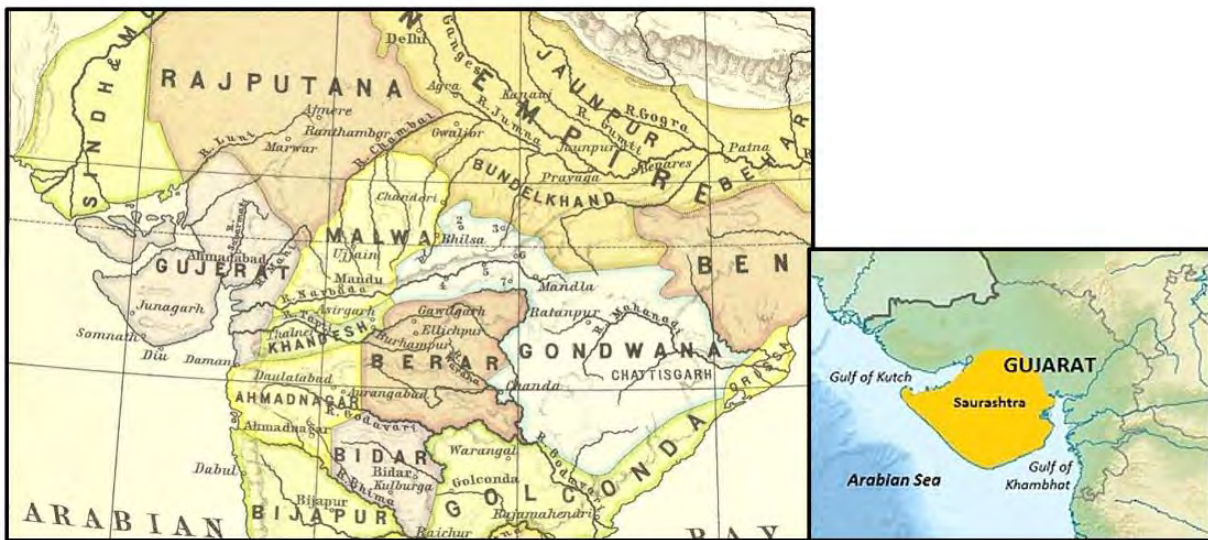
- ❖ Following Kapilendra Deva's passing, a struggle for control of the monarchy among his sons began. Purushottama Deva eventually defeated Hamvira Deva in 1484 CE to claim the throne.
- ❖ But during this time, Saluva Narasimha, the king of Vijayanagar, gained control of substantial portions of the empire's southern provinces. But by the time of his passing, he had taken back part of these lands.

### Prataparudra Deva (c.1497–1540 CE):

- ❖ Son of Purushottama Deva, under whose rule Bengal's Alauddin Husain Shah launched two attacks. The Bengal army advanced on Puri during the second campaign (about 1508 CE).

- ❖ The soldiers of the Gajapati Kingdom were routed by Krishna Deva Raya of the Vijayanagara empire's invasion into Kalinga in around 1512 CE, while the Odia army was driven out of the Krishna-Godavari tract by Quli Qutb Shah of Golconda in roughly 1522 CE.
- ❖ The **writings of Chaitanya** had a significant impact on Prataparudra, who abandoned the military tradition and retreated into an ascetic lifestyle, casting doubt on the empire's future.
- ❖ Later, in approximately 1541 CE, Govinda Vidyadhara, Prataparudra Deva's minister, rebelled against his feeble successors, and after killing the two sons of Prataparudra Deva, he founded the Bhoi Dynasty.
- ❖ The **Bhoi Dynasty** was brief, and during this time the country experienced civil strife as well as conflicts with neighboring kingdoms.
- ❖ History then repeated itself when Mukunda Deva, a Bhoi dynasty minister, assassinated the last two Bhoi monarchs and proclaimed himself the ruler of Odisha in around 1559 CE. Since Odisha saw a continuous fall following Mukunda Deva, he is regarded as the last independent king of the state.
- ❖ Around 1559 CE, a Bhoi dynasty official assassinated the last two Bhoi kings and declared himself the new ruler of Odisha.
- ❖ Since Odisha continued to decline after Mukunda Deva, he is recognised as the state's final autonomous king. the fact that Odisha has never before been a sovereign state in its history.

### WESTERN INDIA GUJARAT, MALWA AND MEWAR



#### Gujarat:

- ❖ Gujarat was one of the richest provinces with bustling **seaports, handicraft industry, and fertile terrain**.
- ❖ Alauddin Khalji added it to the Delhi Sultanate (c.1297 CE) and since then, it has been governed by Turks from the Delhi Sultanate.
- ❖ As per **historian Ferishta**, Gujarat had a good governor under Firoz Shah Tughlaq who was very liberal and greatly supported Hinduism.
- ❖ Firoz Shah Tughlaq was followed by Zafar Khan.

#### Muzaffar Shah/Zafar Khan (c.1407–1411 CE):

- ❖ His father Sadharan was a Rajput who converted to Islam and had given his sister in marriage to Firoz Tughlaq.

- ❖ After Timur's invasion, around 1407 - 1411 CE Zafar Khan, proclaimed himself independent.
- ❖ **Muzaffarid Dynasty** under the title Muzaffar Shah.

### Ahmed Shah (c.1411–1441 CE):

- ❖ He was the grandson of Muzaffar Shah
- ❖ He was considered as the real founder of the kingdom of Gujarat.
- ❖ He controlled the nobility and also established the administration.
- ❖ He expanded over Rajput states in the **Saurashtra region (Girnar)** and states at Rajasthan border, such as Jhalawar, Bundi, and Dungarpur.
- ❖ He assaulted **Sidhpur (Patan)**, a well-known Hindu pilgrimage site, and demolished numerous exquisite structures.
- ❖ Though he was a **devout Muslim and imposed jaziya** on the Hindus in Gujarat and also demolished countless temples but selected Hindus to key administrative positions.
  - Manik Chand and Motichand were his two ministers
- ❖ He fought against both the Muslim and Hindu regimes.
- ❖ Malwa Muslim kings were his main rivals.
- ❖ Gujarat and Malwa tried to balance each other for larger political gains in north Indian politics.
- ❖ He established **Ahmedabad as his capital** in around 1413 CE (shifted earlier capital from Patan)
- ❖ He built **Jami Masjid (1423 CE) and Teen Darwaza** and embellished the city with gardens, palaces, and bazaars.
- ❖ He built Jami Masjid with influence of Gujarat's Jaina architectural traditions, which are distinguished by their exquisite features of slender turrets, exquisite stone carving, and highly ornate brackets.
- ❖ He was renowned for delivering justice as well. He publicly executed his son-in-law, for instance, who had killed an innocent man.
- ❖ **Muhammad Shah**, often referred to as **Zar-Baksh**, succeeded his father Ahmed Shah to the throne after Ahmed Shah's passing in roughly 1441 CE.
  - In 1451 Zar-Baksh was assassinated by a group of people.
  - He was followed by two ineffective kings.
- ❖ Later, nobles installed Ahmad Shah's grandson Fateh Khan on the throne. He adopted the name **Mahmud Begarha** and led his dynasty with the greatest skill.

### Gujarat Mahmud Begarha (c.1459–1511 CE):

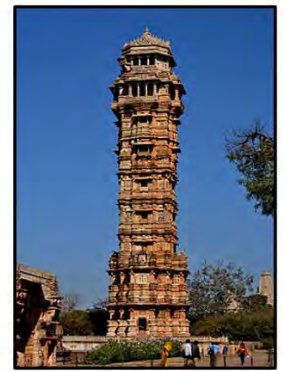
- ❖ He was the most significant monarch when the kingdom attained its zenith.
- ❖ He was known as "**Begarha**" because he defeated Rajputs and took control of two significant garhs, **Girnar (Junagarh)** in Saurashtra and the **fort of Champaner** in south Gujarat or due to his mustaches resembling cow horns.
- ❖ The important fort of Girnar served as a basis for operations against Sindh in addition to being appropriate for managing Saurashtra.
- ❖ At the base of the hill, Mahmud established a new settlement called **Mustafabad**, which later developed a number of lovely structures and served as Gujarat's second capital.
- ❖ He assaulted **Champaner Fort**, which was essential for maintaining control over **Malwa and Khandesh**.



- ❖ The inscription of the **Lalitpur temple**, which dates from this time period, is clear that he implemented a broad policy of religious toleration. It states that the building of temples was not subject to any limitations.
- ❖ Additionally, he supported the Jains, who were the region's main commercial traders and bankers, by encouraging many Rajputs to settle in Malwa. For instance, Nardeva Soni, a prosperous merchant, served as the Rana Mokul of Mewar's treasurer and advisor, and two of his older brothers were given jagirs in Malwa.
- ❖ He is also remembered for having excellent taste in buildings.
- ❖ He was responsible for making Mandu one of India's most formidable forts.
- ❖ Hoshang Shah created Hoshangabad in Madhya Pradesh, which was once known as **Narmadapur**.
- ❖ In around 1421 CE, after the King of Odisha had refused to provide him the best elephants, provides a fascinating illustration of his audacity.
  - He arrived in Jajpur, Odisha, with a thousand men and pretended to be traders of other goods, such as the king's preferred horses.
  - Hoshang Shah's forces captured the king when he arrived to check the horses, and he only released him after the monarch promised to give him 100 of the best elephants and to allow him to leave Odisha securely.

### Mahmud Khalji (c.1436–1469 CE):

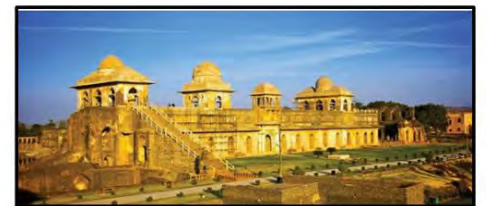
- ❖ After killing Mohammad, the son of the Hoshang Shah, Mahmud Khalji called himself Sultan.
- ❖ The Malwa Sultanate rose to its highest point during his rule.
- ❖ He fought with almost all his neighbors—the ruler of Gujarat, the rajas of the Gondwana, and Orissa, the Bahmani Sultans.
- ❖ He also had an unsuccessful campaign against the Delhi Sultanate.
- ❖ The south Rajputana states, particularly Mewar, were his main aims.
- ❖ Both sides of the conflict between **Mahmud Khalji and Rana Kumbha of Mewar** claimed victory.
- ❖ Rana Kumbha erected a tower of victory in Chittor, and the Sultan erected a seven-storied column at Mandu.



Vijaya Stambha  
Chittor Fort in Chittorgarh  
(Tower of Victory)

### Ghiyas-ud-Din (c. 1469–1500 CE):

- ❖ Ghiyas-ud-Din, Mahmud's eldest son and a womanizer who dedicated his life to music and women, succeeded his father as ruler. He built the **Jahaz Mahal** to house his harem's hundreds of female servants.
- ❖ Rana Raimal of Chittor defeated Ghiyas-ud-Din.



Jahaz Mahal, Mand

### Mahmud Shah II (c. 1510–1531 CE):

- ❖ Inal member of **Khalji Dynasty** of Malwa, who, in approximately 1531 CE, after losing the fort of Mandu, submitted to Bahadur Shah, the sultan of Gujarat.
- ❖ **Humayun** briefly overthrew the kingdom in 1535–1536 CE.
- ❖ Although Bahadur Shah maintained control of it from 1531 to 1537 CE.



Hoshang Shah's tomb

- ❖ A portion of the former kingdom was once again under the hands of **Qadir Shah**, an ex-officer of the previous Khalji dynasty, in around 1537 CE.
- ❖ However, Sher Shah Suri overthrew him and took control of the realm in around 1542 CE, installing **Shujaat Khan as ruler**.
- ❖ Around 1555 CE, his son Baz Bahadur proclaimed his independence.

### **Baz Bahadur (c.1555–1561 CE):**

- ❖ He was the final sultan of Malwa, famed for his love affair with queen Roopmati and his talent for poetry and music.
- ❖ Around 1561 CE, Adham Khan and Pir Muhammad Khan led Akbar's army in an assault on Malwa and it resulted in the defeat of Baz Bahadur at the Battle of Sarangpur.
- ❖ Adham Khan's passion for Rani Roopmati appears to be one of the causes of his attack. When she learned that Mandu had fallen and that Baz Bahadur had escaped to Khandesh, Rani Roopmati poisoned herself.
- ❖ Adam Khan was recalled by Akbar and handed over the command to Pir Mohammad - Pir Muhammad then attacked Khandesh and advanced as far as Burhanpur and fought against Miran Mubarak Shah II of Khandesh, Tufal Khan of Berar, and Baz Bahadur and eventually got killed.
- ❖ Baz Bahadur briefly reclaimed his throne.
- ❖ In 1562 CE, Akbar dispatched a new army under the command of Abdullah Khan, who ultimately routed Baz Bahadur, who had fled to Chittor.
  - He remained a fugitive at various courts until he finally turned himself in to Akbar at Nagaur in around 1570 CE, at which point Malwa became a subah of the Mughal empire.

### **Architecture During this Time:**

- The Jami Masjid, designed and started by Hoshang Shah and finished by Mahmud Khalji, and apart from this other architectural splendor of this time was:
  - Hindola Mahal
  - Jahaz Mahal
  - Hoshang Shah's tomb
  - Baz Bahadur and Rani Rupamati's palaces constructed in the walled city of Mandu
- ❖ In contrast to Gujarati architecture, Mandu architecture was massive because towering plinths (a heavy base supporting a statue or vase) were used for the buildings, and there was extensive use of coloured and glazed tiles that gave the structures variety.



**Jami Masjid**



**Hindola Mahal**

### **Mewar:**

- ❖ Originally known as **Medhpaat**, the kingdom of Mewar or **Udaipur** later adopted the name Mewar.
- ❖ Rulers believed themselves to be merely custodians of the Hindu civilization exemplified in the temple of their lord Eklingaji (a manifestation of Lord Shiva, also known as Medhpateshwar),

- ❖ Used the title "**Maharana**" (**Prime Minister or Custodian**) instead of the traditional title "**Maharaja**" (**King**) (**Lord of Medpath**).
- ❖ Alauddin Khalji's conquest of Ranthambore put an end to the Chauhans' dominance in Rajputana. Mewar has mostly lost its significance after being conquered by Alauddin Khalji's forces.
- ❖ In 1335 the **Second**



**Guhila Dynasty of Chittor** was later founded by Rana Hammira (c.1314–78 CE), who also served as the founder of the Sisodia clan, a sub clan of the Guhilot clan, to whom every succeeding Maharana of Mewar has belonged.

- Rana Hammira was the first ruler to use the title "Rana,".
- He constructed the Annapoorna Mata Temple in Rajasthan's Chittorgarh Fort.
- In around 1433 CE, Rana Kumbha, the son of Rana Hammira, succeeded to the throne of Mewar following the murder of Maharana Mokal, his grandson.



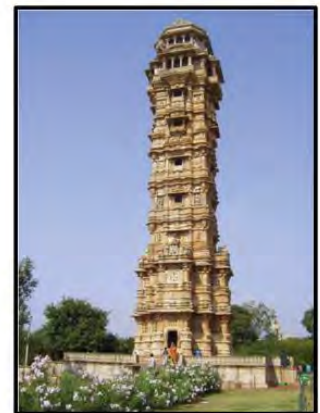
**Chittorgarh Fort with Victory Tower**

### **Rana Kumbha (c.1433–1468 CE):**

- ❖ Mewar was extricated from obscurity and given the status of a force to be reckoned with by **Rana Kumbha or Kumbhakarna Singh**.
- ❖ Accomplished military leader and commander who made his impact in both politics and culture.
- ❖ Rana Kumbha conquered states like Bundi, Kota, Chatsu, Malpura, Amber, Dungepur, etc. after carefully and diplomatically solidifying his position and eliminating his internal opponents.
- ❖ Most of these states submitted to Rana Kumbha's rule and came under his political sway. Sambhar, Didwana, Mandore, Nagaur, Ranthambore, Sirohi, Gagran, Ajmer, Mandalgarh, Abu, Toda, and other places were also annexed by him to his realm.

### ❖ **Malwa's Sultan Mahmud Khalji vs Rana Kumbha:**

- A Mahmud Khalji competitor was provided shelter by **Rana Kumbha**, and he even made an attempt to put him in power in Malwa. **Mahmud Khalji** supported several of the Rana's adversaries actively, including his brother Mokal, by providing sanctuary to them.
- Mahmud Khalji and Rana Khumba engaged in combat, and it's interesting to note that both sides declared victory.
- At Chittor, **Kumbha built the Victory Tower** as a symbol of his conquests' success. In addition, he built a road that passed through Chittor's seven doorways and strengthened the city's defenses.
- Although Mahmud Khalji was able to go as far inland as Ajmer and appoint his own governor, and Kumbhalgarh was occasionally besieged by Gujarati



**Victory Tower**

forces, Rana was able to repel these raids and hold onto most of his conquests with the exception of some of the remote regions, such as Ranthambore.

- ❖ He was a tremendous supporter of literature and the arts as well as an outstanding pianist (he was a great veena player).
  - He was known as "Sangeet Shiromani" and produced numerous notable works on Indian music, including:
    - Sangeet-Raj,
    - Sangeet Mimansa,
    - Sangeet Ratnakar
    - Sudprabandh.
- ❖ He supported respected academics like **Mahesh and Atri**, who wrote the Victory Tower's inscriptions.
- ❖ He founded Basantpur as a city and established many inns, mansions, ponds, schools, and many temples were constructed.
- ❖ He constructed the **five forts of Kumbhalgarh, Achalgarh, Maddan, Kolana, and Vairat**.
- ❖ He also supported other sculptors and artisans.
- ❖ Unfortunately, his own son Udai killed him in order to take the kingdom. However, Maharana Raimal, the younger son of Rana Kumbha, drove Udai from his throne.
- ❖ Later, Rana Sanga (son of Raimal), who had been involved in another regrettable and protracted fratricide with his brothers, took control of Mewar.

### **Rana Sanga (c.1508–1528 CE):**

- ❖ He was the **grandson of Rana Kumbha**, who was originally known as **Sangram Singh**.
- ❖ He was a fierce and valiant Rajput king who engaged in numerous conflicts.
- ❖ Despite losing an arm, an eye, and countless other severe injuries, this man of indomitable spirit showed amazing bravery and established his dominance over nearly all Rajput states in Rajasthan.
- ❖ He was more of a visionary than a fighter.
- ❖ After the **Gurjara-Pratihara empire fell**, Rajputs from all over northern India had split into several groups and were fighting and bickering among themselves, but he successfully brought the various factions together.
- ❖ Rana Sanga moved his army against the nearby kingdom of Malwa, which was experiencing internal strife, after first establishing his position at Mewar (as during this period Malwa was disintegrating).
- ❖ **Mahmud II**, the king of Malwa, sought aid from both **Sultan Ibrahim Lodhi of Delhi and Bahadur Shah of Gujarat** because he was concerned about the influence of his **rival Rajput Wazir Medini Rai**.
- ❖ Rai asked Sanga to assist him. Sanga's men from Mewar defeated not only the Malwa army but also their supporting troops from Delhi after being joined by Rajput rebels from Malwa.
- ❖ Malwa thus came under Rana's control militarily.
- ❖ Even after being defeated and taken prisoner by Rana, he treated Sultan Mahmud with kindness and restored his empire, demonstrating his valor.
- ❖ Around 1518 CE, he also **triumphed at Ghatoli over the Delhi Sultan Ibrahim Lodhi** (near Gwalior). After allegedly being stunned by this Rajput aggressiveness, Lodhi attempted to attack Sanga's army once more in 1519 CE, but he was defeated at Dholpur.

- ❖ Thus, Lodi engaged Sanga in a series of battles, but each time he was victorious and lost a sizable portion of his Rajputana territory, while Sanga's military dominance grew to encompass an area that was within striking distance of Agra!
- ❖ Some myths claim that Babur invaded India in around 1526 CE at Rana Sanga's invitation.
- ❖ However, Rana Sanga engaged Babur in the renowned battle of Khanwa in Fatehpur Sikri just a year later (c.1527 CE).
- ❖ Babur was **opposed by the Rajput soldiers of Rana Sanga**, who were supported by:
  - Hasan Khan Mewati,
  - Mahmud Lodhi, an Afghan, and
  - Raja Medini Rai of Alwar.
- ❖ The fight, which lasted no longer than ten hours, was fiercely waged and turned into a really vicious conflict. The surrender of Silhadi and his group separated the Rajput forces at a crucial point in the conflict.
- ❖ Rana Sanga was injured while attempting to repair his front and lost consciousness while falling off his horse. The Rajput army retreated in disarray believing their commander was dead, giving the **Mughals the upper hand**.
- ❖ The Marwar Rathore contingent carried Rana Sanga out to safety.
- ❖ He began to assemble his soldiers once more and restart the struggle with Babur since he was unwilling to accept defeat.
- ❖ He **pledged not to enter Chittor** until he had vanquished Babur. He engaged Babur once more at the **Battle of Chanderi** in around 1528 CE to defend Medini Rai, who was under attack from Babur.
- ❖ But at Kalpi, he became ill and passed away in his camp. Some of his nobles may have poisoned him because they believed that his decision to restart the war with Babur was suicidal.
- ❖ It is important to remember that Maharana Sanga's daughter-in-law, the famed **Meera Bai**, was a poet, saint, and ardent **follower of Lord Krishna**. Maharana Pratap was descended from Maharana Sanga.

## Mughal Empire

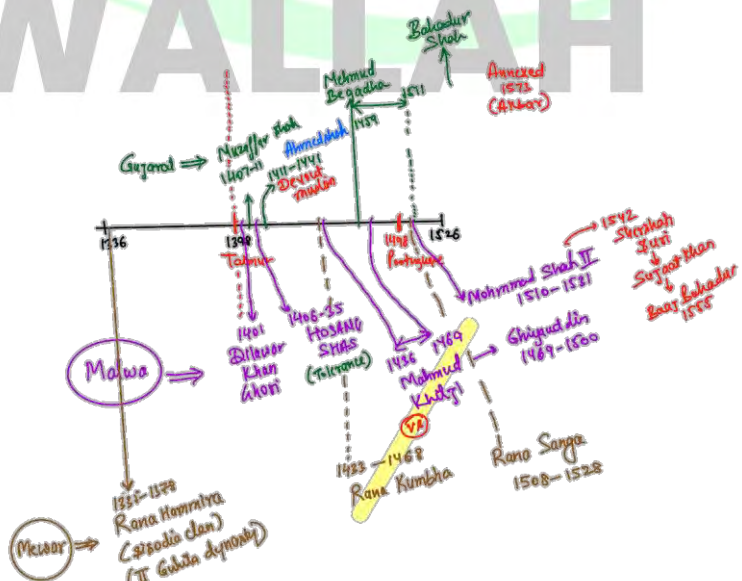
### Background:

#### ❖ Central Asia:

- The **Mongol Empire declined** in 14<sup>th</sup> Century Timur (1370 – 1405) of Turko-Mongol lineage united Iran and Turan under one rule once again.
- Timur attacked India in 1398 and died in 1405.

#### ❖ Sharukh Mirza (1405 – 1447):

- He was the son of Timur.
- He extended the empire.
- He patronized arts and letters.
- During his time **Samarkand (Uzbekistan) and Herat (Afghanistan)** became cultural centers.



➤ Gradually, the power of the Timurids declined.

#### ❖ Ottoman Turks:

- In the west of Iran their power was growing and wanted to dominate eastern Europe and Iran and was a posing threat to the **Safavid Empire**.
- Scene was set for the conflict of **three mighty empires** in Asia.



#### Important Ruler of the Mughal Empire:

- ❖ Babur (1526-1530)
- ❖ Humayun (1530-1540, 1555-1556)
- ❖ Akbar (1556 – 1605)
- ❖ Jahangir (1605 – 1627)
- ❖ Shah Jahan (1627 – 1658)
- ❖ Aurangzeb (1658 – 1707)
- ❖ Later Mughals

#### Who were Mughals?

- ❖ Mughal - usual term in western accounts of the period but the rulers called themselves the **Timurid Dynasty**. It had **both Mongol and Turkic ancestors**, culturally they were **Persian**.
- ❖ Babur led an army from there through Bactria, over the Salang Pass to Afghanistan, then through the Khyber Pass into the subcontinent. He went on to conquer northern India and established his capital at Agra.
- ❖ The empire is usually dated from Babur's victory at Panipat in 1526. His successors expanded it greatly.

#### Babur (1526-1530):

- ❖ His original name was **Zahir ud-din Muhammad**.
- ❖ Father - Umar Sheikh Mirza
- ❖ He was a patron of Timur Lang.
- ❖ He believed that Genghis Khan was the ancestor of his lineage\*\*.
- ❖ He was an Emir of Ferghana (on the Silk Road).
- ❖ In 1494 died a sudden death.

- ❖ At the age of 11-year Babur ascended the throne.
- ❖ He set out to expand his holdings.
- ❖ By 1497, **conquered the famous Silk Road** oasis city of Samarkand.
- ❖ His uncles and other nobles rose in rebellion again back in Andijan and soon he lost control of Samarkand.
- ❖ He **succeeded Farghana** in 1494.
- ❖ He won the Samarkand city twice but eventually lost it.
- ❖ Shaibani Khan (Uzbek Chief) was called to defeat Babur and he conquered Samarkand.
- ❖ He also **defeated the rest of the Timurid Kingdom** and forced Babur to move towards Kabul.
- ❖ Babur conquered Kabul in 1504.
- ❖ Babur tried to reconquer the lost land from Uzbeks with the help of his uncle, the ruler of Herat, but Herat was conquered by Shaibani.

### **Safavid vs Shaibani Khan (Uzbeks):**

- ❖ Shaibani Khan got killed.
- ❖ Babur reattempted to conquer Samarkand by the help of Iranians.
- ❖ He sat at the throne and expected to act as per Iranian prince but did not like it.
- ❖ Uzbeks recovered and defeated Babur.
- ❖ Babur came back to Kabul.
- ❖ Babur wanted to explore India and found it as a safe place to take refuge.

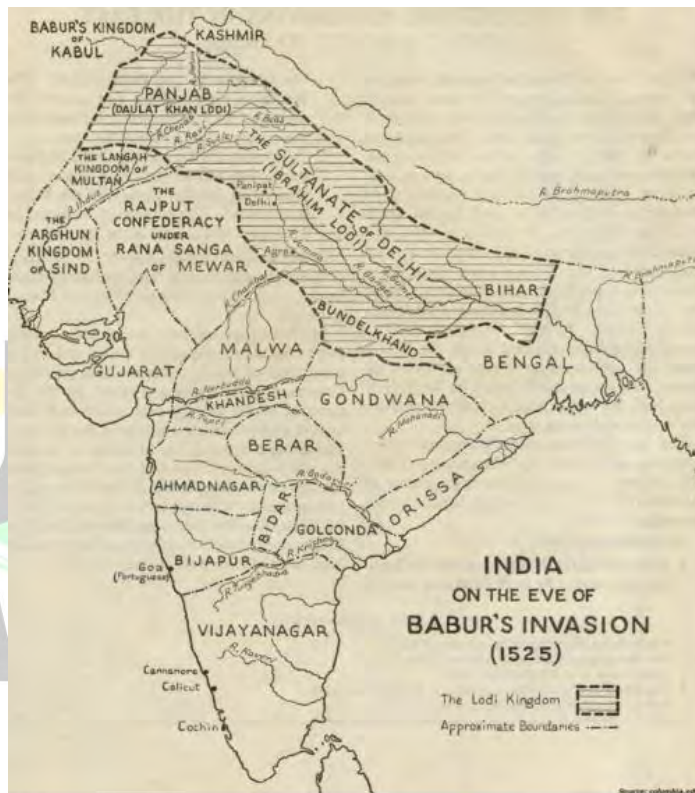
### **Meanwhile in India:**

- ❖ Sikander Lodhi died in 1517.
- ❖ After 4 years of Ibrahim Lodhi's rule, the **Afghan nobility invited Babur to depose Ibrahim Lodhi.**
- ❖ Babur gathered an army and launched a siege on Kandahar.
- ❖ **Invitation:**
  - Daulat Khan Lodhi (Government of Punjab/Afghan Chief)
  - Embassy led by his son Dilwar Khan.
  - Alam Khan (Uncle of Ibrahim Lodhi).
  - Rana Sanga of Mewar.\*\*
- ❖ Babur was well learned in **Arabic and Persian.**
- ❖ He wrote **Tuzuk-i-Baburi in Turki**, it was one of the classics of world literature written by Babur.
- ❖ **Baburnama (persian translation)** by Abdur Rahim Khane Khana.
- ❖ In English by Madam Bebridge.
- ❖ **Poems:** Diwan (Turki) and Mubaiyan (Persian)
- ❖ **Risal-i-usuz** was the letters of Babur written by Masnavi.
- ❖ The absence of religious and sectarian bigotry.
- ❖ He was a devoted follower of **Naqshbandiya Sufi Khwaja Ubaidullah Ahrar.**

- ❖ He was a keen lover and observer of nature and has described the flora and fauna of India in considerable detail.
- ❖ Introduced **Char-Baghs** and symmetrically laid out gardens with running waters and fountains.
- ❖ He built two mosques, one at Panipat and another at Sambhat in Rohilkhand.
- ❖ On January 5th, 1531, Babur died near Lahore on his way to Kabul.
- ❖ His tomb has been built in Kabul.
- ❖ Humayun, 22 years old, inherited a rickety empire, which had internal and external enemies.
- ❖ He did not command the respect of nobility and thus many deserted.
  - The nobles had tried to install Humayun's uncle, Mahdi Khwaja

**Conquest of India:**

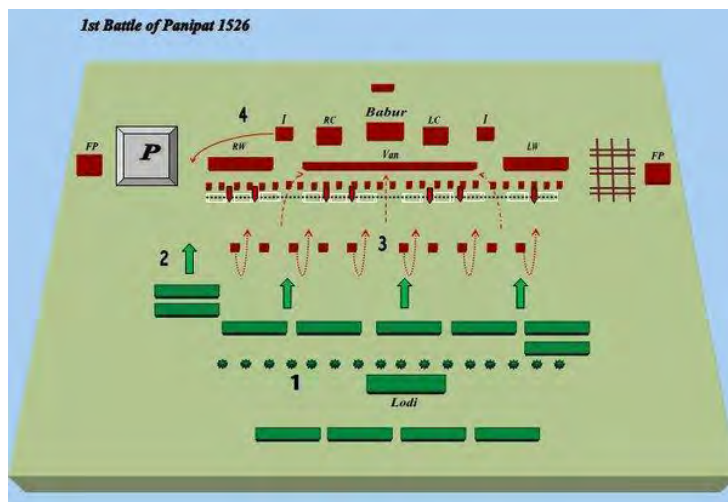
- ❖ Babur captured Bhira and Sialkot (1520-21).
- ❖ The twin gateways to Hindustan.
- ❖ He returned due to the revolt at Kandahar.
- ❖ After tranquilizing, attacked again.
- ❖ **Attacked Lahore** in 1524, one of the reasons for occupying Punjab was the meager income of Kabul.
- ❖ In 1525-crossed Indus and became master of Punjab.



**Battle of Panipat (20<sup>th</sup> April, 1526):**

Babur	Ibrahim Lodhi
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ 24,000 men crossed Indus, mostly with horse cavalry.</li> <li>❖ Joined by Indians and nobles.</li> <li>❖ Rumi (Ottoman) method of warfare also called Tulughma and the araba system.</li> <li>❖ Used gunpowder, 15-20 field guns.</li> <li>❖ Ottoman master gunners</li> <li>❖ Ustad Ali and Mustafa</li> <li>❖ Archers</li> <li>❖ Trenches and Barricades provided defense.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ 1 Lakh:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ 40,000 cavalries</li> <li>➤ 30,000 infantries armed with swords, pikes, bows and bamboo rods.</li> </ul> </li> <li>❖ 1000 elephants.</li> </ul>

- ❖ **Babur won and occupied Delhi** and sent Humayun to siege Agra.
- ❖ Proclaimed himself as **“Emperor of Hindustan”**
- ❖ Unlike his ancestor, Timur, Babur was dedicated to the idea of building a permanent empire in India.
- ❖ He decided to build his capital at Agra.
- ❖ After the Panipat, he fought two hard battles:
  - Rana Sanga of Mewar (Battle of Khanwa, 1527)
  - Other against the Eastern Afghans.



### Battle of Khanwa (1527):

- ❖ The battle was fought between **Rana Sanga and Ibrahim Lodi** (earlier) for the domination of eastern Rajasthan and Malwa.
- ❖ Babur accused Rana Sanga of **breach of agreement**.
- ❖ Mahmud Lodhi, brother of Ibrahim Lodhi and all Rajputs rulers supported Rana Sanga but still he got defeated against Babur.
- ❖ **Rana Sanga of Mewar** enjoyed the support of a large number of Rajput chiefs, of which the prominent ones were of Jalore, Sirohi, Dungarpur, and Amber, along with Raja Medini Rai of Chanderi in Malwa, Hasan Khan of Mewar, and Mahmud Lodhi, the younger son of Sikander Lodhi.
- ❖ Babur declared the war against Rana Sanga to be a jihad and adopted the **title of Ghazi** after the victory.
- ❖ Babur strengthened his position further by conquering the chain of forts in Gwalior, Dholpur, east of Agra, and large parts of Alwar from Hasan Khan Mewar.

### Battle of Chanderi (1528):

- ❖ On receiving news that Rana Sanga had renewed war preparations to renew the conflict with him, Babur decided to isolate the Rana by inflicting a military defeat on one of his staunchest allies Medini Rai who was the ruler of Malwa.
- ❖ Defeated Medini Rai of Chanderi at Malwa:
  - Chanderi Captured.
  - Rajput defended well but lost.
  - Women performed Jauhar.
- ❖ Meanwhile Afghans in Eastern UP became active against him.

### The Afghans Battle of Ghagra (near Bihar) 1529:

- ❖ Afghans were defeated but not reconciled.
- ❖ Eastern UP was still under the Afghan rulers. Lacked a popular leader.
- ❖ Backed by Nusrat Shah, ruler of Bengal.
- ❖ Later Mahmud Lodi, brother of Ibrahim Lodhi reached Bihar, Afghans hailed him as their leader.

- ❖ Babur patches up an agreement with Afghans since he was anxious about the situation in Central Asia.
  - Placed a vague claim of suzerainty at Bihar and left for Kabul.
  - Died on his way to Lahore.

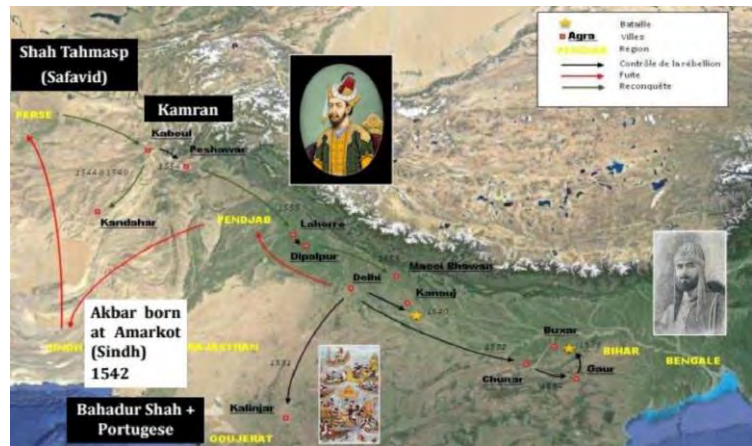
### Significance of Babur's advent to India:

- ❖ Kabul and Gandhar became integral parts of the empire after the Kushans.
- ❖ It strengthens foreign trade as these two towns are the starting points of **caravan to China and Mediterranean sea ports**.
- ❖ Gave India **security from external invasions** for almost 200 years.
- ❖ It destroyed the balance of power in the area & longstep to establish an **all India empire**.
- ❖ Introduced a new mode of warfare in India:
  - **Popularisation of gunpowder**, cavalry and artillery in India.
  - Although gunpowder was used earlier too but not as popular.



### Humayun (1530-1540, 55-56)

- ❖ **'Humayun' means 'fortune'**, but he remained the most unfortunate ruler of the Mughal Empire.
- ❖ Humayun was born to Mahim Begam and Babur and was the eldest son of Babur.
- ❖ He succeeded at 22 years of age, problems faced by him:
  - Afghans not subdued
  - Administration not consolidated.
  - Timurid legacy of partitioning the empire among all the brothers (Kamran, Hindal and Askari)
    - Kamran - Kabul, Qandar, Punjab
    - Hindal - Alwar, Mewat
    - Askari - Sambal
- ❖ Bahadur Shah of Gujarat and Humayun could concentrate all his resources against Sher Khan and the Afghans.
- ❖ **Kabul and Kandahar:**
  - It was under his younger brother Kamaran.
  - It was a poverty-stricken area.
  - So, he captured Lahore and Multan.
  - But accepted the suzerainty of Humayun.
- ❖ Now, without worrying about the North west frontier Humayun turned his attention towards Afghans in the east.



### ❖ Afghans in East:

#### ➤ 2 major rivals Bahadur Shah of Gujarat (south west):

1. Sher Shah Suri settled along the river Ganges in Bihar to the east.
2. First five years of Humayun's reign, those two rulers quietly extended their rule.
  - Humayun attended them first and won at **Daurah (UP) in 1532**.
  - Besieged Chunar fort which was recently captured by Sher Shah Suri.

### ❖ Farid/Sher Shah Suri:

- He was a powerful Afghan noble.
- He persuaded Humayun and promised to be loyal.
- He sent one of his sons as a hostage.
- Humayun accepted his offer.
- But now worried about Bahadur Shah (who had sieged Chittor)
- Bahadur Shah retreated by patching up with Rana and left his forts for him.

❖ Humayun for the next 1.5 years, busy building Dinpanah (sixth city of Delhi) now and celebrating

❖ While Farid working on his strength firearms source

❖ Mughals faced challenges from Ottoman Empire, Bahadur-Portuguese

❖ In 1535 Humayun marched on Bahadur Shah and **captured the forts of Mandu and Champaner**. Bahadur, meanwhile, escaped and took up refuge with the Portuguese.

### **Bahadur Shah of Gujarat:**

- ❖ He was the king in 1526-35 & 36-37.
- ❖ He was a great patron of **Hindustani Classical music**; many musicians adorned his court including **Baiju Bawra**.
- ❖ Rivals of Humayun joined him and got back to the Chittor fort again.
- ❖ Also, Tatar Khan allied (cousin of Ibrahim Lodhi) invaded Agra but lost and got killed.
- ❖ He fled from one place to another.

- ❖ Humayun won Gujarat and Malwa but immediately lost it:
  - He placed his brother Askari on the Gujarat throne.
  - Askari got terrified and retreated to Agra. This gave a false impression to Humayun that he wanted to attack Agra.
  - Finally both reconciled.
- ❖ But meanwhile Gujarat & Malwa lost 1535-36.
- ❖ In 1537 he was busy with Portuguese and was killed by them on a ship.
- ❖ **Diu** was taken over by the **Portuguese**.
- ❖ Akbar Nama, mentions about the death of Bahadur Shah in front of Diu during negotiations with the Portuguese, in 1537.

### Chaos at Bengal:

- ❖ Shortly after Humayun had marched on Gujarat, **Sher Shah** saw an opportunity to wrest control of Agra from the Mughals. He began to gather his army together hoping for a rapid and decisive siege of the Mughal capital.
- ❖ Upon hearing that alarming news, Humayun quickly marched his troops back to Agra allowing Bahadur to easily regain control of the territories Humayun had recently taken. A few months later Bahadur died.
- ❖ While **Humayun succeeded in protecting Agra from Sher Shah**, the second city of the Empire, **Gaur (Bengal)**, had been sacked. Humayun's troops had been delayed while trying to take Chunar, a fort occupied by Sher Shah's son, to protect his troops from an attack from the rear.
- ❖ The stores of grain at Gaur, the largest in the empire, had been emptied. With the vast wealth of Bengal depleted and brought East, Sher Shah built a substantial war chest.
- ❖ **Farid consolidated his power (1535-37):**
  - He consolidated Bihar
  - All Afghans joined him while Sher Shah continued to profess loyalty to the Mughals.
  - He had **systematically planned to expel the Mughals** from India.
  - He made an **alliance with Bahadur Shah of Gujarat** and defeated the Bengal King as well.

### Humayun:

- Captured Chunar fort again with great difficulty.
- He invaded Bengal and **won Gaur (capital) in 1538**.
- Offer from Sher Shah (Rejected) Bottled in Bengal.
- Hindal crowned at Agra.
- Kamran advanced.

### Battle at Chausa (1539):

- ❖ At banks of the **Ganges, near Benares, in Chausa**.
- ❖ It was an entrenched battle in which both sides dug themselves into positions.



- ❖ The Mughal army, especially the artillery, became immobile.
- ❖ Humayun decided to engage in diplomacy and sent Muhammad Aziz as ambassador.
- ❖ Humayun agreed to **allow Sher Shah to rule over Bengal and Bihar**, but only as provinces granted to him
- ❖ The two rulers struck a bargain to save face.
- ❖ Sher Shah's troops made their agreed-upon retreat, Mughal troops relaxed.
- ❖ Sher Shah reneged his army and approached the Mughal camp and defeated them. After this Sher Khan **adopted the title of Sher Shah.**
- ❖ The emperor survived by swimming the Ganges and quietly returned to Agra
- ❖ Reached Agra but had trust issues with Kamran, but at this time Kamran returned to Lahore.

### **Battle of Kannauj (1540):**

- ❖ Humayun reformed a new army and resumed the leadership of Bihar to fight Sher Shah.
- ❖ He made a haste attack and was **badly defeated.** This led to the **start of the Sur Empire.**
- ❖ Humayun had to flee to Punjab and then to Sindh.
- ❖ Humayun later married Hamida Bano, daughter of Hindal's teacher.
- ❖ Akbar was born at Amarkot on the way to Sindh. Amarkot was a Hindu kingdom ruled by Rana Prasad.
- ❖ Humayun took shelter under **Iranian King Shah Tahmasp (Safavid Dynasty)** who helped him with troops.
- ❖ He converted Humayun to the Shia sect.
- ❖ Humayun **got back Kandahar and Kabul** with their help and **returned in 1555.**
- ❖ Later he defeated the Afghan and recovered the throne.



# **DAILY CLASS NOTES**

---

## **MEDIEVAL HISTORY**

**Lecture - 16**

**Mughal Empire II**



## Mughal Empire II

### Sher Shah Suri (1540-55):

- ❖ His real name was **Farid** and he was the founder of the **Sur Dynasty**.
- ❖ He administered father's iqta at **Sasaram**.
- ❖ His father Hasan was a Jagirdar at Jaunpur and served under Afghan governor of Bihar, Bahar Khan Lohani.
- ❖ Bahar Khan Lohani gave the title **Sher Khan** for his bravery (killed a tiger).
- ❖ After Ibrahim Lodhi he was the most important Afghan sardar.
- ❖ Defeated Sultan Mahmud Shah of Bengal at the **Battle of Surajgarh**.
- ❖ He had a clash with Rajputs at Samel 1544.
- ❖ He died in 1545.
- ❖ **Abbas Khan Sarwani** a historian of Sher Shah who wrote **Tarikh-e-shershahi**.

### Military campaign of Sher Shah:

- ❖ After defeating Humayun, he started **consolidating his position** in northern and eastern India.
- ❖ He defeated and **conquered Malwa** in c.1542 CE, followed by Chanderi.
- ❖ He led campaigns against Marwar, Ranthambhore, Nagor, Ajmer, Jodhpur, and Bikaner.
- ❖ He **defeated Maldeo** in the famous **Battle of Samel** around Ajmer (c.1544 CE).
- ❖ He also defeated rebellious Afghans in Bengal and proclaimed himself as the **"Emperor of Hindustan"**.
- ❖ By around 1545 CE, he declared himself to be the supreme ruler from Sindh and Punjab extending over all of Rajputana in the west and Bengal in the east.
- ❖ In c.1545 CE he led his last successful campaign against Kalinjar (Bundelkhand), but died from an accidental explosion of gunpowder.

### Art and Architecture:

- ❖ He was also a patron of art and architecture.
- ❖ He built a new city on the banks of the river Yamuna near Delhi.
- ❖ He built the **Purana Qila (Old Fort)**.
- ❖ He built **Sher Mandal**, an octagonal building inside the Purana Qila complex, which later served as the **library of Humayun**.
- ❖ Sher Shah built his own **mausoleum at Sasaram**, considered as one of the masterpieces of Indian architecture.



Purana Qila, Delhi



Sher Mandal  
(Humayun's Library)

- ❖ He also built the **Rohtas Fort, a UNESCO World Heritage Site now in Pakistan.**
- ❖ He laid construction of many structures in the Rohtasgarh Fort in Bihar.
- ❖ He built the Sher Shah Suri Masjid, in Patna.
- ❖ He built a new city, Bhera of modern-day Pakistan, in c.1545 CE and a grand Sher Shah Suri Masjid inside the city.
- ❖ Sher Shah patronised learned men.
- ❖ Malik Mohammad Jaysi completed his Padmavat during his reign.
- ❖ The famous historian, Abbas Khan Sarwani, wrote the Tarikh-i- Shershahi during his reign.



Rohtas Fort (Pakistan) a UNESCO World Heritage Site

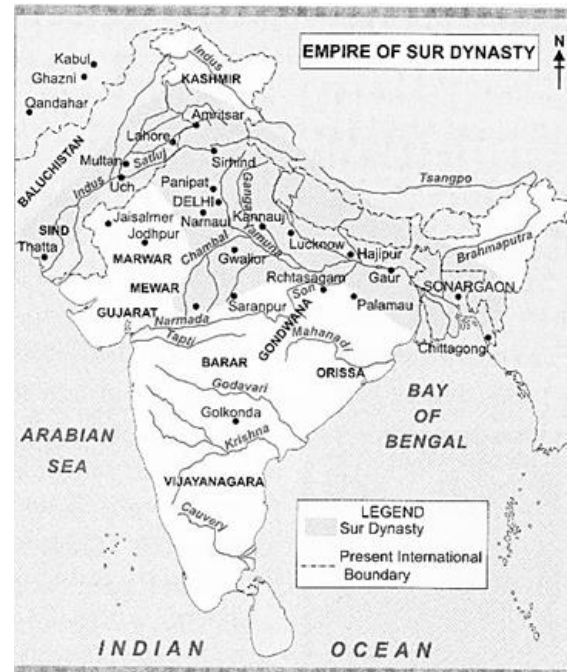
### Administration:

- ❖ Sher Shah organized a brilliant administrative system with **centralization and heavy bureaucracy.**
- ❖ His administrative system served as an **inspiration to Mughal and the British administration.**
- ❖ The empire was divided into forty-seven sarkars.
- ❖ **Chief Shiqdar (law and order) and Chief Munsif (judge)** were in charge of the administration in each sarkar.
- ❖ Each **sarkar was divided into several parganas** and each pargana was administered by:
  - Shiqdar (military officer)
  - Amil (land revenue officer)
  - Qanungo (officials in charge of maintaining revenue records)
  - Fotedar (treasurer)
  - Karkuns (accountants)
- ❖ Mauza (village) was the lowest level of administration.
- ❖ The king was assisted by **four important ministers:**
  1. **Diwan-i- Wizarat:** Also called Wazir, in charge of Revenue and Finance.
  2. **Diwan-i-Ariz:** In charge of the Army.
  3. **Diwan-i-Risalat:** Foreign Minister.
  4. **Diwan-i-Insha:** Minister for Communications.
- ❖ Though a devout Muslim, adopted a tolerant attitude towards other religions. He employed Hindus in important offices.

### Revenue Administration:

- ❖ She Shah for the first time introduced a **schedule of crop rates (ray).**
- ❖ He strengthened the land revenue system by implementing **Zabti-i-har-sal** (annual land assessment) and classifying all cultivable lands into three categories (good, middle, and bad).
- ❖ **Amils** used to be in charge of **measuring the area under cultivation** in order to calculate the state share.
- ❖ The state's portion, which was paid in cash or crops, was equal to one-third of the average yield or production.

- ❖ Land was measured using Sikandari gaz (32 points).
- ❖ **Sher Shah introduced two documents:**
  1. **Patta** (Amount each peasant had to pay)
  2. **Qabuliyat** (Deed of agreement).
- ❖ **Currency:**
  - He introduced new **copper coins called Dam** and they were in circulation till c.1835 CE.
  - He was the first ruler to introduce **silver Rupayia (1 Rupayia = 64 dams) and gold coin (Ashrafi/Mohur)**.
    - Earlier the term Rupayia had been used as a generic term for any silver coin, it was during his rule the term 'Rupayia' came to be used as the name for a silver coin of a standard weight of 178 grains, which was the precursor of the modern rupee. Similarly, gold coins weighed 169 grains.



## Contributions of Sher Shah

### Trade, Commerce and Communications:

- ❖ Sher Shah also introduced other reforms to promote growth of trade and commerce. In his entire empire, goods paid customs duty only at two places: **Bengal and Indus**.
- ❖ He gave his amirs orders to compel the people to treat merchants and travelers with the utmost respect and to refrain from doing them any damage.
- ❖ He made the **local village headmen (muqaddams)** and zamindars responsible for any loss that the merchant suffered on the roads.
- ❖ He **improved communications** by building roads as it was the arteries of the empire.
- ❖ He laid **four important highways:**
  1. **Sonargaon to Sind:** He restored the old imperial road (the **Grand Trunk Road by Ashoka**) and also restored the Uttarapatha which connected Tamralipti (Bengal) to Purushpur (Peshawar).
  2. **Agra to Burhampur.**
  3. **Jodhpur to Chittor.**
  4. **Lahore to Multan**
- ❖ He built **sarais (rest houses)** at the distance of every two kos, i.e., eight kms on the highways for the benefit of the travelers.
- ❖ The sarais were fortified lodging or inns built for the travelers to spend the night and also keep their goods in safe custody.
- ❖ Every Sarai had several watchmen under the control of a **shahna (custodian)**.
- ❖ Many sarais evolved into **market towns (qasbas)**, where peasants gathered to sell their produce.
- ❖ These sarais also served as venues for the news service, or dak-chowki.



### Law and Order:

- ❖ He re-established law and order across the empire.
- ❖ **Police was efficiently reorganized** and crime was less during his regime.
- ❖ He dealt sternly with robbers, dacoits, and zamindars who violated government orders or refused to pay land revenue.

### Justice System:

- ❖ He paid huge emphasis on justice.
- ❖ He did not spare oppressors, whether they were high nobles, men of his own tribe or near relatives.
- ❖ Qazis were appointed at different places for justice.
- ❖ Village panchayats and zamindars dealt with **civil and criminal cases** at the local level.
- ❖ Justice system was **not dependent on Ulemas**.
- ❖ His son Islam Shah took a big step towards dispensation of justice as he codified the laws.

### Military Administration:

- ❖ Sher Shah efficiently reorganized the military administration.
- ❖ He revived **Alauddin's Chehra and Dagh system**.
- ❖ He supervised recruitment of soldiers and paid them directly.
- ❖ He divided the army into **sawars** (serving as linchpin of the entire organization), elephants and frontmen.
- ❖ He maintained his personal royal force called **Khasa Kail**.

### Islam Shah (1545-1553):

- ❖ He succeeded his father Farid (Sher Shah).
- ❖ He **codified laws**.
- ❖ He cut privileges to nobles.
- ❖ He also introduced **cash salaries** to soldiers.
- ❖ There was a civil war at his death that provided an opportunity for Humayun.
- ❖ He was succeeded by **Muhammad Adil Shah** (1553-1555), a weak ruler of **the Sur Dynasty**.

### The Recovery of the Mughal Empire:

- ❖ Humayun spent most of his time during the exile in Sindh.
- ❖ In 1542-Akbar was born.
- ❖ In 1544, **Humayun went to Persia** to negotiate an army with **Shah Tahmasp I**, he was granted.
- ❖ He then first conquered back Kandahar, then Kabul, in the hands of his brother Kamran.
- ❖ He began the reconquest of the Mughal Empire,
  - In 1554 (Peshawar),
  - In 1555 (Lahore, then Dipalpur)
  - Finally, Macchi Bhawan
- ❖ His last victory in **Macchi Bhawan**, against the Afghans.
- ❖ He **returned to the throne of Agra, after 15 years of exile**. He moved to Agra and began to structure the territory.

- ❖ During this time some important change in **Mughal Court culture** was evident.
- ❖ There were **Central Asian influences** of Persian art, architecture, language and literature.
- ❖ Humayun expanded the Empire further, leaving a substantial legacy for his son, Akbar.
- ❖ In 1556, unfortunately a bad fall took his life.
- ❖ In his memory his wife **Haji Begam** built **Humayun's tomb**, prototype of the Taj Mahal in Delhi, his sister **Gulbadan Begum** wrote his biography **Humayunama**.



Humayun's Tomb

### Seydi Ali Reis:

- ❖ He was an **Ottoman admiral and navigator**.
- ❖ He was also known as **Katbi-i-Rumi, Galatah or Sidi Ali Celebi**.
- ❖ He commanded the Ottoman fleet and was later promoted in the Indian Ocean.
- ❖ He encountered the Portuguese at Goa in 1554.
- ❖ He wrote **Mirat-ul-Memalik (The Mirror of Countries, 1557)**
- ❖ He also wrote books of navigation and astronomy:
  - **Mirat-i-Kainat** (Mirror of the Universe)
  - **Kitab-ul-Muhit** (Book of the Regional Seas and the Science of Astronomy and Navigation)

### Akbar (c.1556–1605 CE):

- ❖ When Humayun was retreating from Bikaner on his way to Sind, he was offered **shelter and help by the Rana of Amarkot**. Akbar was **born here to Hamida Bano Begum**.
- ❖ When Humayun fled to Iran, young Akbar was captured by his uncle Kamran. Later reunited with father after capture of Kandahar.
- ❖ In 1556, he was crowned at the age of 13 years at Kalanaur, Punjab.

### Bairam Khan:

- ❖ He was the tutor of the prince.
- ❖ He was a loyal and favorite officer of Humayun.
- ❖ He became regent/ Wakil with the title **Khan-e-Khanan (1556-1560)**.
- ❖ He represented Akbar in the **Second Battle of Panipat**.
- ❖ Under him the Mughals won a series of battles and worried about Afghan challenges like Sikander Sur.

### Afghans Preparing for Come Back

#### Adil Shah:

- ❖ He was the nephew of Shershah.
- ❖ He had control from Chunar to Bengal.
- ❖ He had Hemu, who was:
  - Superintendent of the markets under Islam shah.



- Wazir under Adil shah.
- Fought 22 Battles and never lost.
- He assumed the title of "**Vikramjit**".
- He captured Agra and attacked Delhi.

**Second Battle of Panipat (5th November, 1556):**

- ❖ Fought between Hemu and Mughals.
- ❖ Bairam Khan struggled against him.
- ❖ Hemu got defeated by luck.
- ❖ The Mughal army captured and executed him.

<b>Bairam Khan:</b>	<b>Akbar:</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ Controlled for 4 years.</li> <li>❖ Controlled Nobility.</li> <li>❖ Empire extended during his time.</li> <li>❖ Kabul to Jaunpur, Gwalior Ajmer, Lahore, Multan, etc.</li> <li>❖ He had many enemies.</li> <li>❖ Defeated Ibrahim Sur and annexed Jaunpur.</li> <li>❖ He became the most powerful noble, and started appointing his supporters at important positions.</li> <li>❖ He became arrogant.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ Wanted to take control of the empire.</li> <li>❖ He left Agra and reached Delhi.</li> <li>❖ He issued farman dismissing Bairam Khan.</li> <li>❖ He called all nobles to come and submit to him personally.</li> <li>❖ Bairam Khan initially rebelled but was forced to submit.</li> <li>❖ He chooses to go to Mecca on his way; he was assassinated by Afghan nobles.</li> <li>❖ Akbar married his widow and raised his child Abdur Rahim.</li> </ul>

**Maham Anga (foster mother) and Adham Khan:**

- ❖ He was active in Politics.
- ❖ **Adham Khan:**
  - Sent to Malwa conquest 1561
  - Defeated Baz Bahadur, His wife Rupmati took her life.
  - Massacre of army, women & children.
  - Only part of the booty was sent to Akbar.
- ❖ Arrogance/wanted to be Wazir and stabbed the acting wazir
- ❖ Akbar threw him out of the parapet (Agra fort) in 1561.

**Past - Babur vs Shaibani:**

- ❖ **Uzbek** (a powerful group in the nobility) rebelled in 1561-67):
  - Akbar routed them in 1567.
  - He made Jaunpur his capital for this purpose.
- ❖ Meanwhile **Mirzas**, Timurids and related to Akbar by marriage also rebelled.
- ❖ **Mirza Hakim** (Half-brother of Akbar) besieged Kabul, advanced to Punjab and besieged Lahore.
  - Uzbeks proclaimed him as their ruler and emperor of Hindustan.
  - Akbar marched towards him and he was forced to retire.

- Mirzas were crushed.
- Uzbeks completely routed by 1567.

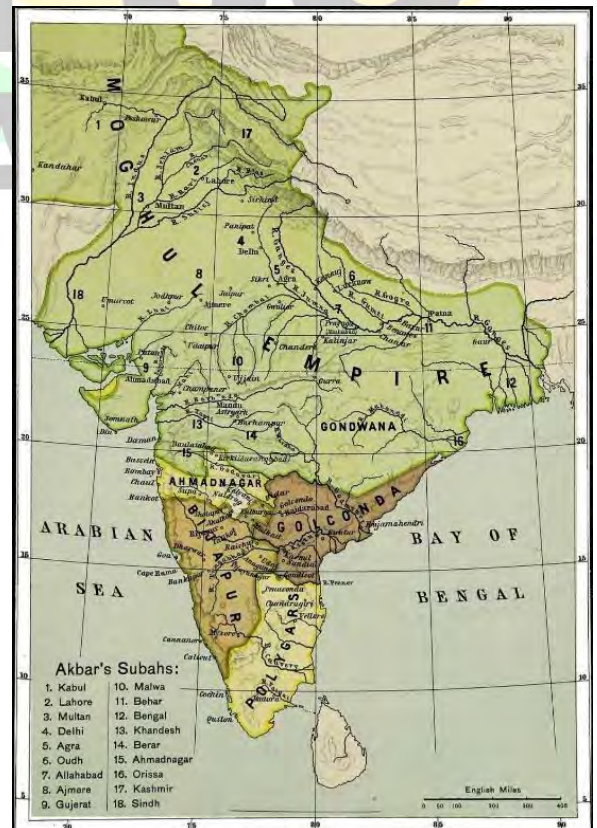
**Empire Expansion (1560-76):**

- ❖ The **first expedition** - Gwalior 1559-60.
- ❖ During this time Malwa was under **Baz Bahadur** (c.1555-1561 CE).
- ❖ He was the final sultan of Malwa, famed for his love affair with **queen Roopmati** and his talent for poetry and music. Mandu became a celebrated center for **music**.
- ❖ Around 1561 CE, Adham Khan and Pir Muhammad Khan led Akbar's army in an assault on Malwa and resulted in the defeat of Baz Bahadur at the **Battle of Sarangpur**.
- ❖ Adham Khan's passion for Rani Roopmati appears to be one of the causes of his attack. When she learned that Mandu had fallen and that Baz Bahadur had escaped to Khandesh, Rani Roopmati poisoned herself.
- ❖ Adam Khan was recalled by Akbar and handed over the **command to Pir Mohammad**.
- ❖ Pir Muhammad then **attacked Khandesh** and advanced as far as Burhanpur and fought against **Miran Mubarak Shah II** of Khandesh, Tufal Khan of Berar, and Baz Bahadur and eventually got killed.
- ❖ Baz Bahadur briefly reclaimed his throne.
- ❖ In 1562 CE, Akbar dispatched a new army under the command of Abdullah Khan, who ultimately routed Baz Bahadur, who had fled to Chittor.
- ❖ He remained a fugitive at various courts until he finally turned himself in to Akbar at Nagaur in around 1570 CE, at which point Malwa became a subah of the Mughal empire and appointed Mansabdars.



**Garh Katanga under Sangram Shah (Aman Das):**

- ❖ It was in the northern part of **Gondwana (Mandla)**.
- ❖ **Aman Das** was his real name.
- ❖ He helped Bahadur Shah of Gujarat and got the title **Sangram Shah**.
- ❖ He married his son Dalpat Shah to the princess of Chandela rulers of Mahoba (Durgawati).
  - Durgawati became a widow and placed her son (Chandra Shah) on the throne and ruled.
- ❖ Asaf Khan was a Mughal governor of Allahabad.
  - He plundered and got illegal gains (1564).
  - Rani fought gallantly, but lost and killed herself.
- ❖ Akbar installed Chandra Shah (younger son of Sangram Shah) on the throne.



### Mansabdar:

- ❖ Mansabdar was a **military unit** within the administrative system of the Mughal Empire introduced by Akbar.
- ❖ The meaning of Mansabdar is rank or position, government official or military generals.
- ❖ Every civil and military officer was given a 'mansab', which was determined by the salaries and allowances of officers.
- ❖ The Mansabdars were Military Commanders, High Civil and Military officers, and Provincial Governors. Nobles were granted the rights to hold a jagir, or revenue assignments (not land itself) for services rendered by them, with the direct control of these nobles in the hands of the king.
- ❖ The 'mansab' of a noble implied the following:
  1. Salary of the officer
  2. Status of the officer
  3. Number of soldiers, horses and elephants etc., maintained by an officer.
- ❖ Two grades delineated the mansabdars.
  - <1000 = Amir,
  - above 1,000 = Amiral Kabir (Great Amir).
  - above 5,000 = Amir-al Umara (Amir of Amirs).
- ❖ Abu'l Fazl has mentioned 66 grades of mansabdars but in practice there were not more than 33 mansabs.
- ❖ Higher mansabs were given to princes and Rajput rulers who accepted the suzerainty of the emperor.
  - No. of Sawar = The No. of Zat => 1st Class Mansabdar
  - No. of Sawar > 1/2 the No. of Zat => 2nd Class Mansabdar (c) No. of Sawar < 1/2 the No. of Zat => 3rd Class Mansabdar.

### Conquest of Rajasthan:

- ❖ He besieged Chittor in 1568.
  - Capital was **Mewar**.
  - It will facilitate the shortest route from Agra to Gujarat.
  - Rana Udai Singh escaped.
  - Jaimal and Patta defended. Patta was later defended by Maharana Pratap.
  - Ranthambore (c.1569 CE) and Kalinjar were captured.
  - Marwar, Bikaner, and Jaisalmer also submitted to Akbar.
  - Mewar resisted.

### Gujarat:

- ❖ Gujarat had been in a sorry state of affairs since the death of Bahadur Shah.
- ❖ **Mirzas** took shelter in Gujarat.
- ❖ Humayun had ruled for some time.
- ❖ Mirza Hakim got support from here as well.
- ❖ **In 1572:**
  - Akbar advanced to Ahmedabad via Ajmer.
  - The Gujarat ruler Muzaffar Shah surrendered without any serious resistance.
  - Akbar attacked Bharuch, Baroda and Surat.
  - At Cambay, he saw the sea and met Portuguese.



- To commemorate the victory of Gujarat, Akbar built the **Buland Darwaza at Fatehpur Sikri**.
- Akbar organized Gujarat into a province and placed it under **Mirza Aziz Koka**.
- Many rebellious groups came together under Ikhtiyar ul Muluk and Mohammad Hussain Mirza and revolted against the Mughal rule.

### **Battle of Haldighati (1576):**

- ❖ Mewar put up a fierce defense under Rana Uday and his son Rana Pratap.
- ❖ **Rana Pratap:**
  - He succeeded Rana Udai Singh in 1572.
  - He was persuaded by Akbar.
  - Man Singh/Bhagwandas/Todar Mal.
  - Sent Amar Singh to pay homage to Akbar with Bhagwandas and had no agreement.
  - Akbar Sent Raja Man Singh in the battle.
  - At Battle of Haldighati:
    - Rana, Hakim Khan Sur and Bhils fought the battle.
    - Rana Pratap was defeated but he did not submit.
    - Fled but later continued Guerrilla warfare.

### **Bengal:**

- ❖ Afghans continued to dominate Bengal and Bihar and read Khutba in Akbar's name to avoid any conflict.
- ❖ They had expanded in Orissa as well.
- ❖ Daud Khan:
  - Ruled in Akbar's name (khutba).
  - Afghans in Bengal and Bihar.
  - He won Orissa also.
  - But when he declared independence Akbar got an opportunity.
- ❖ Akbar captured Patna, Hajipur and Gaur and returned to Agra.
- ❖ Munaim Khan (Khan-e-Khanan) was in charge.
- ❖ In 1576, Daud defeated and killed and thus ended the last Afghan kingdom in the north.

### **Punjab and North West:**

- ❖ Abdullah Khan Uzbek overran Badakhshan which was being ruled by Timurid princes.
  - He posed a threat to Kabul.
- ❖ Both Mirza Hakim and the Timurid princes **sought Akbar's help**.
- ❖ Akbar ordered **Man Singh to march to Kabul**, and he himself **moved to Attok** on the river Indus.
- ❖ He sent expeditions against Kashmir (c.1586 CE) and against Balochistan to block all roads to Uzbek.
- ❖ Expeditions were also sent to clear the Khyber Pass, which had been blocked by rebellious tribesmen of Roshanai.
  - Roshanai was a sect having a large following, it was established by a soldier called **Pir Roshanai**.
  - His son Jalala was the head of the sect.
- ❖ Akbar ordered Zain Khan, Sayid Khan Gakhar and Raja Birbal to suppress the Roshanai tribes.
- ❖ Akbar's favorite, Birbal, lost his life.
- ❖ While Raja Todar Mal and Raja Man Singh forced the Roshanais to submit.

- ❖ Akbar stayed at Lahore till the death of Abdullah Uzbek in 1598.
- ❖ Akbar annexed Balochistan and Kandahar to the Mughal Empire in 1595.

### Other Areas:

#### ❖ Man Singh (Eastern India):

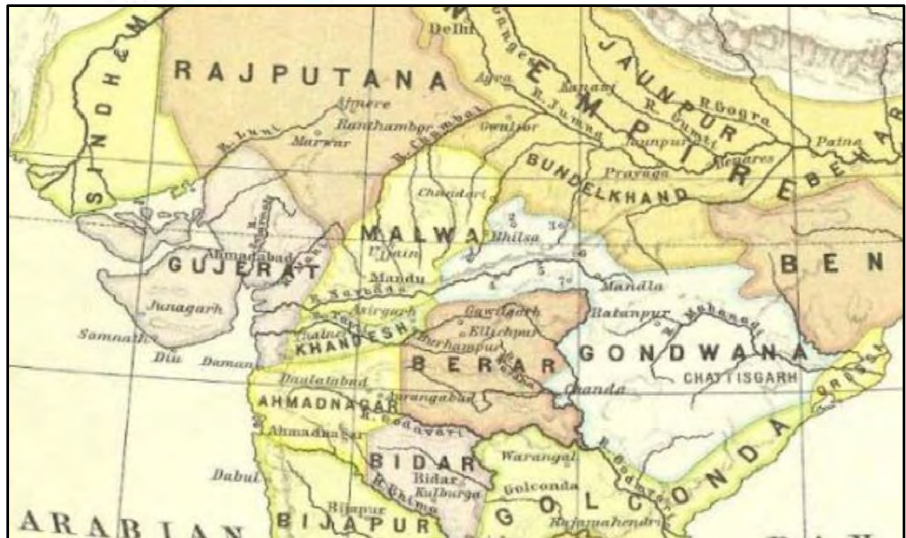
- In 1592 he won Orissa, Cooch Behar and Dacca.

#### ❖ Mirza Aziz Koka (Western India):

- He was Akbar's foster brother.
- He conquered Kathiwar in the west.

#### ❖ Munaim Khan (Deccan):

- He was deputed to (Ahmednagar) Deccan with **Prince Murad** in 1591 along with Abdur Rahim Khan Khanan.
- In c.1595 CE, the Mughal forces **invaded Ahmednagar** and Chand Bibi (the deceased Sultan's sister) was defeated.
- Chand Bibi ceded Berar to the Mughals. But soon after, Chand Bibi attacked Berar to take it back with support from Adilshahi and Qutabshahi.
- After Prince Murad's death in c.1598 CE, Prince Daniyal and Khan Khanan were sent to Deccan and Ahmednagar was again captured.
- Soon, Mughals also conquered Asirgarh and adjoining regions bringing them into direct conflict with the Marathas.



### Conclusion:

- ❖ The aggressive policy of military expansion, instituted a highly efficient bureaucracy.
- ❖ He appointed mansabdars, or military governors, over the various regions; these governors answered directly to him.
- ❖ He fuses the individual fiefdoms of India into a unified empire that would survive until 1868.
- ❖ Akbar was personally courageous, willing to lead the charge in battle.
- ❖ This courage and self-confidence allowed Akbar to initiate novel policies in government.



# **DAILY CLASS NOTES**

---

## **MEDIEVAL HISTORY**

**Lecture - 17**

**Mughal Empire III**



## Mughal Empire III

### Relations with the Rajputs:

- ❖ Akbar's Rajput policy was combined with a policy of religious toleration, as he:
  - Abolished Pilgrimage Tax in 1563.
  - Abolished jizya in 1564.
- ❖ He was fully aware of their importance and wanted them as allies.
- ❖ He also entered into matrimonial relations.
- ❖ Akbar inducted the Rajput rajas into Mughal service (Mansabdars).
- ❖ He maintained the treatment on par with the other nobles.
- ❖ They rose to important positions.
- ❖ Many Rajputs were given **Watan Jagirs**, which were hereditary and non-transferable.

#### Uday Singh:

- ❖ Jodhpur was conferred upon him.
- ❖ He married his daughter Jagat Gosain or Jodh to Salim.

#### Bhara Mal (Amber Ruler):

- ❖ His daughter Harkha Bai or Jodha Bai married Akbar.
- ❖ His son was Bhagwandas (5000)
- ❖ His grandson Man Singh (7000)

### Akbar's Religious Policy:

- ❖ He raised in a tolerant milieu:
  - He was from a sunni family, had two childhood tutors who were Persian Shias, hence, he had an early contact with **Sufism**.
  - Intellectuals like Sheikh Mubarak and his sons Abul Faizi and Abul Fazl, Mahesh Das.
  - He married a Rajput princess.
- ❖ Initially he was a pious muslim, he used to regularly visit the Shrine of **Sheikh Muinuddin Chisti at Ajmer**.
- ❖ Later he became skeptical about religion.
- ❖ He displayed remarkable respect for his Hindu subjects:
  - **First Marriage:** In 1562, Jodha Bai or Harkha Bai, Rajput princess from Amber.
  - **Later Hindu Wives:** Family joined as advisers, equal in rank to muslim courtiers.
  - Hindus in his court and family could practice their own religion and worship their gods.
- ❖ In 1563, he repealed a special tax imposed in Hindu Pilgrims.
- ❖ In 1564, he completely repealed the Jiziya or yearly tax on non-Muslims.
- ❖ He made the Sufi concept of **Sulh-e-kuhl or peace to all**, a founding principle of his law.

#### Din-i-Ilahi/Tahwid-i-Ilahi (Divine Monotheism):

- ❖ In 1582 Akbar promulgated a new religion '**Din-i-Ilahi**' which means '**Divine Faith**'.
  - It was the collection of the finest principles of all the religions.

- It aimed at uniting people of all religions and to establish the oneness of God.
- Instead of superstitions, men were asked to follow a code of moral conduct.
- It led a pure and principled life and the worship of the Lord
- The religion was simple and its principles were easily intelligible.
- ❖ Hindus only Raja Birbal accepted this religion.
- ❖ Among the Muslims the Din-i-llahi was extremely unpopular.
- ❖ It got totally eclipsed after the death of Akbar.

### Social and Educational Reforms:

- ❖ He stopped the practice of **sati**.
- ❖ Widow remarriage was legalized.
- ❖ Age of marriage was 14/16 years.
- ❖ The sale of wines and spirits was restricted.
- ❖ He revised the educational syllabus with more emphasis on moral education, mathematics and secular subjects.
- ❖ Giving patronage to local languages and writers.

### Administration:

- ❖ Many aspects of the **Sher Shah Suri** administration and the Sultanate's administrative structure were preserved by the Mughals.
- ❖ He reorganized Central Government:
  - Division of power.
  - Check and balances.

### The Emperor:

- ❖ He is the supreme head of the administration.
- ❖ He controlled all military and judicial powers.
- ❖ All officers in the Mughal administration owed their power and position to the emperor.
- ❖ He holds the authority to appoint, promote, and remove officials at his pleasure.

### Wazir:

- ❖ The powers and position of the wazir was revived under the Mughals.
- ❖ He was the principal link between the ruler and the administration.
- ❖ Enjoyed great powers under Babur and Humayun's rule.
- ❖ Akbar reorganized the central machinery of administration.
  - He brought checks and balances between various departments.
  - Power taken from Wakil.
  - He curbs the power of Wazir; financial powers were removed.
  - The post of Wazir became largely decorative.
  - Though he remained the head of the revenue department but no longer the principal adviser to the ruler.
  - Now an expert in revenue affairs having the title of **diwan or diwan-i-ala**.

### Mir Bakshi:

- ❖ The head of the military administration was **Mir Bakshi**, considered as head of the nobility.
- ❖ Recommendations for appointment to mansabs or for promotions were made to the emperor after his endorsement.
- ❖ Once the emperor approved, the recommendation was conveyed to the diwan for confirmation and for assigning a jagir to the appointee.
- ❖ He was also the head of the intelligence and information agencies of the empire.
  - **Barids (Intelligence Officers) and Waqia-Navis (News Reporters)** were posted everywhere.
  - Their reports were presented to the emperor at the court through Mir Bakshi.
- ❖ He kept a strict watch over proper maintenance of the sanctioned size of armed contingents and military equipment by the mansabdars.

### Mir Saman:

- ❖ He was the officer in-charge of the royal household and royal karkhanas.
- ❖ Mir Saman was responsible for all kinds of purchases, production and their storage for the royal household.
- ❖ Only nobles who enjoyed the complete confidence of the emperor were appointed to this office.
- ❖ The maintenance of etiquette at the court, the control of the royal body guard, etc., were all under his supervision.

### Chief Qazi/Sadr-us Sudur:

- ❖ He headed the **Judicial Department**.
- ❖ Sometimes he headed the ecclesiastical department and hence called **Sadr-us Sudur (Chief Sadr)**.
- ❖ His chief duty was to protect the laws of the Shariat.
- ❖ He was also responsible for all charitable and religious endowments.
- ❖ During Akbar's reign, the **chief qazi Abdun Nabi** was accused of corruption.
- ❖ In c. 1580 CE, the chief qazi promulgated Mazhar and according to it Akbar's view was to prevail in case of conflicting views among religious scholars.
- ❖ Later restrictions were placed on the authority of the Sadr for award of revenue free grants as well.
- ❖ **Two striking features of Inam Grants:**
  1. Akbar granted **inam lands** to all persons, irrespective of their religious faith and beliefs.
  2. Half of the inam land should consist of **cultivable wasteland**, this will help the extension of cultivation.

### Muhtasibs:

- ❖ He was the censor of public morals.
- ❖ He was supposed to ensure the appreciation of the rules of morality.
- ❖ He also examines weights and measures and enforces fair prices, etc.

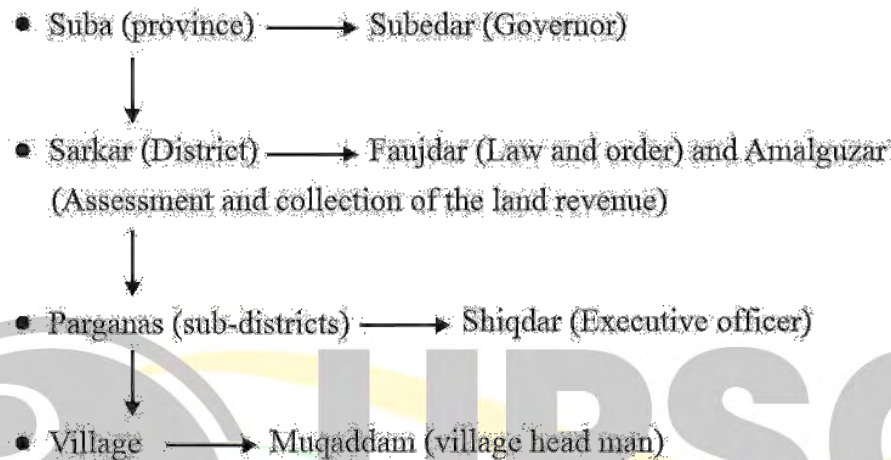
### Naiks:

- ❖ The doors of the nobility were open to everyone, whether Turks, Afghans, Persians, Hindustani, or Shaikhzadas (Indian Muslims), or Hindu Rajputs.
- ❖ Extremely high salaries of Mughal nobles.
- ❖ Attracted talents and brains from foreign lands as well.



### Provincial Administration:

- ❖ Akbar divided his empire into 15 **Subas (provinces)** [originally 12 subas] and each Suba was under the charge of a **Subedar**.
- ❖ But by the time Akbar died, the number stood at 15, 187 Sarkars and 3367 Mahals.
- ❖ Pargana and Sarkar continued.
- ❖ Chief officers of Sarkar:
  - **Faujdar** (Law and Order) and
  - **Amalguzar** (Land Revenue)



### Suba:

- ❖ Each suba was placed under a Subedar (provincial governor).

### Subedar:

- ❖ He was directly appointed by the Emperor.
- ❖ He was the **head of the province**.
- ❖ He was responsible for maintenance of general law and order.
- ❖ Encourage agriculture, trade and commerce, and work on revenue enhancement.
- ❖ He was also to suppress rebellions and provide an army for expeditions.

### Diwan:

- ❖ Head of the **revenue department** in the suba.
- ❖ He was an independent officer and appointed by the Emperor.
- ❖ He supervised the revenue collection in the suba and maintained accounts of all expenditures.
- ❖ He was responsible for increasing the area under cultivation.
- ❖ He issued **taccavi (advance loans)** to peasants.

### Bakshi:

- ❖ His functions were the same as Mir Bakshi at the center.
- ❖ He was appointed by the imperial court at the recommendation of Mir Bakshi.



- ❖ He was responsible for **checking and inspecting the horses and soldiers** maintained by the mansabdars in the suba.
- ❖ He issued the pay bills of both the mansabdars and the soldiers.
- ❖ Sometimes his **office was combined with Waqia-navis** as his duty was also to inform the center about the province.

#### Sadar:

- ❖ He was the representative of the central Sadar at the provincial level.
- ❖ He was responsible for the **welfare of the religious people**.
- ❖ He also looked after the judicial department and supervised the works of the Qazis.

#### Darogai-i-Dak:

- ❖ He was responsible for maintaining the communication channel.
- ❖ He used to pass on letters to the court through the Merwars (postal runners).

#### Sarkar:

#### Faujdar:

- ❖ The Faujdari was an administrative division whereas Sarkar was a territorial and revenue division.
- ❖ The Faujdar was responsible to **maintain law and order** and safeguard the life and property of the residents.
- ❖ He also assisted in the timely collection of revenue whenever force was required.

#### Amalguzar or Amil:

- ❖ He was the revenue collector.
- ❖ His duty was to assess and supervise the revenue collection.
- ❖ He was responsible to increase the land under cultivation and induce the peasants to pay revenue willingly.
- ❖ He used to maintain all accounts and send the daily receipt and expenditure report to the provincial Diwan.

#### Pargana:

- ❖ **Shiqdar:** He was the executive officer.
- ❖ **Amil:** He assisted the Shiqdar in the task of revenue collection.
- ❖ **Quanungo:** He kept all the records of land in the Pargana.
- ❖ **Kotwals:** They were appointed mainly in towns by the imperial government and were in charge of law and order.

#### Village:

- ❖ **Muqaddam:** He was the village headman.
- ❖ **Patwari:** He maintained village revenue records.
- ❖ **Zamindar:** They were responsible for the maintenance of law and order and the collection of revenue.
- ❖ **Qiladar:**
  - The forts were placed under him.
  - He was in charge of the general administration of the fort and the areas assigned in jagir to him.

#### Mutasaddi:

- ❖ He was the **governor of the port**.

- ❖ He was directly appointed by the Emperor.
- ❖ The Mutasaddi collected taxes on merchandise and maintained a customs house.
- ❖ He also supervised the mint house at the port.
- ❖ The port administration was independent of the provincial authority.

### Mansabdar:

- ❖ Mansabdar was a military unit within the administrative system of the Mughal Empire introduced by Akbar.
- ❖ The meaning of Mansabdar is rank or position, government official or military generals.
- ❖ Every civil and military officer was given a 'mansab' determining the salaries and allowances of officers.
- ❖ The Mansabdars were Military Commanders, High Civil and Military officers, and Provincial Governors.
- ❖ Nobles were granted the rights to hold a jagir, or revenue assignments (not land itself) for services rendered by them, with the direct control of these nobles in the hands of the king.
- ❖ **The 'mansab' of a noble implied the following:**
  1. Salary of the officer
  2. Status of the officer
  3. Number of soldiers, horses and elephants etc., maintained by an officer.
- ❖ **Two grades delineated the mansabdars:**
  - <1000 = Amir,
  - above 1,000 = Amiral Kabir (Great Amir).
  - above 5,000 = Amir-al Umara (Amir of Amirs).
- ❖ **Abu'l Fazl** has mentioned 66 grades of mansabdars but in practice there were not more than 33 mansabs.
- ❖ Higher mansabs were given to princes and Rajput rulers who accepted the suzerainty of the emperor.
  - No. of Sawar = the No. of Zat. => 1st Class Mansabdar
  - No. of Sawar > 1/2 the No. of Zat => 2nd Class Mansabdar
  - No. of Sawar < 1/2 the No. of Zat => 3rd Class Mansabdar.

### Mansabdari System & Army:

- ❖ It was required for a strong army.
- ❖ It was not hereditary, directly appointed, promoted and removed by the emperor.
- ❖ Every officer was assigned a rank (Mansab).
- ❖ Minimum mansab was ranked 10 and maximum was 10,000.
- ❖ Akbar granted the mansab of 7000 to Mirza Ajij Koka and Raja Maan Singh.
- ❖ The ranks were divided into zat and sawar.

### Zat:

- ❖ It means personal.
- ❖ He fixed the personal status of a person.
- ❖ He also decides the salary due to him.

### Sawar:

- ❖ It means the number of cavalrymen required to maintain.
- ❖ Sawar rank < Zat rank



- ❖ Sawar with only one horse considered as the half a sawar.
- ❖ Princes of Royal blood can get higher ranks.
- ❖ <500= mansab
- ❖ 500-2500= amir
- ❖ 2500-5000= amir I umda or Umda-i-azam.

### Dagh System and Chehra (Periodic Inspection):

- ❖ It was meant for **branding of horses** and careful inspection.
- ❖ The good quality horses of Arabic and Iraq employed.
- ❖ It followed the **rule of 'Dahbisti'**, which is a 10-20 rule i.e., for every ten cavalymen the mansabdar had to maintain twenty horses.
- ❖ This was done to ensure the nobility of the cavalry which was the main fighting force of the Mughals. Second horse was needed as a **replacement if the mount was tired or injured or dead.**
- ❖ The contingents of the nobles should be diverse from Mughal, Rajput, Hindustani, Pathan.
- ❖ The salary due to the soldiers was added to the personal salary of the Mansabdar, and were paid in direct naqdi (cash) or as jagir (land). This led to the Jagirdari system.
- ❖ The Mansabdar were paid handsomely and it was the highest paid service in the world.
- ❖ A person could be demoted as a mark of punishment.
- ❖ The Navy was missing but flotilla boats were used in eastern expeditions.

### Change to Mansabdari System:

#### Jahangir:

- ❖ Introduced a new provision in the Sawar rank:
  - **du-aspa** (trooper with two horses) and
  - **sih-aspa** (trooper with three horses)
- ❖ Only done for the noble of his confidence.
- ❖ Sawar rank = 4000 (3000 – normal and 1000 – du aspa and sih aspa)
- ❖ Now he will have to keep 2000 sawar and additional payments for the same task.

#### Shah Jahan:

- ❖ He allowed the Mansabdars to maintain 1/3 to 1/5<sup>th</sup> of the sawar rank, without any payment reduction.
- ❖ He also introduced the month scale system, i.e., Mansabdar were now to be paid on a monthly basis.
- ❖ **Jama** (estimated income) and **Hasil** (collected) – deficit
- ❖ They were allotted:
  - **Shahmaha** = ½ yield (6 months)
  - **Sihmaha** = ¼ yield (4 months)

#### Aurangzeb:

- ❖ He created an additional rank called "**Mashrut**".
- ❖ It was an attempt to increase the sawar rank temporarily.
- ❖ **Khurak-i-Dawaab:**
  - It was the deduction towards meeting the cost for feed of animals in imperial stables.

### Territories of the empire were divided into:

- ❖ Jagir (allotted to nobles and member of the family)
- ❖ Khalisa (directly goes to royal exchequer)
- ❖ Inam (allotted to learned and religious man)

### Jagirdari System:

- ❖ It was similar to the Iqta system of the Delhi sultanate.
- ❖ The system of assignment of revenue of a particular territory to the nobles for their services to the state.
- ❖ It was an integral part of the Mansabdari system.

### Diwan:

- ❖ He would identify parganas the sum total of whose Jama was equal to the salary claim of the Mansabdars.
- ❖ In excess of salary claim the assignee was required to deposit the balance with the central treasury.
- ❖ In case of shortage than the salary claims the shortfall was paid from the treasury.

### Various Types of Jagirs:

- ❖ **Tanka Jagirs:** Given in lieu of salaries and they were transferable every three to four years.
- ❖ **Mashrut Jagirs:** Given on certain conditions.
- ❖ Watan Jagirs:
  - Assigned to zamindar or rajas in their local dominions.
  - Hereditary and non-transferable.
- ❖ **Altamgha Jagirs:** Given to Muslim nobles in their family towns or place of birth.

### Zamindars:

- ❖ The people who had hereditary rights over the produce of the land.
- ❖ They claimed a direct share in the peasants' produce which varied from 10% to 25% in different parts of the country.
- ❖ They also assisted the state and the jagirdar in the collection of land revenue.
- ❖ They had their own armed forces.
- ❖ They lived in forts or grahis, which was both a place of refuge and a status symbol.
- ❖ **Note:** The zamindar was **not the 'owner'** of all the lands comprising his zamindari.
- ❖ The peasants actually cultivating the land could not be dispossessed as long as they paid the land revenue.
- ❖ Thus, the zamindars and the peasants had their own hereditary rights in land.

### Jharokha (Look and Petition):

- ❖ **Diwan-e Aam:** An open darbar to consider petition
- ❖ **Bathing apartment:** ghusal khana
- ❖ Met ministers
- ❖ In 1580 the empire was divided into 12 subahs such as Bengal Bihar Allahabad Awadh Agra.
- ❖ Officers like subahdar, diwan bakshi were all appointed.





### Revenue Administration:

- ❖ It was the continuation of the administration of **Sher Shah**. But it had received a sea change by the Todar Mal's **Bandobast System** also called **Zabti System**.
- ❖ It was in-fact a very popular measure in the direction of Land-settlement.
- ❖ There was no Mughal land revenue system before Akbar.
- ❖ The corrections done by Akbar in land revenue system can be mainly divided into three heads as follows:
  - Standardization of measurement of land.
  - Ascertaining the produce per Bigha of land.
  - Fixation of state's share in that produce.
- ❖ The standardization of measurement unit and **Ilahi Gaj** was made the definite unit of land measurement.
  - **Ilahi Gaj** (29-32 inches), and was shorter than the **Sikandari Gaj** used by Sher shah.
  - Fixed definite measurement to Bigha of land.
    - **A Bigha** = 3600 **Ilahi Gaj**, roughly half of modern acre.
    - **Several Bighas** → Mahal.
    - **Several Mahals** → Dasturs.
- ❖ For **Land Measurement (Paimaish)**, a rope called **Tenab** was used in those days.
- ❖ **Tenab** to be made of pieces of Bamboo joined together with iron rings.
- ❖ Once the land was measured and the state's share in produce was fixed per Bigha of land, Akbar next proceeded to fix the rate of assessment.

#### Four Categories of the Land:

1. **Polaj**: ideal and best type of land which was cultivated always and was never allowed to lie fallow
2. **Parati/Parauti**: kept out of cultivation temporarily in order to recoup its lost fertility
3. **Chachar**: land allowed to lie fallow for 3-4 years
4. **Banjar**: worst kind of land not cultivated for five years+

- ❖ Firstly, Akbar adopted **Shershah's Rai System** which with some improvement was called **Zabti/Bandobast System**.
- ❖ The cultivated area was measured, and a central schedule was created fixing the dues of peasants crop wise on the basis of the productivity of the land.
- ❖ The state's share was fixed one-third of the produce under the **schedule (Dastur-i-amal)** to be paid in cash every year.
- ❖ The peasant's tax was based on an annual system of collecting prices and settlements of revenues for the previous years.
  - There were considerable delays.
  - The hardships of the peasantry.
  - The prices were fixed as per the Imperial court where commodities were more expensive.
  - Inflated tax rates.
- ❖ Akbar reverted to a system of annual assessment.



- ❖ The **Qanungos** (hereditary landholders and knew local conditions) were ordered to report on the actual produce and the local price. (But they were dishonest and concealed the real produce. Also, annual assessment was an issue.)
- ❖ In 1573, he Appointed **Karoris to audit these prices given by Qanungos** and helped revenue collection
- ❖ In 1580, Akbar ordered that the settlement should be concluded for past 10 years.
  - An aggregate of the rate of revenues from 1570 to 1579 was made and a decennial average was fixed as demand of the revenue.
  - This brought certainty to collections and alleviated the problem of peasants to great extent.  $\frac{1}{3}$  was a state share in cash.
  - This was the so-called **Dahsala system or Zabti System**, that was implemented by **Raja Todarmal (Todarmal's bandobast)**.
    - Dahsala was an improvement on Zabti).
    - The dahsala was neither a ten-year nor a permanent settlement, and the state had the right to modify it).
    - The **difference in the zabti system** is that the local produce and the local prices were considered and pargana groupings.
      - ✓ Later parganas with similar productivity were grouped.
      - ✓ Amils (administrative officers) to act as father to peasants
      - ✓ Loans (taccavi) to the peasants.
    - Zamindars had hereditary rights to take share.
    - Peasants had hereditary rights on land.
    - Can't be rejected as long as paid land revenue.

**Other Systems:**

<p><b>Batai, ghalla-bakhshi or bhaoli:</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ This was a very old system which continued during the Mughal period.</li> <li>❖ This was a simple method of crop- sharing in which the produce was arranged into heaps and divided into three shares, one of which was taken by the state.</li> <li>❖ Under this system the peasants had the choice to pay in cash or kind, but in the case of cash crops the state demand was mostly in cash.</li> <li>❖ Some officials had to be present. Peasants can choose this over zabti if the crop was ruined.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Kankut:</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ This system was already in use in the fourteenth century.</li> <li>❖ Under this method, instead of actually dividing the grain (kan), an estimate {kut) was made on the basis of an actual inspection on the spot.</li> <li>❖ One-third of the estimated produce was fixed as the state demanded.</li> <li>❖ In simple terms, it was a rough estimate of produce on the basis of actual inspection and past experience.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Nasaq:</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ This was widely prevalent in the Mughal Empire, particularly in Bengal.</li> <li>❖ In this system a rough calculation was made on the basis of the past revenue receipts of the peasants.</li> <li>❖ It required no actual measurement, but the area was ascertained from the records.</li> </ul>

**NOTE:** The zabti system was the standard system, but other methods were prevalent in different parts of the empire. In the subahs of Ajmer, Kashmir and southern Sind, crop-sharing and in Bengal nasaq were prevalent.

### Land Revenue:

- ❖ Crop wise rate as per annual assessment as per the cultivated area and the productivity.
- ❖ It was started by Sher Shah.
- ❖ **Khudkasht:** The peasants who owned the land they tilled and paid land revenue at customary rates.
- ❖ **Palkasht:** It came from neighboring villages or parganas to cultivate surplus land or to resettle a ruined village or settle a new one.



### Navratna of Akbar:

BIRBAL	ADMINISTRATOR
ABUL FAZAL	SCHOLAR
FAIZI	SCHOLAR
TODARMAL	FINANCE MINISTER
BHAGWANDAS	MANSABDAR
MANSINGH	MANSABDAR
TANSEN	MUSICIAN
ABDUR RAHIM KHANKHANA	HINDI POET
Mulla DO PYAZA	SCHOLAR

- ❖ Akbar was an ardent admirer of art and learning. His court was full of many scholars and talented artists. The Nine most learned men in his court were known as **Navratnas**.
  - **Abul Fazal** was the chronicler of Akbarnama in three volumes over seven years, the third volume is known as the **Ain-i-Akbari**. Lead Deccan wars. Killed by Bir Singh Bundela on the order of Prince Salim.
  - **Faizi** was Abul Fazl's brother, the poet laureate of Akbar. The father of Abul Fazal and Faizi was Mubarak Nagori, a scholar in the philosophy and literature of Greece as well as in Islamic theology.
    - Translated **Lilavati** into Persian (Work on Mathematics) under him.
    - **Mahabharat** was translated into Persian.
- ❖ **Miyan Tansen** was born as Tanna Mishra, in 1520. He was a disciple of Swami Haridas and later accepted Islam and became a disciple of Hazrat Muhammad Ghaus (Gwalior).
  - The title 'Tansen' was given to him by **Raja Vikramjit of Gwalior**.
  - He was a court musician with the prince of Mewar and later was recruited by Akbar as his court musician.



- Tansen is also referred to as the "Sangit Samrat" according to Musical Heritage of India by Lalita Ramakrishna.
- **By singing two famous Raag of Hindusthani classical music:**
  1. Raag Megh Malhar – could bring rain.
  2. Deepak – could bring flames or fire.
- Composed dhrupads on hindu gods and invented many raag.
- Akbar gave him the title Mian.

#### ❖ **Raja Birbal:**

- He was a poor Hindu Brahmin named Mahesh Das
- He was appointed for his intelligence.
- He became the court jester.
- The name Raja Birbal was given to him.
- His duties were mostly military and administrative.
- He was also a poet and his collections under the pen name "Brahma" are preserved in Bharatpur Museum.
- He died in a battle in Northwest India.

#### ❖ **Raja Todar Mal**, a Hindu Khatri was Akbar's finance minister, who from 1560 onwards overhauled the revenue system in the kingdom. Akbar gave him the title **Diwan-i-Ashraf**.

#### ❖ **Raja Man Singh**, the prince of Amber was a trusted general in Akbar's army and was the grandson of Akbar's father-in-law Bharmal. Raja Man Singh was the foremost (7000 Mansabdari) and ablest among

#### ❖ **Raja Man Singh:**

- He was the prince of Amber and grandson of Akbar's father-in-law Bharmal.
- He was the trusted general in Akbar's army.
- He was the foremost (7000 Mansabdari) and ablest among Akbar's military commanders.
- He assisted Akbar in many fronts like holding off advancing **Hakim (Akbar's half-brother)** in Lahore.
- He was Mughal viceroy of Afghanistan.
- He also led campaigns in Bihar, Orissa, Deccan.
- He was also the viceroy of Bengal.

#### ❖ **Abdul Rahim Khan-I-Khan:**

- He was the son of Akbar's trusted general and tutor Bairam Khan.
- He was best known for his Hindi couplets.
- He was also a devotee of Lord Krishna.
- He translated Baburnama into Turki.

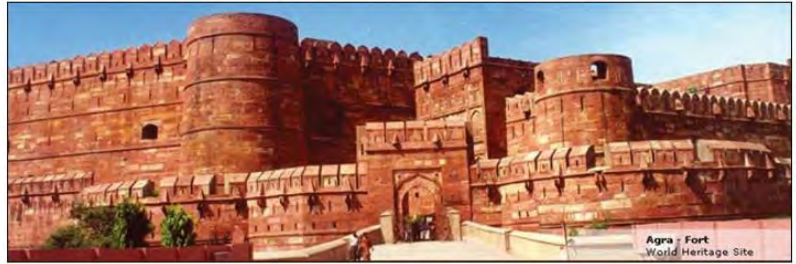
#### ❖ **Fakir Aziao-Din** was a sufi mystic, and an advisor.

#### ❖ **Mirza Aziz Koka also known as Khan-i-Azam or Kotaltash** was one of the leading nobles and a foster brother of Akbar, he served as Subedar of Gujarat.

### **Art and Architecture:**

- ❖ Many indigenous art styles were encouraged.
- ❖ The use of sandstone.

- ❖ The use of arches (mainly in a decorative form) and the decoration that consisted mainly of boldly carved or inlaid patterns complemented by brightly coloured patterns on the interiors.
- ❖ He built the Agra fort in red sandstone, besides forts at Lahore and Allahabad.
- ❖ He built **Fatehpur Sikri (city of victory)** near Agra, and a palace-cum-fort complex in it, many buildings in Gujarati and Bengali styles.
- ❖ He built Jama Masjid and the gateway to it called **Buland Darwaza (the Lofty Gate)**.
- ❖ He also built Fatehpur Sikri - Jodha Bai's palace, the Panch Mahal with five storeys built in the plan of a Buddhist Vihara, the Diwani-i-Khas, the Diwan-i-Aam, and Sheikh Salim Chisti's tomb.
- ❖ He built **his own tomb at Sikandra (near Agra)**, which was completed by Jahangir.
- ❖ Built the temple of Govindadeva at Vrindavan.
- ❖ Akbar also built the Jahangiri Mahal in Agra fort.



Agra Fort  
World Heritage Site

### Literary and Religious Texts:

- ❖ Illustrations of **Persian versions of Mahabharata and Ramayana** were produced in miniature form.
- ❖ “**Yogavasistha**” was translated into Persian by Nizamuddin Panipati during the reign of Akbar.
- ❖ Many other Indian fables became miniature paintings in his art studio.
- ❖ Historical works such as the **Akbar Nama** also remained the main themes of Mughal paintings.
- ❖ Hamznama, consisting of 1200 paintings, belonged to his reign.
- ❖ He organized painting in imperial karkhanas:
- ❖ He introduced **European style** as well.
- ❖ Indian colors such as peacock blue, Indian red began to be used.
- ❖ He invited a large number of painters from different parts of the country.
- ❖ Both Hindus and Muslims joined in this work.
- ❖ Prominent painters were Mir Sayyid Ali, Abdal Samad, Farukh Beg, Bhusrau Kuli, Miskina, Jamshed Basawan, and Daswant (painted Razim Namah, the Persian Mahabharata).
- ❖ Persian language became widespread in the Mughal Empire during the time of Akbar's reign.
- ❖ Apart from Abul Fazl and his brother Abul Faizi, Abdul Qadir Badauni (wrote Kitab-ul-Tawarikh), Khwaja Nizamuddin Ahmad Harami (wrote Tabaquat-i-Akbari Tarikh Alfi), Muntakhab ul-Akbari, Utbi, and Naziri (leading Persian poets) were adorned the Akbar's court.
- ❖ The **Hindi poets** were attached as well. **Tulsidas** wrote the Ramcharitmanas.

### Death of Akbar:

- ❖ In October 1605, 63-year-old Emperor Akbar suffered a serious bout of dysentery.
- ❖ He was sick for three weeks and passed away.
- ❖ He was buried in a mausoleum in the royal city of Agra at Sikandara. He built his own tomb completed by Jahanigir.

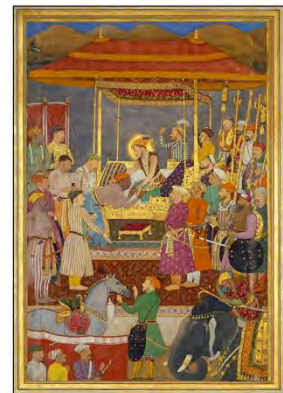
- ❖ Akbar the Great showed the rulers of all nations everywhere that tolerance is not weakness, and open-mindedness is not the same thing as indecisiveness.

### Jahangir (1605 - 1627):

- ❖ His original name was **Salim** and was born in 1569 at Fatehpur Sikri.
- ❖ He openly rebelled against his father at first, but was eventually reconciled.
- ❖ On Akbar's death in November 1605, he assumed the throne.
- ❖ His own son, Khusrau (blessed by Guru Arjan Dev/5th Guru), 17 years old, led a military campaign against his father in 1605. Jahangir captured him and rendered him blind.
- ❖ He assumed the title of Nur-ud-din Muhammad Jahangir Badshah Ghazi.
- ❖ His empire continued to be a war state attuned to conquest and expansion.
- ❖ He ruled for 22 years, for 16 years he was only a ruler in name, during this period, his wife **Nur Jahan was the virtual ruler.**
- ❖ He continued with several of his father's policies.
- ❖ He embarked on a series of military campaigns aimed at expansion.
- ❖ In 1611, Jahangir met, wooed, and married Mehrunissa, the young widow of a Mughal officer. A beautiful and strong woman, she soon became Jahangir's favorite queen and assumed the **title of Nur Jahan, 'Light of the World'.**
- ❖ **Nur Jahan - Daughter of Itimaduddaulh (Diwan):**
  - She was the widow of Sher Afghan a persian nobleman of Bengal.
  - She exercised influence over the state of affair
  - The coin was struck in her name.
  - She was given the status of **Padshah Begum.**
  - Her Brother Asaf Khan was appointed as **khan-i-saman.**
    - Asaf Khan married his daughter to Shah Jahan.
    - There was a breach between her and Shah Jahan.
    - This drove Shah Jahan into rebellion against his father in 1622.

### Treaty with Mewar (1615):

- ❖ The treaty was signed between Jahangir and Rana Amar Singh, son of Rana Pratap in 1615.
- ❖ It was a peace treaty.
- ❖ The treaty reflected the statesmanship of Jahangir.
- ❖ **Important terms of the treaty:**
  - Rana accepted the suzerainty of the Mughal.
  - The Rana was not asked to enter into matrimonial relations.
  - In place of himself, sent his son prince Karan, to the Mughal service at the court.
  - Jahangir restored all territory of Mewar including the fort of Chittor to the Rana on condition that the fort would not be repaired.



**The Submission of Rana Amar Singh of Mewar to Prince Khurram, Tuzk-e-Jahangiri.**

- ❖ In 1622, sent his son - Prince Khurram (Shah Jahan), against Ahmednagar, Bijapur and Golconda. Khurram emerged victorious.
- ❖ Soon challenged his own father for the throne.
- ❖ Jahangir was able to subdue his rebellious son and retain power.

### Relation with Persian:

- ❖ Jahangir always feared the Persians and the Uzbeks of Central Asia.
- ❖ In 1622, Persians captured Kandahar.
- ❖ Shah Jahan refused to help Jahangir and Shahryar in the campaign against the Persians and thus led an open rebellion.

### Shah Jahan's Rebellion (1622):

- ❖ Refusal to proceed to Kandahar besieged by the Persians.
- ❖ Shah Jahan was afraid that the campaign would be a long and difficult one and that intrigues would be hatched against him during his absence from the court.
  - He had full backing of the Deccan army and all the nobles posted there.
  - Gujarat and Malwa had declared for him.
- ❖ Shah Jahan defeated Mahabat Khan.
- ❖ Shah Jahan retreated to the Deccan and again wrote letters of apology to Jahangir. Jahangir pardoned him.
- ❖ In 1626 two of **Shah Jahan's sons, Dara and Aurangzeb** were sent to the court as hostages.

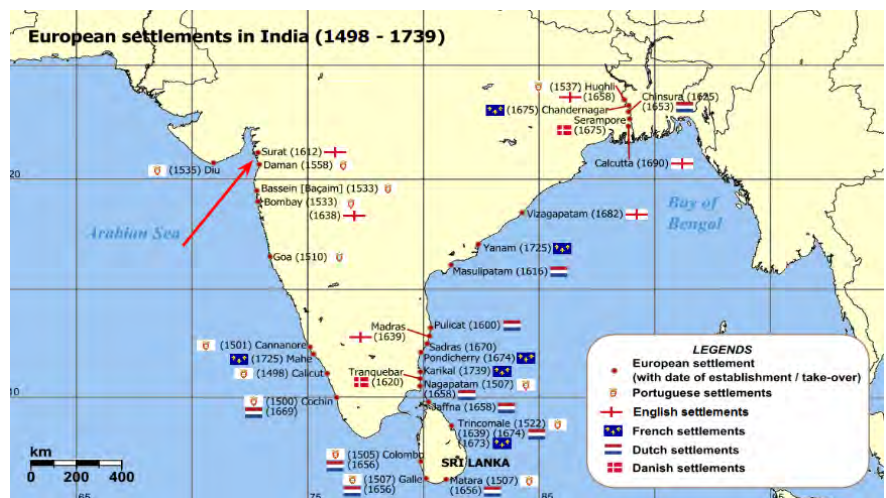
### Mahabat Khan's Revolt:

- ❖ Jahangir's failing health, all effective power had slipped into the hands of Nur Jahan Begum.
- ❖ Mahabat Khan and a trusted body of Rajputs seized the emperor.
- ❖ **Nur Jahan:**
  - Surrendered herself to Mahabat Khan in order to be close to Jahangir
  - Wean away most of the nobles from Mahabat Khan's side.

- ❖ Mahabat Khan **abandoned Jahangir** and fled from the court.
- ❖ Nur Jahan's triumph was short lived as in less than a year's time Jahangir breathed his last not far from Lahore (1627).

### Portuguese offended Mughal Emperor:

- ❖ In 1613, Portuguese offended Jahangir by capturing and plundering Mughal ships. Enraged by this, Jahangir ordered Muqarrab Khan to obtain compensation.





### British (1600-1947):

- ❖ In 1599, **John Mildenhall**, a merchant adventurer of London, came to India. He traveled to India through Persia, reached Agra in 1603 and spoke with the Akbar.
- ❖ A group called '**the Merchant Adventurers**' was formed in 1599.
- ❖ On 31st December, 1600, Queen Elizabeth granted a Charter to the Company named 'commonly known as the English East India Company.
- ❖ She sent **Captain William Hawkins** to the court of Jahangir in 1608 to obtain royal favors, and William Hawkins reached Agra in 1609.
  - As Hawkins knew the Turki language well, he conversed with the emperor in that language without the aid of an interpreter. He developed close relations with Jahangir, who fondly called him **English Khan**.
  - He persuaded the emperor to grant a commission for an English Factory at Surat but that permission was withdrawn under pressure of Portuguese Viceroy.
  - Hawkins tried to reverse the decision but the mission to establish a factory at Surat didn't succeed due to opposition from Portuguese.
- ❖ In 1611, Captain Henry Middleton was able to get permission to start a factory in Surat from the local Mughal governors. But he needed to fight a battle with the Portuguese. Under him, the British defeated the Portuguese in 1611 in the **Battle of Bombay**. However, royal permission was still needed to make the factory sustainable.
- ❖ In 1615, Sir Thomas Roe reached the Mughal court. remained till the end of 1618.
  - He secured several privileges for the company, particularly the permission to erect factories in many places (Agra, Ahmedabad and Baroch).
  - royal order "**Firman**" to local authorities sanctioning English Trade at Surat at reasonable terms →English Factory got a legal authority and permanent basis.
  - A branch factory at Masulipattanam was established after a few days.
  - Sir Thomas Roe was successful in obtaining two farmans from the Mughal Court confirming free trade with exemption from inland toll.

### Administration:

- ❖ Jahangir was famous for strict administration of his '**golden chain of justice**' (**Zanjeer-e-adal** at Agra fort).
- ❖ He was concerned for the welfare of the people.
- ❖ He abolished the '**Tagma**' and "**meerwahi**" toll taxes and the taxes that the Subedars imposed on the people for their expenses.
- ❖ He ordered for the construction of mosques, sarais, and wells on the road-sides which reduced the dangers from the thieves and dacoits.
- ❖ He ordered that the property of the dead would be passed over to their legal heirs and unclaimed property would go to the state, spent on public-welfare.
- ❖ He banned the manufacture and sale of the intoxicants although he himself was addicted to drinking.
- ❖ He lacked the political enterprise of his father Akbar.
- ❖ He was an honest man and a tolerant ruler.
- ❖ He strived to reform society and was tolerant towards Hindus, Christians and Jews.



- ❖ However, relations with Sikhs were strained, and the fifth of the ten Sikh gurus, Arjun Dev, was executed at Jahangir's orders for giving aid and comfort to Khusrau, Jahangir's rebellious son.
- ❖ Art, literature, and architecture prospered under Jahangir's rule, and the Mughal gardens in Srinagar remain an enduring testimony to his artistic taste.
- ❖ He wrote his memoirs **Tuzuk-I-Jahangir**.
- ❖ In 1627, Jahangir became seriously ill, and never recovered from it.
- ❖ Upon the death of his father on 28 October 1627, Shah Jahan, with support from his father-in-law Asaf Khan, became the emperor by executing Shahryar and other male Mughal heirs.
- ❖ The accession of Shah Jahan to the throne was a result of great political intrigue.

### **Shah Jahan (1627 - 1658):**

- ❖ His earlier name was **Khurram**.
- ❖ He was born in 1592 in Lahore. He was one of the four sons of Jahangir.
- ❖ The other sons were Khusroo, Parvez and Shahariyar.
- ❖ Among the sons Khurram was most favorite of his father and grandfather Akbar.
- ❖ His mother **Jagat Gosain or Jodh Bai** was the daughter of rajput ruler Udai Singh of Marwar.
- ❖ Khurram was very intelligent, talented, bold and handsome.
- ❖ So, Akbar loved him the most. He was given the best care and attention by his father and grandfather in the very beginning of his life and career.
- ❖ In 1607, given the mansab of 8000 Zat and 5000 sawar which was a grand achievement for a prince.
- ❖ In 1608, he was appointed as the **governor of Hissar Feroza** (Haryana).
- ❖ In 1611, his mansab was enhanced to 10,000 zat and 5000 sawar.
- ❖ His marriage with **Arjumand Banu Begum (Mumtaz Mahal)** was very significant. Mumtaz Mahal was the daughter of Asaf Khan, the brother of Queen Nurjahan.
- ❖ In 1628, Khurram ascended the throne. He assumed the title of Abul Muzaffar Shahbuddin Mohammad Sahib Kiran-i-Sani.
- ❖ **Asaf Khan**, his father-in-law, became Wazir.
- ❖ **Mahabat Khan** also made the Mansab of 7000 zat and 7000 sarwar along with the title of Khan- i-Khana.
- ❖ **Nurjahan** - pension of Rs. 2 lakh per annum and was kept under house arrest. She died in 1645 AD.
- ❖ Shahjahan began with an orthodox policy which went against the liberal policy of Akbar. But he changed his attitude at the right time and maintained the Mughal legacy of liberalism.
- ❖ Shahjahan faced some rebellions in the early part of his reign.
  - Bundela Chief Juhar Singh
  - The Afghan leader Khan Jahan Lodi.
- ❖ But he suppressed them with an iron hand.
- ❖ He also took strong steps to punish the Portuguese traders in Bengal who were indulged in slave trade.

### **Shah Jahan's Failed North-Western Policy:**

- ❖ India and Persia were in conflict over the possession of the fort of **Kandhar**, since Jahangir's time.
- ❖ The Persian emperor conquered Kandhar during the reign of Jahangir.



- ❖ Shahjahan recaptured the fort but had to hand it again to the Persian ruler **Shah Abbas II in 1648**.
- ❖ Shahjahan sent **three expeditions** under the leadership of his two sons Aurangzeb and Dara but they failed.
- ❖ Shahjahan suffered a great loss of men and money.
- ❖ The Central Asian Policy of Shahjahan like his north-west frontier policy ended in failure.
- ❖ He sent the Mughal Army to **conquer Samarkand**. The Mughal Army conquered Balkh and Badakhshan on the way. But Mughal rule could not be established there as the local people were hostile to outsiders.

### **Shah Jahan's Policy towards the Deccan:**

- ❖ Shahjahan followed the Deccan policy of his predecessors and conquered Daulatabad.
- ❖ He proceeded against Golconda and Bijapur:
  - Submitted to the Mughal ruler out of fear.
  - Accepted the Mughal supremacy.
  - Paid huge tributes.
- ❖ Shahjahan appointed his third son Aurangzeb as the Governor of Deccan in 1636.
- ❖ Aurangzeb became the Governor of Deccan for the second time in 1653.
  - He wanted to annex Bijapur and Golconda.
  - Aurangzeb could not annex.
  - He left for Delhi in 1657, after hearing the news of the illness of his father emperor Shahjahan.
- ❖ So, the Deccan Policy of Shahjahan was a **mixture of successes and failures**.

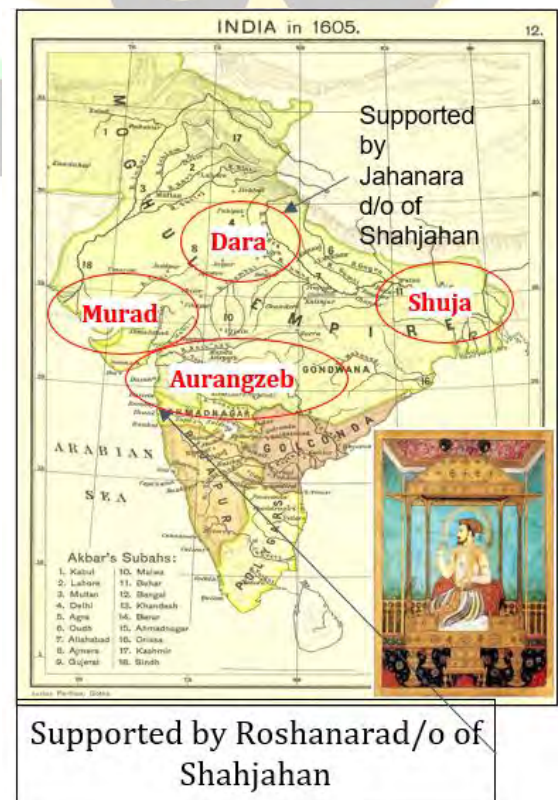
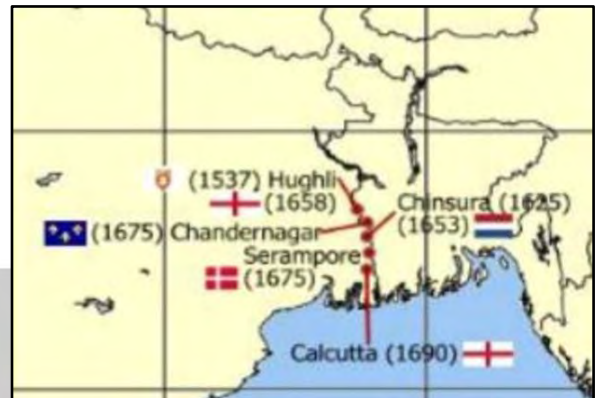
### **A Golden Age for Mughal Architecture:**

- ❖ The **Indo-Islamic Architecture** reached its zenith.
- ❖ He is described as Shahjahan, the Magnificent.
- ❖ He outstripped his predecessors as a builder.
- ❖ The Indo-Islamic architecture reached its highest point of glory under him.
- ❖ He got the **Taj Mahal constructed**:
  - It was built in the memory of Arjumand Banu Begum who died in 1631.
  - It was constructed 22 years after her death.
  - The design of Taj Mahal was prepared by **Ustad Isa and Esa Muhammad Effendi**.
  - The dome of the Taj Mahal was **designed by Ismail Khan**.
- ❖ Mosque building reached its peak during Shah Jahan's reign.
- ❖ He constructed the Moti Masjid at Agra which was entirely built with the white marble.
- ❖ At Agra, he also built the Sheesh Mahal and Mussaman Burj.
- ❖ **Jama Masjid built in Red Stone**, was built at Delhi by Shahjahan.
- ❖ Fort-building reached its climax during his reign. The famous **Red-Fort at Delhi**, including its Rang Mahal, Diwan-i-Am, and Diwan-i-Khas was also Shahjahan's creation.
- ❖ He also built Shalimar Bagh in Lahore, and the city of Shahjahanabad.
- ❖ He also got Bebadal Khan to build the **Peacock Throne**, on which Amir Khusrao's couplet is mentioned: "If there is a paradise on earth, it is here."

- ❖ He patronized Inayat Khan, who wrote Shah Jahan Nama. His son Dara Shikoh translated **Bhagvad Gita and Upanishads into the Persian language.**
- ❖ The travelers who described his reign were:
  - **Bernier and Tavernier** were the French Travelers
  - **Manucci** was the Italian Traveler
  - Peter Mundy described famine during Shah Jahan's time.

### Portuguese lost favor of Mughals:

- ❖ The Portuguese act of piracy resulted in conflict with the Mughal empire.
- ❖ In 1613, Portuguese offended Jahagir by capturing and plundering Mughal ships. Enraged by this, Jahagir ordered Muqarrab Khan to obtain compensation.
- ❖ Finally, during the reign of Shah Jahan, the advantages which the Portuguese enjoyed in Mughal Court were lost forever.
- ❖ **Capture of Hooghly:**
  - Portuguese settled in Hooghly after migrating from Satgaon in Bengal.
  - There they monopolized the manufacture of salt, built a custom house of their own and imposed it.
- ❖ Strict levy on tobacco which had become an important article of trade since its introduction at the beginning of the 17th Century.
- ❖ The **Portuguese** not only made money as traders but also started a cruel slave trade by purchasing or seizing Hindu and Muslim children, whom they brought up as Christians.
- ❖ They seized two slave girls of Mumtaz Mahal.
- ❖ On June 24, 1632, the siege of Hooghly began, ending in its capture three months later by Bengal governor Qasim Khan.



### Summary:

- ❖ Shahjahan was best known for his Deccan and foreign policies.
- ❖ He defeated the Portuguese.
- ❖ The **Nizam Shahi Dynasty** of Ahmednagar was brought under Mughal control by Shahjahan.
- ❖ Deccan Sultanate of Bijapur and Golconda accepted his suzerainty.
- ❖ Shahjahan who had recovered Kandhar (Afghanistan) from the Iranians lost it again despite three campaigns under prince Murad, Aurangzeb and Dara.

- ❖ Shahjahan's failing health set off the war of succession among his four sons.
- ❖ Shahjahan was imprisoned by his son Aurangzeb in the Agra Fort, where he died in captivity in 1666.
- ❖ He was buried at Taj (Agra).
- ❖ After victory, Aurangzeb was crowned at Delhi under the title Alamgir.

### Aurangzeb (1658 - 1707):

- ❖ The **four sons of the Mughal Emperor, Shah Jahan**, all laid claim to the throne when their father fell seriously ill in 1658.
- ❖ Each had considerable administrative experience and military skills, each commanded a considerable military force, and each had a loyal following.
- ❖ **Dara Shikoh (1615-58)**, the eldest son, was resident at Shah Jahan's court as the designated heir.
- ❖ **Shuja** was Governor of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa.
- ❖ **Aurangzeb** governed the Deccan and Murad was Governor of Gujarat and Malwa.
- ❖ Dara's forces were defeated by **Aurangzeb (Battle of Deorai, 1659)** who occupied Agra; and Aurangzeb took his own father prisoner.
- ❖ Shuja's army was routed in battle.
- ❖ Murad was lured into a false agreement and taken prisoner.
- ❖ Accused of idolatry and apostasy from Islam, Dara was condemned to death and the sentence was carried out on the night of 30th August, 1659, one year after Aurangzeb took over the Fort at Agra and assumed the throne.
- ❖ Aurangzeb delivered the head of his brother to their father.
- ❖ Aurangzeb was a notable expansionist and during his reign, the Mughal Empire reached its greatest extent, ruling over nearly all of the Indian subcontinent.
- ❖ **Adab-i-Alamgiri** is the financial bickering between Shahjahan and Aurangzeb (father and son) - which form a large part of Aurangzeb's correspondence.
- ❖ Aurangzeb has been subject to controversy and criticism by a majority of scholars for his policies that abandoned his predecessors' legacy of pluralism and religious tolerance. Some of his policies were:
  - Introduction of the Jiziyah tax.
  - Destruction of Hindu temples.
  - Execution or forced conversion of his non-Muslim subjects to Islam.
  - Execution of the ninth Sikh guru, Guru Teg Bahadur.
- ❖ It was at the end of his reign that the downfall of the Mughal Empire began due to his policy of religious intolerance.
- ❖ He was a strong-handed and authoritarian ruler.
- ❖ He gave himself the title of 'Alamgir' - meaning the Conqueror of the World.





### Religious steps taken by Aurangzeb:

- ❖ **Jiziya and pilgrim tax** were reintroduced by him.
- ❖ He stopped writing Kalma on his coins.
- ❖ He appointed **Muhtasib** who was the officer entrusted to enforce moral codes and shara.
- ❖ He banned/prohibited/discontinued the following:
  - Sati Customs
  - Hindu Festivals
  - Jharokha Darshan
  - Music in his court
  - Tuladan
  - Drinking and cultivation of bhaang and other drugs

### Conflict with the Sikhs:

#### Guru Teg Bahadur:

- ❖ He was the 9th Guru of the Sikhs, who was captured and killed in 1675 as he refused to embrace islam.

#### Guru Gobind Singh:

- ❖ He was the 10th and the last Guru of Singh and the son of Guru Teg Bahadur.
- ❖ He organized the Khalsa, which was the community of warriors.
- ❖ He was assassinated by an Afghan in 1708.
- ❖ Banda Bairagi continued the war against Mughals.

### Clash with the Ahom Kingdom (13th - 19th C.):

- ❖ In 1662, **Mir Jumla II (Governor of Bengal)** advanced on Garhgaon, the capital of the **Ahom Kingdom**.
  - But Mir Jumla died of natural causes in 1663.
  - Favorable treaty for Ahom and Mughals had serious losses.
- ❖ In 1664, **Saista Khan (New Governor)** captured the islands of Sondip and Chittagong.
- ❖ Lachit Barphukan was an Ahom commander in the Battle of Saraighat 1671, who thwarted an invasion by Mughal forces under the command of ramsingh I.
- ❖ By 1680, the Ahom Kingdom could not be controlled and they had captured Kamrupa.
- ❖ Thus, Mughal's reign ended here.
- ❖ **Northwest and Northeast:**
  - Armies gained ground but the losses which were very considerable, drained the treasury.
- ❖ Aurangzeb retained Shahjahanabad as his capital, but after some two decades, the capital in a manner of speaking, shifted to wherever Aurangzeb would set camp during his long military campaigns.
- ❖ Aurangzeb's mobile army consisted of some 500,000 camp followers, 50,000 camels and 30,000 war elephants.
- ❖ **He also had to deal with the followings:**
  - The Rajputs,

First 25 years - North India.  
Next 25 years South India,  
handling Marathas.



- The disloyalty of Akbar,
- The Sikhs, whose leader, Guru Tegh Bahadur, was killed at Aurangzeb's command when he refused to convert to Islam.

### Deccan Policy:

#### 1. Phase I (c.1658–68 CE):

- ❖ The main attempt was to **recover from Bijapur** the territories belonging to the Ahmednagar state, surrendered to it by the treaty of c.1636 CE.
- ❖ It was led by Jai Singh, the governor of Deccan.
- ❖ The focus was to get hold of the territories of Kalyani, Bidar, and Parenda from Bijapur.
- ❖ The Mughals failed to lay siege on Bijapur in c.1665 CE and Jai Singh died in c.1667 CE.
- ❖ Sholapur was secured by bribery in c. 1668 CE.

#### 2. Phase II (c.1668–84 CE):

- ❖ The Marathas were considered as the **major threats in the Deccan**.
- ❖ In an effort to defeat Shivaji and his son Sambhaji, pressure was applied to Bijapur and Golconda to join the Mughals.
- ❖ Attempts were made to secure the help of the Deccan states against Marathas.
- ❖ There was a shift in Mughal policy due to the death of Adil Shah of Bijapur, rise of Shivaji, growing influence of the brothers Akhanna and Madanna in Golconda administration.
- ❖ The tripartite alliance between Golconda, Shivaji, and Bijapur did not allow Aurangzeb to conquer or defeat the Marathas.
- ❖ In c. 1679–80 CE, Mughal viceroy Diler Khan failed to capture Bijapur, who **failed due to this tripartite alliance**.

#### 3. Phase III (c.1686–87 CE):

- ❖ Aurangzeb followed the policy of outright annexation of the Deccan states.
- ❖ He sieged Bijapur (c.1686 CE) and Golconda (c.1687 CE), and parts of Karnataka.
- ❖ Aurangzeb made Khirki (renamed it Aurangabad), founded by Malik Ambar, the capital of Mughal Deccan.

#### 4. Phase IV (c.1687–1707 CE):

- ❖ Aurangzeb spent most of his time in Deccan and managed to keep the region under Mughal control.
- ❖ **Sambhaji (Shivaji's son)** was captured and executed at Sangameshwar.
- ❖ The destruction of the Deccan kingdoms was a political blunder on the part of Aurangzeb. According to J.N. Sarkar, '**the Deccan ulcer ruined Aurangzeb**'.
- ❖ His Deccan campaigns exhausted the Mughal treasury.

#### In News:

- ❖ A three-day celebration of the 400th birth anniversary of the legendary Assamese general and folk hero Lachit Borphukan began in New Delhi on November 23. The ceremony will be attended by Prime Minister Narendra Modi, Home Minister Amit Shah, Finance Minister Nirmala Sitharaman, and Law Minister Kiren Rijiju among others.

## The heroism of Lachit Borphukan, legendary Ahom general and proud symbol of Assamese self-identity

Who was Lachit Borphukan, and why is he significant in the narrative of Assamese nationalism?

### Aurangzeb vs Shivaji:

- ❖ The most effective opposition to - Marathas, whose chief, Shivaji, could not be contained.
- ❖ Aurangzeb deputed Raja Jai Singh, one of his ablest commanders and diplomats to take strong action against Shivaji. Jai Singh captured several forts and Shivaji was forced to sign a peace treaty - **Treaty of Purander (1665)**.

### Assignment/Self Study

#### The Treaty of Purander (1665):

- ❖ Shivaji **surrendered twenty-three of his forts** and territory yielding an-annual revenue of four lakhs of hun.
- ❖ Shivaji was left with only twelve forts and territory which yielded annual revenue of one lakh of hun.
- ❖ Shivaji accepted the suzerainty of the Mughals but, instead of personal attendance at the court, deputed his son, Shambhuji with 5,000 horse at the Mughal-court.
- ❖ Shivaji agreed to support the Mughals against Bijapur.
- ❖ Another term was added to the treaty afterwards by which:
  - **Shivaji agreed** to pay forty lakhs of huns to the Mughuls in thirteen years provided the territory of Konkan which yielded annual revenue of four lakhs of huns and the territory of Balaghat which was in the possession of Bijapur and yielded an annual income of five lakhs of 'huns' were assigned to him.
- ❖ The treaty was a great **diplomatic success of Raja Jai Singh**.
- ❖ Shivaji personally handed over the key of Sinharh Fort to Jai Singh's son and joined Jai Singh with his force in the war on Bijapur.
- ❖ Jai Singh persuaded Shivaji to visit Aurangzeb's court by holding out very high hopes to him. Shivaji agreed to go to Agra for having personal knowledge about Aurangzeb and his sources of strength.
- ❖ In the royal court, Shivaji and his son were taken back and asked to stand in the third row of nobles.
- ❖ Noticing this insult, Shivaji burst out in a sort of open defiance complaining about the breach of the terms.
- ❖ Aurangzeb was enraged. Shivaji was sent to a new residence, more secluded where he could be killed without a public scandal. But using his wisdom, Shivaji managed to escape from there.
- ❖ Shivaji VS Aurangzeb again started.

- ❖ This time Shivaji was able to recover all the forts and territory that he had to surrender in terms of Treaty of Purandar in 1665.
- ❖ Shivaji plundered Surat again in 1670.
- ❖ Between 1670 and 1674, the Marathas achieved success everywhere.
- ❖ The Mughal power in the Deccan was crippled. He also snatched away several forts from Bijapur.
- ❖ The rivalry came to end when only when Shivaji died in 1680.

### Rise of Marathas:

- ❖ Rose in the service of the Bahmani rulers held mansabs and jagirs.
- ❖ Unlike the Rajputs, none of them was an independent ruler over a large kingdom.
- ❖ They were not the leader of clans on whose backing and support they could depend.
- ❖ But the ruler of Deccan embarked upon a definite policy of winning over the Maratha to their side.
- ❖ Hence, the Marathas formed the backbone of the landed aristocracy of the deccan.
- ❖ The Maratha were chief accorded service and position in all the three leading states of the deccan.

### Shahji Bhonsle (1594 - 1664):

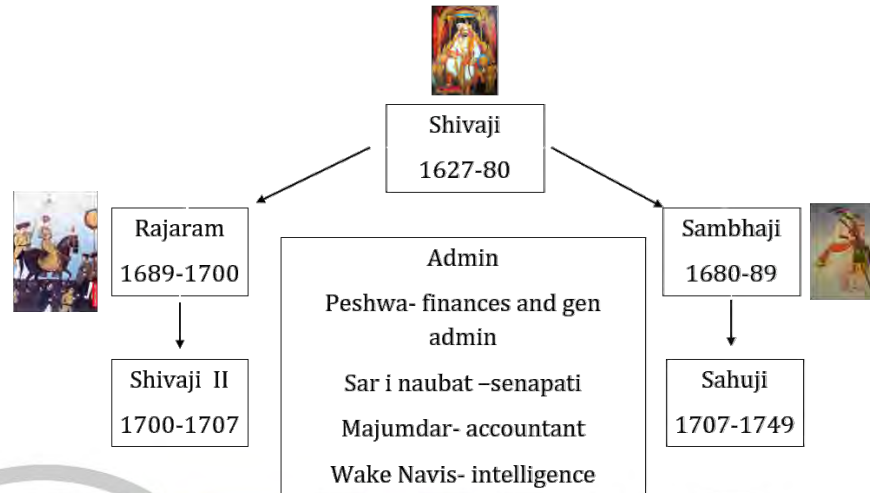
- ❖ He was the son of Maloji Bhosle, Raja of Verul and a general in the court of Adilshah, sultan of Bijapur.
- ❖ Shahaji inherited the Pune and Supe jagirs, under the Ahmadnagar Sultanate.
- ❖ During the Mughal invasion of Deccan, he joined the Mughal forces and served Emperor Shah Jahan for a brief period.
- ❖ After being deprived of his jagirs, he defected to the Bijapur Sultanate in 1632 and regained control over Pune and Supe.
- ❖ In 1638, he also received the jagir of Bangalore, after Bijapur's invasion of Kempe Gowda III's territories.
- ❖ He eventually became the chief general of Bijapur and oversaw its expansion and created the Maratha state.
- ❖ Before this Marathas did not have any well-established states.
- ❖ He left the Poona jagir to neglected wife Jijabai and minor son Shivaji.

### Shivaji (1630 – 1680):

- ❖ He overran a number of hill forts near Pune
- ❖ After the death of his guardian “**Dadaji Kondadev**”, Shivaji became his own master.
- ❖ He conquered **the Javli kingdom** from the Maratha chief in 1656.
- ❖ He entered into negotiations with Aurangzeb then changed sides.
- ❖ He conquered the area of Bijapur.
- ❖ Bijapuri noble, **Afzal khan**, came to capture Shivaji but he killed him cunningly.
- ❖ Aurangzeb was watching the rise of Marathas.
- ❖ He sent governor of Deccan Shaista Khan to capture him.
- ❖ In 1663, Shaista Khan occupied Poona but was attacked by Shivaji while he was in camp. Khan lost his son in this attack.
- ❖ Meanwhile Shivaji looted Mughal port Surat 1664.

### Treaty of Purandar (1665):

- ❖ Aurangzeb sent Raja Jai Singh of Amber, one of most trusted advisers of Aurangzeb to deal with Shivaji.
- ❖ He besieged purandar so Shivaji opened negotiations with Jai singh.
- ❖ Shivaji asked to be excused from personal service and Mansab (5000) was granted in his place to his minor son Sambhaji



### Failure of Mughal-Maratha expedition against Bijapur:

- ❖ After this shivaji was put into the mansabdars a rank which had been granted earlier to his minor son.
- ❖ Shivaji walked off angrily and refused imperial service. This was the **turning point of Mughal - Maratha relationship**.
- He was detained and escaped in 1666.

- ❖ Shivaji renewed contest with Mughal
- ❖ He sacked Surat for the second time in 1670.
- ❖ He reached the roads till Berar, Khandesh.
- ❖ He crowned himself at Raigarh.
- ❖ He was married into some of the leading Maratha families.
- ❖ Shivaji also made treaties with deccan sultans on equal footing.
- ❖ In 1676, he went for the Karnataka expedition.
- ❖ He was helped by his brothers Madanna and Akhanna at Hyderabad
- ❖ Though he has a title of Haindava Dharma Dharak, he killed Hindus mercilessly,
- ❖ He Died in 1680.

### Sambhaji (c.1681–1689 CE):

- ❖ He was the elder son of Shivaji.
- ❖ He defeated his brother Rajaram



- ❖ He supported Akbar II, the rebellious son of Aurangzeb and gave him shelter.
- ❖ In 1681, Aurangzeb reached Deccan in pursuit of his son Akbar II.
- ❖ In 1686, he did annexation of Bijapur
- ❖ In 1687, he annexed Golkonda.
- ❖ In 1689, Sambhaji captured and executed, which unleashed Maratha sardars.



**Rajaram:**

- ❖ He succeeded the throne with the help of the minister.
- ❖ He also fled to the **east coast (Jinji)**.
- ❖ Mughal captured Rajgarh along with Sambhaji's wife and son Shahu, Rajaram escaped.
- ❖ In 1703, Aurangzeb opened negotiations but then retreated.

Officers Name:	Meaning:
Peshwa	Pant Pradhan was in charge of administration and finance. Later, the Peshwa's office grew in influence and performed more of the duties of the prime minister. A centralized intelligence department was established, and intelligence received a lot of attention.
Sar-i-Naubat or Senapati	Honorary position of military commander.
Amatya/Majumdar	Accountant General.
Waqenavis	police and intelligence, posts, historical records, and domestic affairs.
Surnavis or Chitnis or Sachiv	Secretary of State who neglected formal communications.
Sumant/Dabir	Foreign Affairs and the master of ceremonies.
Pandit Rao	Ecclesiastical affairs and Charities.
Nyayadish	Justice.

**What led to the decline of the Mighty Mughal Empire?**

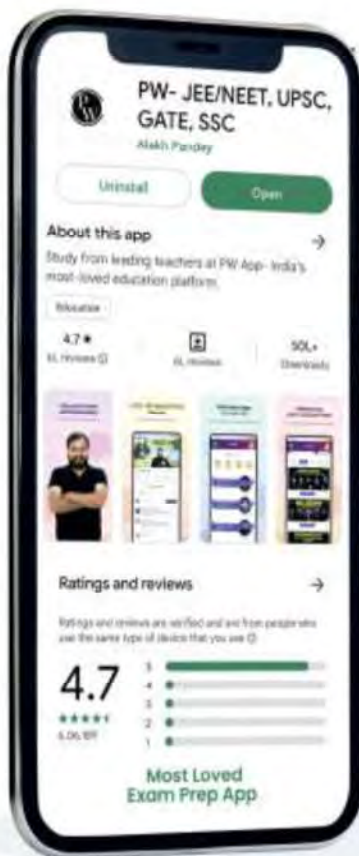
- ❖ The scholarly opinion regarding the ‘causes of decline of Mughals’ can be broadly divided along two lines:
  - The first one is the ‘**Mughal Centric view**’ which sees the cause of decline within the structure and function of the empire itself.
  - The second one is the ‘**Region centric view**’ which attributes the turmoil and instability in different parts of India as a cause of decline.
- ❖ However, both the aspects were equally responsible for the decline of the Mighty empire.
- ❖ Some of the major direct causes of the decline were:
  - **Wars of Succession:**
    - The Mughals did not follow any law of succession like the law of primogeniture.
    - Consequently, each time a ruler died, a war of succession between the brothers for the throne started.



- This weakened the Mughal Empire, especially after Aurangzeb. The nobles, by siding with one contender or the other, increased their own power.
- **Aurangzeb's Policies:**
  - Aurangzeb failed to realize that the vast Mughal Empire depended on the willing support of the people.
  - He **lost the support** of the Rajputs who had contributed greatly to the strength of the Empire. They had acted as pillars of support, but Aurangzeb's policy turned them to bitter foes.
  - **The wars** with the Sikhs, the Marathas, the Jats and the Rajputs had drained the resources of the Mughal Empire.
- **Weak Successors:**
  - Later Mughals were weak and became victims of the **intrigues and conspiracies** of the faction-ridden nobles.
  - They were inefficient generals and incapable of suppressing revolts. The absence of a strong ruler, an efficient bureaucracy and a capable army had made the Mughal Empire weak.
- **Shifting Allegiance of Zamindars:**
  - Zamindars were the hereditary owners of their lands. They helped in collection of revenue and in local administrations for which they also maintained soldiers
  - During the reign of Aurangzeb, there was a marked increase in the power of zamindars.
  - The **'Regional loyalties'** were encouraged and many Zamindars helped Nobles to take advantage of the weakness of the empire and carve independent territories for themselves.
- **Jagirdari Crisis:**
  - The **nobles (Jagirdars/Mansabdars)** during the Mughals were granted **large Jagirs (lands)**.
  - By the end of Aurangzeb's rule the no. of Jagirdars/Mansabdars increased significantly but the land was limited. So the Mughal had to carve out their own land to pacify the Jagirdars.
  - Due to this, land under direct control of the emperor decreased which in turn decreased the revenue.
- **Conflict among Nobles:**
  - Nobles in the Mughal empire were divided on the line of Religion, Home-land and Tribe.
  - The **mutual rivalry among mughals** increased and the weak Emperor failed to put a check on this.
  - This hurt the prestige of the empire and created instability which contributed to the decline of the mighty empire.
- **Rise of Regional Aspiration:**
  - Right from the time of Aurangzeb regional groups like Jats, Marathas and Sikhs started defying the authority of the Mughal emperor with the aspiration of creating their own Independent Kingdom.
  - They did not succeed in their effort but this drew Mughals into **continuous warfare** causing the weakening of the empire.
  - Although later Mughals followed the policy of reconciliation against the Rajputs but it was too late. Rajputs rulers were no longer ready to trust the Mughals for the welfare of their states.

- Marathas on the other hand were becoming a formidable power and rising as a staunch enemy of the Mughal empire. They made Mughals to grant them the right to collect **Chauth** and **Sardeshmukhi** throughout India.
  - By the 1740s they succeeded in spreading their influence over the provinces of Gujrat, Malwa and Bundelkhand.
  - The combined actions of Rajputs and Marathas resulted in weakening of the empire and loss of Mughal authority.
- **Failure of Mughal Economy:**
- Shah Jahan's zeal for construction had depleted the treasury. Aurangzeb's long wars in the south had further drained the exchequer.
  - The number of amirs and their ranks or mansabs had increased significantly over the time and there was little land left to distribute among them as jagirs.
  - Aurangzeb tried solving this problem by showing enhanced income from Jagirs. As a result of this Amirs tried to recover the recorded income from their Jagirs by pressurizing peasantry which antagonized them.
  - Frequent wars, luxury lifestyle of emperor and amirs, reduction in **Khalisa land** (under direct control of emperor), all of this resulted in expenditure which was much higher than income. All this made the empire Economically unstable.
- **Size of the Empire and rise of other States:**
- The Mughal Empire had become too large to be controlled by any ruler from one center i.e., Delhi.
  - The Great Mughals were **efficient and exercised control over ministers and army**, but the later Mughals were poor administrators.
  - As a result, the distant provinces became independent. The rise of independent states led to the disintegration of the Mughal Empire.
- **Invasions:**
- The invasions of Nadir Shah and Ahmad Shah Abdali resulted in huge loss of wealth.
- **Lack of Scientific Progresses:**
- Almost no technological advancement fueled the stagnancy of the empire. Due to this Mughal Military became obsolete and its administration inefficient.





# INDIA'S MOST LOVED

Educational Channel And Platform

4.8★  
Rating

20M+  
Subscribers

8M+  
Downloads

8000hrs  
Video Content/Week

If you have any queries or need assistance with admission in PW Classes here is what you can do



PW APP



PW OnlyIAS

[www.pw.live](http://www.pw.live)